

THE

HISTORY

OF

BRITISH INDIA,

BY JAMES MILL, ESQ.

Hoc autem pressè et distinctè exutiamus sermone
quodam activo et masculo, nusquam digrediendo, nil
amplificando *BACON, De Augm Scient Lib n°*

SECOND EDITION,

IN SIX VOLUMES

VOL II

LONDON

PRINTED FOR BALDWIN, CRADOCK, AND JOY,
PATERNOSTER-ROW

1820

CONTENTS.

BOOK II.

OF THE HINDUS.

(CONTINUED)

CHAPTER VIII.

	Page
The Arts.....	1

CHAPTER IX.

Literature.....	44
-----------------	----

CHAPTER X

General Reflections.....	135
--------------------------	-----

BOOK III.

THE MAHOMEDANS.

CHAPTER I.

From the first Invasion of India by the Nations in the North, till the Expulsion of the Gaznevide Dynasty	207
--	-----

CHAPTER II.

From the Commencement of the first Gaurian Dynasty to that of the second Gaurian or Afghaun Dynasty.....	230
---	-----

CHAPTER III.

From the Commencement of the second Gaurian or Afghaun Dynasty, to the Commencement of the Mogul Dynasty	249
--	-----

CHAPTER IV

From the Commencement to the Close of the Mogul Dy-	Page
masty	283

CHAPTER V

A Comparison of the State of Civilization among the Maho-	
median Conquerors of India with the State of Civilization	
among the Hindus	424

HISTORY

OR

BRITISH INDIA.

BOOK II.—OF THE HINDUS

CHAP. VIII.

The Arts.

WE come now to the arts, necessary or ornamental, known to the Hindus. As the pleasures, to which the arts are subservient, form one of the grounds of preference between the rude and civilized condition of man, the improvement of the arts may be taken as one of the surest indications of the progress of society

Of the Hindus, it may, first of all, be observed, that they little courted the pleasures derived from the arts, whatever skill they had attained in them. The houses, even of the great, were mean, and almost destitute of furniture,¹ their food was simple and common; and their dress had no distinction

¹ "The buildings are all brise of mud, one story high, except in Surat, where there are some of stone. The Emperor's own houses are of stone, handsome and uniform. The great men build not, for want of inheritance, but, as far as I have yet seen, live in tents, or houses worse than our cottages." Sir T. Roe's Letter to the Archbishop of Canterbury, Churchill, 1808.

BOOK II (which concerns the present purpose) ~~and certain~~
CHAP 8 degrees of fineness in the texture.

If we desire to ascertain the arts which man would first practise, in his progress upwards from the lowest barbarism, we must inquire what are the most urgent of his wants. Unless the spontaneous productions of the soil supplied him with food, the means of ensnaring or killing the animals fit for his use, by clubs or stones, and afterwards by his bow and arrows would first engage his attention. How to shelter himself from the inclemency of the weather would be his second consideration, and where cavities of the earth or hollow trees supplied not his wants, the rude construction of a hut would be one of his earliest operations. A covering for his person would probably be the next of the accommodations which his feelings prompt him to provide. At first he contents himself with the skin of an animal, but it is surprising at how early a period he becomes acquainted with the means of fabricating cloth¹. Weaving therefore, and architecture are among the first of the complicated arts which are practised among barbarians, and experience proves that they may be carried to a very early period of society, to a high state of perfection. It has been remarked too, that one of the earliest propensities which springs up in the breast of a savage is a love of ornaments of glittering trinkets of bits of shining metal or coloured stones, with which to decorate his person. The art accordingly, of fetching out the brilliancy of the precious

stones and metals, and fashioning them into ornaments for the person ; the art, in fine, of jewellery, appears at an early period in the progress of a rude people.

BOOK II
CHAP. 8.

These three, architecture, weaving, and jewellery, are the only arts for which the Hindus have been celebrated, and even these, with the exception of weaving, remained in a low state of improvement.

In a few places in Hindustan are found the remains of ancient buildings, which have attracted the attention of Europeans ; and have, where there existed a predisposition to wonder and admire, been regarded as proofs of a high civilization. “The entry,” says Dr. Robertson, “to the Pagoda of Chillambrum, is by a stately gate under a pyramid 122 feet in height, built with large stones above forty feet long, and more than five feet square, and all covered with plates of copper, adorned with an immense variety of figures neatly executed. The whole structure extends 1332 feet in one direction, and 936 in another. Some of the ornamental parts are finished with an elegance entitled to the admiration of the most ingenious artists.”¹ The only article of precise information which we obtain from this passage is the great size of the building. As for the vague terms of general eulogy, bestowed upon the ornaments, they are almost entirely without significance—the loose and exaggerated expressions, at second hand, of the surprise of the early travellers at meeting with an object, which they were not prepared to expect. Another structure still more remarkable than that of Chillambrum, the Pagoda of Seringham, situated in an island of the river Cavery, is thus described by Mr. Orme “It is composed of seven square inclo-

¹ Robertson’s *Histor Disquis concerning India*, p 225

BOOK II **Chap. 8.** **sures, one within the other, the walls of which are twenty five feet high, and four thick. These inclosures are 350 feet distant from one another and each has four large gates with a high tower which are placed, one in the middle of each side of the inclosure and opposite to the four cardinal points. The out word wall is near four miles in circumference, and its gateway to the south is ornamented with pillars, several of which are single stones thirty three feet long and nearly five in diameter and those which form the roof are still larger. In the innermost inclosures are the chapels' ¹ In this nothing is described as worthy of regard except the magnitude of the dimensions.**

The cave of Elephanta not far from Bombay is another work which, from its magnitude has given birth to the supposition of high civilization among the Hindus. It is a cavity in the side of a mountain about half way between its base and summit of the space of nearly 120 feet square. Pieces of the rock, as is usual in mining have been left at certain distances supporting the superincumbent matter and the sight of the whole upon the entrance is grand and striking. It had been applied at no early period to religious purposes, when the pillars were probably fashioned into the sort of regular form they now present and the figures, with which great part of the inside is covered, were sculptured on the stone².

¹ Orme's Hist. of Milt. Transac. of Indostan 1 1 8

² The cave of Elephanta is not the only subterranean temple of the Hindus exhibiting on a large scale the effects of human labour. In the isle of Salsette in the same sea it is a pagoda of a similar kind and but little inferior to it in any remarkable circumstance. The pagodas of Ellore about eighteen miles from Aastangabad, are not of the size of those of Elephanta and Salsette but they surpass by their number and by the idea of the labour which they cost. See a minute description of them by Anquetil Duperron, Zendavista Due Prelati p. ccxxvii. The seven pagodas as they are called at Maralipuram

Antecedently to the dawn of taste, it is by magnitude alone that, in building, nations can exhibit

BOOK II.
CHAP 8.

near Sadras, on the Coromandel coast, is another work of the same description . and several others might be mentioned Dr. Tennant, who has risen higher above travellers' prejudices in regard to the Hindus, than most of his countrymen, says, " Their caves in Elephanta and Salsette, are standing monuments of the original gloomy state of their superstition, and the imperfection of their arts, particularly that of architecture " Indian Recreations, i 6 The extraordinary cavern, the temple of Pusa, near Chas-chou-fou, in China, which was visited by lord Macartney, and full of living priests, vies in wonderful circumstances with the cave of Elephanta See Barrow's Life of Lord Macartney, Journal, ii 374 " However these gigantic statues, and others of similar form, in the caves of Elora and Salsette may astonish a common observer, the man of taste looks in vain for proportion of form, and expression of countenance " Forbes' Oriental Memoirs i 423. " I must not omit the striking resemblance between these excavations (Elephanta, &c) and the sculptured grottos in Egypt," &c " I have often been struck with the idea that there may be some affinity between the *written mountains* in Arabia, and the excavated mountains in Hindustan " Ibid i 448, 449 It is difficult to say how much of the wonderful in these excavations may be the mere work of nature " Left Sullo, and travelled through a country beautiful beyond imagination, with all possible diversities of rock , sometimes towering up like ruined castles, spires, pyramids, &c We passed one place so like a ruined Gothic abbey, that we halted a little, before we could satisfy ourselves, that the niches, windows, ruined staircase, &c were all natural rock. A faithful description of this place would certainly be deemed a fiction " Mungo Park's Last Mission to Africa, p 75 " Between the city of Canton, and first pagoda, on the bank of the river, is a series," says Mr Barrow, " of stone quarries, which appear not to have been worked for many years The regular and formal manner in which the stones have been cut away , exhibiting lengthened streets of houses with quadrangular chambers, in the sides of which are square holes at equal distances, as if intended for the reception of beams , the smoothness and perfect perpendicularity of the sides, and the number of detached pillars that are scattered over the plain, would justify a similar mistake to that of Mr Addison's doctor of one of the German universities, whom he found at Chateau d'Un in France, carefully measuring the free-stone quarries at that place, which he conceived to be the venerable remains of vast subterranean palaces of great antiquity " Barrow's Travels in China, p 599 The conclusions of many of our countrymen in Hindustan will bear comparison with that of the German doctor in France It is not a bad idea of Forster, the German commentator upon the travâls of P Panlimi, that the forming caverns into temples, must naturally have been the practice when men as yet had their principal abodes in caverns Voyage aux Indes Orientales par le P Paulini, iii 115.

BOOK II magnificence, and it is almost uniformly in honour
Chap 5 of the gods, that this species of grandeur is first attempted. Experience alone could have made us comprehend, at how low a stage in the progress of the arts, surprising structures can be erected. The Mexicans were even ignorant of iron. They were unacquainted with the use of scaffolds and cranes. They had no beasts of burden. They were without sledges and carts. They were under the necessity of breaking their stones with hammers, and polished them by rubbing one against another. Yet they accomplished works, which, in magnitude and symmetry, vie with any thing of which Hindustan has to boast. "The great temple," says Clavigero, "occupied the centre of the city. Within the enclosure of the wall, which encompassed it in a square form, the conqueror Cortez asserts that a town of 500 houses might have stood. The wall, built of stone and lime was very thick, eight feet high, crowned with battlements, in the form of niches and ornamented with many stone figures in the shape of serpents. It had four gates to the four cardinal points. Over each of the four gates was an armenal filled with a vast quantity of offensive and defensive weapons where the troops went, when it was necessary to be supplied with arms. The space within the walls was curiously paved with such smooth and polished stones that the horses of the Spaniards could not move upon them without slipping and tumbling down. In the middle was raised an immense solid building of greater length than breadth covered with square equal pieces of pavement. The building consisted of five bodies nearly equal in height but differing in length and

breadth; the highest being narrowest. The first body, or basis of the building, was more than fifty perches long from east to west, and about forty-three in breadth from north to south. The second body was about a perch less in length and breadth than the first; and the rest in proportion. The stairs, which were upon the south side, were made of large well-formed stones, and consisted of 114 steps, each a foot high. - Upon the fifth body (the top) was a plain, which we shall call the upper area, which was about forty-three perches long, and thirty-four broad, and was as well paved as the great area below. At the eastern extremity of this plain were raised two towers to the height of fifty-six feet. - These were properly the sanctuaries, where, upon an altar of stone five feet high, were placed the tutelary idols."¹ The Tlascalans, as a rampart against the Mexican troops, erected a wall, " six miles in length, between two mountains, eight feet in height, besides the breast-work; and eighteen feet in thickness "²

Garcilasso de la Vega informs us, that "the Incas, who were kings of Peru, erected many wonderful and stately edifices; their castles, temples, and royal palaces," says he, " their gardens, store-houses, and other fabrics, were buildings of great magnificence, as is apparent by the ruins of them. The work greatest ostentation, and which evidences most the power and majesty of the Incas, was the fortress of Cozco, whose greatness is incredible to any who have not seen it, and such as have viewed it with great attention cannot but admire it, and believe that such a work was raised by enchantment, or the help of spirits, being that which surpasses the a

¹ Clavigero, Hist. of Mexico, book vi sect. 10

² Ibid. book vii. sect. 26.

BOOK II and power of man For the stones ore so many and so
CHAR. B. great which are laid in the three first rounds being
rather rocks than stones as passes all understanding
how, and in what monner, they were hewn from the
quarry, or brought from thence far they had na instrumens
of iron or steel wherewithal to cut or fasluon
them nor less wundersful is it to think how they
could be carried to the building far they had neither
carts nor oxen to draw them with and if they had,
the weight was so vast as na cart could bear or oxen
draw then to think that they drew them with great
ropes, over hills and dales and difficult woyls by the
mere force of mens arms, is alike incredible for
many of them were brought ten, twelve and fifteen
leagues off—But to proceed further in our imaginacion
of this matter, and consider how it was possible
for the people to fit and join such vast mochines of
stones together and cement them so close that the
point of a knise can scarce pass between them is
a thing above all admiration and some of them ore
so artificially joined, that the crevices ore scarce dis
cernible between them Then to consider that to
square and fit these stones one to the other they
were to be raised and lifted up and removed often
until they were brought to their just size and propor
tion but how this was done by men who had na use
of the rule and square, nar knew how to make cranes
or pulvers and cramps, and other engines to raise
and lower them as they had occasion is beyond
imagination ”¹

Whatever allowance any preconceptions of the reader may lead him to make for exaggeration, which we may believe to be considerable, in the above descriptions, enough undoubtedly appears, to prove, that no high attainments, in civilization and the arts, are implied in the accomplishment of very arduous and surprising works in architecture, and it will be allowed that such comparisons between the attainments of different nations, are the only means of forming a precise judgment of the indications of civilization which they present. The Gothic cathedrals reared in modern Europe, which remain among the most stupendous monuments of architecture in that quarter of the globe, were constructed, many of them at least, at comparatively a very low stage of civilization and science To allude to Nineveh and Babylon, is to bring to the recollection of the historical reader, the celebrated works of architecture, in temples, walls, palaces, bridges, which distinguished those ancient cities Yet it is demonstrated, that no high degree of improvement was attained by the people that erected them. The pyramids of Egypt, vast as their dimensions, and surprising their durability, afford intrinsic evidence of the rudeness of the period at which they were reared¹ According to

join, but contrariwise, very unequal one with another in form and greatness, yet did they join them together without cement, after an incredible manner" Acosta tells us, however, (*Ibid*) that they were entirely unacquainted with the construction of arches Humboldt, who could have no national partialities on the subject, is almost as lofy in his praises of the remains of the ancient architecture of the Mexicans and Peruvians "Au Mexique et au Perou," says he, *Tableaux de la Nature*, p. 168, "on trouve partout dans les plaines élevées des montagnes, des traces d'une grande civilisation Nous avons vu, à une hauteur de seize à dix-huit cent toises des ruines de palais et de bains" The ruins which he saw of a palace of immense size, are mentioned at p. 158.

¹ "Let us now speak," says the President Goguet, *Origin of Laws*, part iii book ii ch 1 "of the bridge of Babylon, which the ancients have placed in the number of the most marvellous works of the East

BOOK II. Strabo, the sepulchre of Belus, at Babylon, was a pyramid of one stadium in height. It appears to have been built of different bodies or stages, one rising above another, exactly in the manner of the great temple at Mexico. A tower, says Herodotus, a stadium both in length and breadth is reared at the base and upon this is erected another tower and again another upon that, to the number of eight towers in all.¹

Sonnarat informs us "that the architecture of the Hindus is very rude and their structures in honour of their deities are venerable only from their magnitude."² "Mail cotay" says Dr Buchanan "is one of the most celebrated places of Hindu worship, both as having been honoured with the actual presence of an avatara, or incarnation of Vishnu who founded one of the temples and also as being one of the

principal seats of the Sri Vaishnavam Brahmans, and BOOK II having possessed very large revenues The large ^{CHAR 8} temple is a square building of great dimensions, and entirely surrounded by a colonade, but it is a mean piece of architecture, at least outwardly. The columns are very rude, and only about six feet high. Above the entablature, in place of a balustrade, is a clumsy mass of brick and plaster, much higher than the columns, and excavated with numerous niches, in which are huddled together many thousand images, composed of the same materials, and most rudely formed. The temple itself is alleged to be of wonderful antiquity, and to have been not only built by a god, but to be dedicated to Kishna on the very spot where that avatara performed some of his great works¹ Of the celebrated pagodas at Congeveram, the same author remarks, that "they are great stone buildings, very clumsily executed, both in their joinings and carvings, and totally devoid of elegance or grandeur, although they are wonderfully crowded with what are meant as ornaments."²

¹ Buchanan's Journey through Mysore, &c n 70

² Id. Ib i 13 Sir James Mackintosh ingeniously remarks, that among the innumerable figures of men and monsters of all sorts exhibited at Ellora, you perceive about one in ten thousand that has some faint rudiments of grace, those lucky hits, the offspring of chance, rather than design, which afford copies to a rude people, and enable them to make gradual improvements "Rude nations," (says Dr Ferguson, Hist of the Roman Republic, i 18, ed 810) "sometimes execute works of great magnificence, for the purposes of superstition or war, but seldom works of mere convenience or cleanliness." Yet the common sewers of Rome, the most magnificent that ever were constructed, are assigned to the age of the elder Tarquin. Polybius tells us, that the city of Ecbatana, in Media, which contained one of the palaces of the Persian kings, far excelled all other cities in the world, πλεισ και τη της κατασκευης πολυτελεια μεγα τι παρα τας αλλας δοκει διευηνοχεναι τολεις With regard to the palace itself, he was afraid, he said, to describe its magnitude and magnificence, lest he should not be believed It was seven stadia in circumference, and though all the wood employed in it was cedar or cypress, every part of it, pillars, cornices, beams, every thing

BOOK II. Wonderful monuments of the architectore of rude
CHAR. 8. notions are almost every where to be found Mr Bryant, speaking of the first rude inhabitants of Sicily, the *Cyclopes* who were also called Lestrygons and Lamu, says, ‘They erected many temples and likewise high towers upon the sea-coast and founded many cities. The ruins of some of them are still extant and have been taken notice of by Fazellus, who speaks of them as exhibiting a most magnificent appearance They consist of stones which are of great size’ Lazellus, speaking of the bay, near Segesta, and of an hill which overlooked the bay, mentions wonderful ruins upon its summit, and gives an ample description of their extent and appearance’¹ The old traveller Knox, after describing the passion of the Ceylonese, for constructing temples and monuments, of enormous magnitude in honour of their gods, truly adds “As if they had been born solely to hew rocks and great stones and lay them up in heaps”² the unsophisticated decision of a sound understanding on operations which the affection of taste and antiquation credulity have magnified into proofs of the highest civilization

was covered with plates of silver or gold so that no where was a bit of wood visible; and it was roofed with silver tiles. Polyb. Hist. lib. x.
¹
²

Of one very necessary and important part of BOOK II.
architecture, the Hindus were entirely ignorant. CHAP 8
They knew not the construction of arches, till they first learned it from their Moslem conquerors. In the description of the superb temple at Seringham, we have already seen¹ that no better expedient was known than great flat stones for the roof “On the south branch of the river” Cavery, at Seringapatam, says Dr. Buchanan, “a bridge has been erected, which serves also as an aqueduct, to convey from the upper part of the river a large canal of water into the town and island. The rudeness of this bridge will show the small progress that the arts have made in Mysore. Square pillars of granite are cut from the rock, of a sufficient height to rise above the water at the highest floods These are placed upright in rows, as long as the intended width of the bridge, and distant about ten feet from each other. They are secured at the bottom by being let into the solid rock, and their tops being cut to a level, a long stone is laid upon each row. Above these longitudinal stones, others are placed contiguous to each other, and stretching from row to row, in the direction of the length of the bridge”² The celebrated bridge over the Euphrates, at Babylon, was constructed on similar principles, and the president Goguet remarks, “that the Babylonians were not the only people who were ignorant of the art of turning an arch. This secret,” he adds, “as far as I can find, was unknown

¹ See above, p 9, 4 “Their knowledge of mechanical powers,” says Mr Orme, “is so very confined, that we are left to admire, without being able to account for, the manner in which they have erected their capital pagodas It does not appear that they had ever made a bridge of arches over any of their rivers, before the Mahomedans came amongst them” Hist of Mil Trans. of Indostan, 17

² Buchanan's Journey through Mysore, &c 1. 61

BOOK II to all the people of remote antiquity" ¹ Though the
Char 8 ancient inhabitants, however of Persia were ignorant of this useful and ingenious art, the modern Persians are admirably skilled in it the roofs of the houses are almost all vaulted and the builders are peculiarly dexterous in constructing them ²

Of the exquisite degree of perfection to which the Hindus have carried the productions of the loom, it would be idle to offer any description as there are few objects with which the inhabitants of Europe are better acquainted. Whatever may have been the attainments, in this art, of other nations of antiquity, the Egyptians, for example, whose fine linen was so

¹ Goguet Origin of Laws part. iii. book ii. ch 1. He says It even appears to me demonstrated, that the Egyptians had not much more knowledge of architecture, of sculpture and of the fine arts in general than the Peruvians and Mexicans. For example neither the one nor the other knew the secret of building vaults What remains of foundry or sculpture is equally clumsy and incorrect. I think this observation absolutely essential" Orig o of Laws part ii. dissertation iii Clavigero however asserts that the Mexicans did know the art of constructing arches and vaults as appears he says from their baths from the remains of the royal palaces of Tezcuco and other buildings, and also from several paintings. Hist Mex. book vii sect. 53

² Chardin Voy n Perse iii. 116 ed 4to Amsterdam 1733 On est frappé [à Lipahan] de l'élegance architecture des ponts; l'Europe n'a rien qui leur soit comparable pour la commodité des gens de pied pour la facilité de leur passage pour les faire jouir sans trouble le jour de la rue de la rivière et de ses environs et le soir de la fraîcheur de l'air Olivier Voyage &c v 180 La sculpture est nulle en Perse Mais l'architecture plus simple plus élégante mieux ordonnée que chez les Turcs est tout à fait adaptée au climat Les plafond et les domes sont d'une recherche d'un soin d'un précieux et ne relâche qui étonne

Les lessans ont pour fort loué l'art de faire les voûtes Les tapis de leurs maisons sont toutes leurs planchers le sont aussi Ib 513 519 The skill in architecture of the Turks a very rude people is well known "I suppose I am in the wrong but some Turk having built in Core an hospital is better than St. Soh blas That of Valdè Sol is in the town of all built entirely of marble; the stones prodigious & I think it a most beautiful structure I ever saw Between Carami & Iolo Carami wool I make a pair of shoes near it" Letters of Lady Mary Wortley Montagu Werk i 42 510

eminently prized, the manufacture of no modern nation can, in delicacy and fineness, vie with the textures of Hindustan. It is observed at the same time, by intelligent travellers, that this is the only art which the original inhabitants of that country have carried to any considerable degree of perfection.¹

BOOK II.
CHAP. 8.

To the skill of the Hindus, in this art, several causes contributed. It is one of the first to which the necessities of man conduct him,² it is one of those which experience proves to arrive early at high perfection; and it is an art to which the circumstances of the Hindu were in a singular manner adapted. His climate and soil conspired to furnish him with the most exquisite material for his art, the finest cotton which the earth produces. It is a sedentary occupation, and thus in harmony with his predominant inclination. It requires patience, of which he has an inexhaustible fund; it requires little bodily exertion, of which he is always exceedingly sparing; and the finer the production, the more slender the force which he is called upon to apply. But this is not all. The weak and delicate frame of the Hindu is accompanied with an acuteness of external sense, particularly of touch, which is altogether unrivalled, and the flexibility of his fingers is equally remarkable. The hand of the Hindu, therefore, constitutes an organ, adapted to the

¹ No art in Hindustan is carried to the same degree of perfection as in Europe, except some articles in which the cheapness of labour gives them an advantage, as in the case of the fine muslins at Dacca" Tennant's Indian Recreations, i 104 The people are in a state of gross rudeness, Buchanan informs us, "in every part of Bengal, where arts have not been introduced by foreigners, the only one that has been carried to tolerable perfection is that of weaving" Journey through Mysore, &c ii 285

² Mr Park tells us that the art of spinning, weaving, and dyeing cotton, are familiar to the Africans Travels, p 17

BOOK II. finer operations of the loom in a degree, which is
CHAP. 8. almost, or altogether, peculiar to himself¹

Yet the Hindus possessed not this single art in so great a degree of perfection, compared with rude nations, as, even on that ground, to lay a solid foundation for very high pretensions. "In Mexico" says Clavigero, "manufactures of various kinds of cloth were common every where it was one of those arts which almost every person learned. Of cotton they made large webs, and as delicate and fine as those of Holland which were with much reason highly esteemed in Europe. A few years after the conquest, a sacerdotal habit of the Mexicans was brought to Rome, which, as Boturini affirms, was uncommonly admired on account of its fineness. They wove these cloths with different figures and colours, representing different animals and flowers"². When the Carthaginians first broke into the Roman empire they possessed stinged carpets and linen garments of so fine a quality as greatly surprised the Greeks and Romans, and have been thought

worthy of minute description by Eunapius and Zosimus.¹ "Pliny, speaking of a carpet for covering such beds as the ancients made use of at table, says, that this piece of furniture, which was produced from the looms of Babylon, amounted to eighty-one thousand sestertia."² This proves the fineness to which that

BOOK II.
CHAP 8

¹ See Gibbon (*Hist. of the Decl. and Fall of the Rom. Emp.* iv 364), who says, "Yet it must be presumed, that they (the carpets and garments) were the manufactures of the provinces, which the barbarians had acquired as the spoils of war, or as the gifts or merchandise of peace." But had they been the manufactures of the provinces, the Romans must have known them familiarly for what they were, and could never have been so much surprised with their own manufactures, transferred by plunder, gift, or sale to the barbarians, (of none of which operations, had they existed, could they have been altogether ignorant) as to make their historians think it necessary to place a minute description of them in their works.

² Goguet, *Origin of Laws*, part iii book ii ch 1 art 2 That diligent and judicious writer says, "Of all the arts of which we have to speak in this second part, there are none which appear to have been more or better cultivated than those which concern clothing. We see taste and magnificence shine equally in the description Moses gives of the habits of the high priest and the walls of the tabernacle. The tissue of all these works was of linen, goat's hair, wool, and byssus. The richest colours, gold, embroidery, and precious stones, united to embellish it." Ib part ii book ii ch ii The following lofty description of the tissues of Babylon, by Dr Gilhes, (see the description of Babylon, in his *History of the World*) is not surpassed by the most strained panegyrics upon the weaving of the Hindus. "During the latter part of Nebuchadnezzar's reign, and the twenty-six years that intervened between his death and the conquest of his capital by Cyrus, Babylon appears not only to have been the seat of an imperial court, and station for a vast garrison, but the staple of the greatest commerce that perhaps was ever carried on by one city. Its precious manufactures under its hereditary sacerdotal government remounted, as we have seen, to immemorial antiquity. The Babylonians continued thenceforward to be clothed with the produce of their own industry. Their bodies were covered with fine linen, descending to their feet their mitras or turbans were also of linen, plaited with much art, they wore woollen tunicks, above which a short white cloak repelled the rays of the sun. Their houses were solid, lofty, and separated, from a regard to health and safety, at due distances from each other within them the floors glowed with double and triple carpets of the brightest colours, and the walls were adorned with those beautiful tissues called Sindones, whose fine, yet firm texture was employed as the fittest cloathing for eastern kings. The

BOOK II species of manufacture was then wrought, and the excellency which the Babylonians, who yet could not construct an arch, had attained in the art. The Asiatic nations seem to have excelled, from the earliest ages, in the manufactures of the loom. It is by Pliny recorded, as the opinion of his age and nation, that of the art of weaving cotton Semiramis is to be revered as the inventress. The city Arachne, celebrated by the Greeks and Romans, as the place where weaving was first invented, and where it was carried to the highest perfection, is represented by Mr Bryant as the same with Erech or Barsippa, and situated on the Enphrates, in the territory of Babylon¹. One of the accomplishments of the goddess of wisdom herself (so early was the date) was her unrivalled excellence in the art of weaving and Arachne, according to the poets, was a virgin, who daring to vie with Minerva

looms of Babylon, and of the neighbouring Barsippa, a town owing its prosperity to manufactures wholly supplied to all countries round the finest veils or hangings, and every article of dress or furniture composed of cotton or linen or of wool.

¹ Bryant's Ancient Mythology, iii. 4. 3. It was from this city the spider (Arachne) for its curious web, was said to have derived its name. The poet Nonnus thus celebrates its manufactures:

En myt mouda veles, το μήτε πα τρόπις Τηρ
Νεκτα Αράχνη τεχει την Εύρησι Αράχνη

Again:

Εγενε πε τελε λύρη ειλεψη στην Ι. ανη
Διαφέντειαντειλατει λ. στην Αράχνη

Nonnus lib. xxiiii p 326 Edis 1.691 et lib. xlii p 747. See the brilliant description which Chardin gives of the exquisite skill of the modern Persians in the art of weaving; of the extraordinary beauty and value of their gold velvets. They make not fine cotton, he says only for this reason, that they can import them cheaper from Ind. Chardin Voyages en Perse lii 113 Oli xxiij; Ils excellent dans la tissure des étoffes de soie pure de soie et coton de soie et or ou argent, de coton pur de coton et laine A l'est à Kashan & I pal n on tressent lez avec autant de gout que de propeleit les brocard lez telssois lez tissus lez satins et perpue toutes les étoffes que nous connaissons Oli le Voyage Ec. v 301 303 306

in her favourite art, was changed into a spider for her BOOK II.
CHAP 8 presumption.¹

That ingenuity is in its infancy among the Hindus, is shewn by the rudeness still observable in the instruments of this their favourite art. The Hindu loom, with all its appurtenances, is coarse and ill-fashioned, to a degree hardly less surprising than the fineness of the commodity which it is the instrument of producing. It consists of little else than a few sticks or pieces of wood, nearly in the state in which nature produced them, connected together by the rudest contrivances. There is not so much as an expedient for rolling up the warp. It is stretched out at the full length of the web; which makes the house of the weaver insufficient to contain him. He is therefore obliged to work continually in the open air; and every return of inclement weather interrupts him.²

Among the arts of the Hindus, that of printing and dyeing their cloths has been celebrated; and the beauty and brilliancy, as well as durability, of the colours they produce, is worthy of particular praise. This has never been supposed to be one of the circumstances on which any certain inferences with regard to civilization could be founded. It has been generally allowed that a great, if not the greatest part of the excellence which appears in the colours of the Hindu

¹ Ovid. We learn from Plato, that, when any fine production of the loom among the Greeks was represented as of the most exquisite fineness and beauty, it was compared to those of the Persians, την ζωην τα χιτωνικα ειναι μερις δι Περσικας των πολυτελων Hippas Min 255

² Orme, on the Government and People of Indostan, p 409, &c Tennant's Indian Recreations, i 301 "The apparatus of the weaver is very simple, two rollers placed in four pieces of wood fixed in the earth, two sticks which traverse the warp, and are supported at each of the extremities, one by two strings tied to the tree under which the loom is placed, and the other by two other strings tied to the workman's feet, which gives him a facility of removing the threads of the warp to throw the woof." Sonnerat, Voyag liv. iii ch viii

BOOK II **CHAP a.** cloths, is owing to the superior quality of the colouring matters, with which their happy climate and soil supply them¹. Add to this that dyeing is an early art. "It must have made" says Goguet, "a very rapid progress in the earliest times, in some countries Moses speaks of stuffs dyed sky blue, purple and double-scarlet he also speaks of the skins of sheep dyed orange and violet."² The purple, so highly admired by the ancients, they represented as the invention of Hercules, thus tracing back its origin even to the fabulous times. In durability it appears not that any thing could surpass the colours of the ancients. "We never," says Goguet, find them complain that the colour of their stuffs was subject to alter or change. Plutarch tells us, in the life of Alexander that the conqueror found among the treasures of the kings of Persia, a prodigious quantity of purple stuffs which, for one hundred and eighty years which they had been kept, preserved all their lustre, and all their primitive freshness. We find in Herodotus, that certain people on the borders of the Caspian Sea, imprinted on their stuffs designs, either of animals or flowers, whose colour never changed, and lasted as long even as the wool of which their cloaths were made"³.

¹ Perhaps their painted cloths are more indebted to the brilliancy of the colours, and the goodness of the water than any skill of the artificer that admiration with which they have been viewed. Tenants Indian Recreations c. 210. Chardin who tells us how admirable the Persians are in the art of dyeing adds that their excellency in this respect is principally owing to the excellency of their colouring matters. Voyages en Perse in 116.

Goguet, Origin of Law part ii book ii ch. 211.

² Ibid. The linen manufactured by the Celts was in high repute. "None of it was curiously painted with figures of animals and flowers; and afterwards did not like the linen of the Indians. And Herodotus tells us that the whole was so deeply tintured that no washing could efface the colours. They accordingly exported it to various markets, and it was every where greatly sought after." Bryant's Arc. Mythol. v 102.

We shall next consider the progress of the Hindus in agriculture, which, though the most important of all the useful arts, is not the first invented, nor the first which arrives at perfection. It is allowed on all hands that the agriculture of Hindustan is rude; but the progress of agriculture depends so much upon the laws relating to landed property, that the state of this art may continue very low, in a country where other arts are carried to a high degree of perfection.

A Hindu field, in the highest state of cultivation, is described to be only so far changed by the plough, as to afford a scanty supply of mould for covering the seed, while the useless and hurtful vegetation is so far from being eradicated, that, where burning precedes not, which for a short time smooths the surface, the grasses and shrubs, which have bid defiance to the plough, cover a large proportion of the surface.

Herodotus, however, represents the people of whom he speaks, as in a state of great barbarity, μηδὲν τε τετων των αρθρωτων ειναι εμφανεα, καταπερ τοισι προβατοισι Clio, cemii The Chinese dye scarlet more exquisitely than any other nation Lord Macartney says, it arises "from their indefatigable care and pains, in washing, purifying, and grinding their colouring matters" See Lord Macartney's Journal, Barrow's Life of Lord Macartney, n 516 The same expenditure of time and patience, commodities generally abounding in a rude state of society, are the true causes of both the fine dyeing and the fine weaving of the Hindus Both Hindus and Chinese are indebted for all elegance of pattern to their European visitors — Pour se qui est des arts mechaniques, celui ou les Persans excellent le plus, et ou ils nous surpassent peutêtre, c'est la teinture Ils donnent à leurs étoffes des couloirs plus vives, plus solides qu'on ne fait en Europe. Ils impriment celles de coton et celles de soie avec une netteté et une tenacité surprenantes, soit qu'ils emploient des couleurs, soit qu'ils procèdent avec des feuilles d'or et d'argent Olivier, Voyage, &c v 303 Mr Park informs us, that the negroes of Africa have carried the art of dyeing to great perfection Travels in Africa, p 281 see also his last Mission, p 10 The arts in which the Hindus have any pretensions to skill are the very arts in which so rude a people as the Turks most excel "Presque tous les arts sont dans l'enfance, ou sont ignorés chez eux, si nous en exceptons la teinture, la fabrication de diverses étoffes, celle des lames de sabre et de couteau. Voyages dans l'Empire Ottoman, &c par G A Olivier, i 26

BOOK II. **CHAP 8.** Nothing can exceed the rudeness and inefficiency of the Hindu implements of agriculture. The plough consists of a few pieces of wood, put together with less adaptation to the end in view, than has been elsewhere found among some of the rudest nations. It has no contrivance for turning over the mould and the share, having neither width nor depth, is incapable of stirring the soil. The operation of ploughing is described by the expressive term *scratching*. Several ploughs follow one another all to deepen the same furrow a second ploughing of the same sort is performed across the first and very often a third, and a fourth, in different directions, before so much as an appearance of mould is obtained for the seed.¹

The instrument employed as a harrow is described as literally a branch of a tree in some places as a log of wood performing the office partly of a roller, partly of a harrow and in others as a thing resembling a ladder of about eighteen feet in length, drawn by four bullocks, and guided by two men who stand upon the instrument to increase its weight. The hackery, which answers the purpose of cart or waggon is a vehicle with two wheels which are not three feet in diameter, and are not unfrequently solid pieces of wood, with only a hole in the middle for the axle tree. The body of the machine is composed of two bamboos, meeting together at an angle between the necks of the two bullocks by which the vehicle is drawn, and united by a few crossing bars of the same useful material. It is supported at the angle by a bar which passes over the necks of the two animals.

¹ You frequently see a field after one plough appears as green as before; only a few scratches are perceptible here and there more resembling the digging of a mole than the work of a plough." Tencius, Ind. Recr. ii. "n

and cruelly galls them. To lessen the friction between the wheel and axis, and save either his wretched cattle, or his own ears, the simple expedient of greasing his wheels, never suggested itself to the mind of a ryot of Hindustan¹ Even this wretched vehicle can seldom be employed for the purposes of husbandry, from the almost total want of roads It is in back loads that the carriage of almost all the commodities of the country is performed ; and in many places the manure is conveyed to the fields in baskets on the backs of the women.²

Every thing which savours of ingenuity ; even the most natural results of common observation and good sense, are foreign to the agriculture of the Hindus. The advantages arising from the observation of the fittest season for sowing are almost entirely neglected. No attention was ever paid in Hindustan to the varieties of the grains, so as to select the best seed, or that fittest for particular situations. For restoring

¹ Tennant's Ind Recr ii 75 " You cannot, by any argument, prevail upon the listless owner to save his ears, his cattle, or his cart, by lubricating it with oil. Neither his industry, his invention, nor his purse, would admit of this, even though you could remove what is generally insurmountable—his veneration for ancient usage If his forefathers drove a screeching hackney, posterity will not dare to violate the sanctity of custom by departing from their example This is one instance of a thousand in which the inveterate prejudices of the Asiatics stand in the way of their improvement, and bid defiance equally to the exertions of the active, and the hopes of the benevolent " Ibid 76 This characteristic mark of a rude people, a blind opposition to innovation, is displayed by persons among ourselves, as if it was the highest mark of wisdom and virtue —The waggon wheels are one piece of solid timber like a millstone. Tavernier, in Harris, i 815

² Into Oude are imported a variety of articles of commerce from the northern mountains, gold, copper, lead, musk, cow-tails, honey, pomegranate seeds, grapes, dried ginger, pepper, red-wood, tincar, civet, zedoary, wax, woollen cloths, wooden ware, and various species of hawks, amber, rock-salt, assafetida, glass toys. What is carried back is earthern ware All this commerce is carried upon the backs of men, or horses and goats Ayeen Akberry, ii 33 Buchanan's Journey, i 205, 494 Capt Hardwicke, *Asiat. Res* vi. 330

BOOK II fruitfulness to a field that is exhausted, no other expedient is known, than suspending its cultivation, when the weeds, with which it is always plentifully stored, usurp undivided dominion Any such refinement as a fallow, or a rotation of crops, is far beyond the reach of a Hindu The most irrational practice that ever found existence in the agriculture of any nation, is general in India that of sowing various species of seeds, mustard, flax, barley wheat millet, maize, and many others, which ripen at different intervals, all indiscriminately on the same spot As soon as the earliest of the crops is mature, the reapers are sent into the field, who pick out the stalks of the plant which is ripe, and tread down the rest with their feet. This operation is repeated as each part of the product arrives at maturity, till the whole is separated from the ground

Though, during the dry season, there is an almost total failure of vegetables for the support of cattle of which every year many are lost by famine, and the remainder reduced to the most deplorable state of emaciation and weakness none but the most imperfect means were ever imagined by the Hindus of saving part of the produce of the prolific season to supply the wants of the barren one Hay is a commodity which it would not always be convenient to make but various kinds of pulse and millet might be produced at all seasons and would afford the most important relief to the cattle when the pasture grounds are bare The horses themselves are often preserved alive by the grooms picking up the roots of the grass with a knife from the ditches and tanks.¹

¹ For this sketch of Hindu agriculture the chief authorities are a short treatise entitled "Remarks on the Agriculture &c of Bengal," Tenant Indian Recreations, particularly the second volume; and Dr.

The only circumstance to captivate the fancy of BOOK II
CHAP. 8 those Europeans, who were on the look out for subjects of praise, was the contrivance for irrigation. Reservoirs or excavations, known in India by the name of tanks, were so contrived as to collect a large body of water in the rainy season, whence it was drawn off in the season of drought for the refreshment of the fields. These tanks appear to have been at all times a principal concern of the government; and when it is considered that almost the whole revenue of the sovereign depended in each year upon the produce of the soil, and that the decay of the tanks ensured the decay of revenue, it is no wonder that of such care and wisdom as the government anywhere displayed, a large portion should appear to

Buchanan's Journey through Mysore, Canara, and Malabar After describing the wretched state of agriculture in the neighbourhood of Seringapatam, Dr. Buchanan says, "I am afraid, however, that the reader, in perusing the foregoing accounts, will have formed an opinion of the native agriculture still more favourable than it deserves I have been obliged to use the English words ploughings, weedings, and hoeings, to express operations somewhat similar, that are performed by the natives, and the frequent repetitions of these, mentioned in the accounts taken from the cultivators, might induce the reader to imagine that the ground was well wrought, and kept remarkably clean Quite the reverse, however, is the truth Owing to the extreme imperfection of their implements, and want of strength in their cattle, a field, after six or eight ploughings, has numerous small bushes remaining as upright in it as before the labour, while the plough has not penetrated above three inches deep, and has turned over no part of the soil. * * * The plough has neither coulter nor mould-board, to divide and to turn over the soil, and the handle gives the ploughman very little power to command its direction The other instruments are equally imperfect, and are more rudely formed than it was possible for my draughtsman to represent" Buchanan's Journey through Mysore, &c i 126 In another place he says, "In every field there is more grass than corn Notwithstanding the many ploughings, the fields are full of grass roots" Ibid. p 345 See also p 15 Agriculture was almost universal among the American tribes "Throughout all America, we scarcely meet with any nation of hunters, which does not practise some species of cultivation" Robertson's America, ii 117 The agriculture of the Peruvians was apparently superior to that of the Hindus. Ibid. iii 341.

BOOK II have been bestowed upon the tanks. In certain
Chap. 2. places much care and labour have been bestowed. But those authors were strangely mistaken who looked upon this as a proof of refined agriculture and great civilization. It is only in a small number of instances, where the whole power of an extensive government, and that almost always Mahomedan, had been applied to the works of irrigation, that they are found on a considerable scale, or in any but the rudest state. In a country in which, without artificial watering, the crops would always be lost, the ingenuity of sinking a hole in the ground, to reserve a supply of water, need not be considered as great.¹

¹ Frezier (see his *Voyage to the South Sea*, p. 213. London edition, 1718) says, "The ancient Indians were extraordinary Indians in conveying the water of the rivers to their dwellings: there are still to be seen in many places aqueducts of earth and of dry stones carried up and turned off very ingeniously along the sides of hills with an infinite number of modicaz which shows that those people as unpolished as they were very well understood the art of levelling." There is something indicative of no little art in the floating gardens and fields which were on the like of Mexico. (See the Description in Clavigero, *Hist Mex* book iii. sect. 27.) The cultivation of their fields considering it was done by humans without the aid of animal labour was remarkable and their produce surprising. (*Ibid.* sect 28.) The following passage from Garcilaso de la Vega deserves to be quoted as a monument of the labours of the Peruvians in agriculture: "They drained all wet moors and seas so in that art they were excellent, as is apparent by their works which remain unto this day. And also they were very ingenious in making aqueducts for carrying water unto dry and scorched lands." (He explains how careful they were to water both their own lands and pasture.) After they had made a provision of water the next thing was to dress, and cultivate and clear their fields of bushes and trees; and that they might with most advantage receive the water, they made them in a quadrangular form; those lands which were good on the side of hill they levelled by certain alleys or walks which they made. To make these alleys they raised three walls of stones, one low before and one reach'd a little inwards so that they may more securely bear and keep up the weight of the earth, which is pressed and beaten down by them until it be as well to the bottom of the wall. Then next to this wall they made another something shorter and less kept up in the same manner with its wall, could

To separate the grain from the straw, the ancient method of treading with oxen has, in Hindustan, given way to no improvement; and for the most part the corn is still ground in handmills by the women.<sup>BOOK II.
CHAP 2.</sup>

Of the arts which at an early stage of society acquire the greatest excellence, one, as we have already observed, is that of preparing brilliant trinkets for the ornament of the person. The Hindus cut the precious stones, polish them to a high degree of bri-

at length they came to take in the whole hill, levelling it by degrees in fashion of a ladder, one alley above the other Where the ground was stony, they gathered up the stones, and covered the barren soil with fresh earth to make their levels, that so no part of the ground might be lost The first quadrangles were the largest, and as spacious as the situation of the place could bear, some being of that length and breadth as were capable to receive a hundred, some two hundred, or three hundred bushels of seed Those of the second row were made narrower and shorter. * * * * In some parts they brought the channels of water from fifteen or twenty leagues distance, though it were only to improve a slip of a few acres of land, which was esteemed good corn ground" Royal Commentaries of Peru, part i book v. ch i The Mercurio Peruano describes extensive works for irrigation among the Peruvians, of which the vestiges are still to be seen Mercur Peruano, viii 38 Acosta tells us, (Nat and Mor Hist book iii ch xviii) "The Indians do draw from these floods, that run from the mountains to the valleys and plains, many and great brooks to water their lands, which they usually do with such industry, as there are no better in Mureia, nor at Millan itself, the which is also the greatest and only wealth of the plains of Peru, and of many other parts of the Indies"

¹ Sonnerat, Voyag liv iii ch viii, Tennant's Ind Recr i 302, The country of the Seiks, a people confessedly barbarous, a well-informed author, Franklin, in his Memoirs of George Thomas, p 65, 66, informs us, is highly cultivated, and their arts and manufactures are on a level with those of any other part of India Les Tartares du Daghestan ont une coutume qu'ils observent soigneusement, savoir, que personne ne peut se marier chez eux, avant que d'avoir, planté en un endroit marqué cent arbres fruitiers, ensorte qu'on trouve partout dans les montaignes du Daghestan de grandes forets d'arbres fruitiers. (Hist. Geneal de Tatars, p 318) Zoroaster made the duties of agriculture part of his religion "To sow grain with purity, is to fulfil the whole extent of the law of the Mazdeesnans" (Anquetil Zendav ii 610) The Heruli, and Lombards, in their native wilds, cultivated flax, "which supposes," says Gibbon, "property, agriculture, manufactures, and commerce." (Gibbon, vii 276)

BOOK II **CHAP. 8.** hancy, and set them neatly in gold and silver. It remains to be ascertained how much of civilization this faculty implies. So early as the time of Moses, the art of forming jewels had attained great perfection among the Jews. In the ephod of Aaron and in the breast plate of judgment, were precious stones set in gold, with the names of the twelve tribes engraved on them. The account of these jewels, in the book of Exodus, suggests ideas of considerable magnificence.' Clavigero informs us, that the ancient Mexicans "set gems in gold and silver, and made most curious jewellery of great value. "In short," says that author, "these sorts of works were so admirably finished, that even the Spanish soldiers, all stung as they were with the same wretched thirst for gold, valued the workmanship above the materials."²

¹ Exod. ch. xxviii. "I look upon engraving on fine stones" says Goguet, (*Origin of Laws*, part ii. book ii. ch. ii. art. 3) "as the most remarkable evidence of the rapid progress of the arts in some countries. This work supposes a number of discoveries, much knowledge and much experience." He adds in a note. "It must be agreed that the ancient Peruvians whose monarchy did not subsisted above three hundred and fifty years, understood perfectly well the working of precious stones. (*Hist. Gen. des Voyages* xii. 578.) Ibid.

² Clavigero, *Hist. of Mexico* book vii. sect. 21. Even the most rude of the American tribes seem not to have been without some knowledge of the art of working the precious stones. M de la Condumine speaking of the green stones, found in some places bordering on the Amazon River in South America says (*Voyage dans l'Intérieur de l'Amérique Méridionale* p. 129), "La vérité est qu'elles ne diffèrent ni en couleur ni en dureté du Jade Oriental; elles résistent à la lime et on n'imagine pas par quel sacrifice les anciens Américains ont pu les tailler et leur donner diverses figures d'animaux sans les casser."—In the same place he mentions another phenomenon of the art of the ancient American. "Ce sont" says he "des Emeryades attondies polies et percées de deux trous coniques, diamétralement opposés sur un axe commun telles qu'on en trouve encore aujourd'hui au Pérou sur les bords de la Rivière de St. Jago dans la province d'Esmeraldas, à quarante lieues de Quito avec divers autres monumens de l'industrie de ses anciens habitans." The men who at present day are eminent lapidaries. Charles Vogt

When Europeans have compared the extreme imperfection, the scantiness and rudeness of the tools by which the Hindu artist performs his task, with the neatness, and in some cases the celerity of the execution, they have frequently drawn an inference, the very reverse of that which the circumstances implied. This sort of faculty is no mark of high civilization. A dexterity in the use of its own imperfect tools is a common attribute of a rude society.

BOOK II.
CHAP. 8

Acosta, speaking of some remarkable instances of this species of talent in the natives of Mexico and Peru, says, "Hereby we may judge, if they have any understanding, or be brutish; for my part, I think they pass us in those things whereunto they apply themselves."¹ Mr. Forster himself, whose admiration was excited by the dexterity of the Hindus, affords an instance in the rude person of a Russian peasant, which might have suggested to him an appropriate conclusion "At the distance," says he, "of a few miles from Choperskoy, the driver of the carriage alarmed me by a report of the hinder axle being shattered, an accident which gave me an op-

en Perse, iii 115 — Olivier says, "Ils taillent assez bien les pierres précieuses, et les montent avec assez de goût" Olivier, Voy, &c v 304, &c "At this place I had an opportunity of seeing their mode of smelting gold Isaaco had purchased some gold in coming through Konkodoo, and here he had made it into a large ring The smith made a crucible of common red clay, and dried it in the sun Into this he put the gold, without any flux or mixture whatever He then put charcoal under it and over it, and blowing the fire with the common bellows of the country, soon produced such a heat as to bring the gold into a state of fusion He then made a small furrow in the ground, into which he poured the melted gold When it was cold, he took it up, and, heating it again, soon hammered it into a square bar Then heating it again, he twisted it by means of two pair of pincers into a sort of screw, and, lengthening out the ends, turned them up, so as to form a massy and precious ring" Mungo Park's Last Mission to Afria, p 78

¹ Acosta, Nat and Mor Hist of the Indies, book vi chap viii

BOOK II. being all the vice, and the other tools unshapen bits
 CHAP. 8. of iron¹

In the mode in which the Hindoo artisans of almost all descriptions, perform their work, is observed a circumstance, generally found among a rude people and no where else. The carpenter, the blacksmith, the brazier, even the goldsmith and jeweller, not to speak of others produce not their manufacture, as in a refined state of the arts, in houses and workshops of their own, where the accommodations requisite for them can best be combined they repair for each job, with their little budget of tools, to the house of the man who employs them and there perform the service for which they are called².

With regard to the fine arts, a slight sketch will suffice Hardly by any panegyrist is it pretended

¹ Fryer's Travels, let iii. chap. iii. They cut diamonds, he says, with a mill turned by men the string reaching in manner of our cutler's wheels, to lesser that are in a flat press, where under steel wheels diamonds are fastened, and with its own heat are worn into what cut the artist pleases. Ibid.

² The blacksmith goes from place to place carrying his tools with him. Beside his forge and his little furnace a stone serves for an anvil and his whole apparatus consists of a pair of pincers a hammer a mallet and a file. They have not attained the art of polishing gold and silver or of working gold in different colours. The goldsmith goes about with his tools like the blacksmith. Sonnerat Voy. liv. i. chap. iii. The workmen in gold and silver are frequently only little boys who sit every day in the bazaar or market, waiting till they are called when they go to your house with their implements in a little basket consisting of a very small anvil a hammer a pair of bellows a few files and a pair of pincers; a chafing dish or pan of embers is then given to him with a model of what is to be made and the material. He then sets about his work in the open air and performs it with dexterity and ingenuity. Other tradesmen go to your home in the same manner the shoemaker and tailor. Sonnerat Voy. p. 412. It is remarkable how exactly this description of the state of the arts among the Indians tallies with that among the Persians. Chardin informs us that every where in Persia the artisans of all descriptions go to work in the houses of those who employ them—that they perform the work with the poorest apparatus and comparing the tools with the work to a scrupulous degree of perfection. Chardin, Voy. en Perse i. 1. 97

that the sculpture, the painting, the music of the **BOOK II**
Hindus are in a state beyond that in which they **CHAP 8**
appear in early stages of society. The merely me-
chanical part, that for which the principal requi-
sites are time and patience, the natural produce of
rude ages when labour is of little value, is often exe-
cuted with great neatness, and surprises by the idea
of the difficulty overcome. In the province of genius
and taste, nothing but indications of rudeness ap-
pear. The productions are not merely void of at-
traction they are unnatural, offensive, and not un-
frequently disgusting. "The Hindus of this day,"
says Mr. Foster, "have a slender knowledge of the
rules of proportion, and none of perspective. They
are just imitators, and correct workmen, but they
possess merely the glimmerings of genius."¹ "The
style and taste of the Indians," says Paulini, "are
indeed extremely wretched, but they possess a won-
derful aptitude for imitating the arts and inventions
of the Europeans, as soon as the method has been
pointed out to them."² Major Rennel himself in-
forms us, that the imitative or fine arts were not car-
ried to the height even of the Egyptians, much less
of the Greeks and Romans, by the Hindus, that
like the Chinese they made great progress in some of
the useful arts, but scarcely any in those of taste.³

"In India," says Sonnerat, "as well as among all
the people of the East, the arts have made little or
no progress. All the statues we see in their temples
are badly designed and worse executed."⁴ We have
the testimony of Mr. Hodges, which to this point at
least is a high testimony, that the sculpture in the

¹ Forster's Travels, i. 80 ² Bartolomeo's Travels, book i. chap. viii.
³ Rennel's Memoir, p. xxii ⁴ Sonnerat, Voy. liv. iii ch viii

BOOK II pagodas of Hindustan is all very rude¹. In the de-
CHAPTER 8 scription of a temple of Siva, at Hulls bedu in Mysore Dr Buchaon says, " Its walls contain a very ample delineation of Hindu mythology which, in the representation of human or animal forms, is as destitute of elegance as usual but some of the foliage possess great neatness. It much exceeds any Hindu building that I have seen elsewhere "²

Whatever exaggeration we may suppose in the accounts which the historians of Mexico and Peru have given us of the works of sculpture in the new world, the description of them will not permit us to conclude that they were many degrees inferior to the productions of Hindustan. Clavigero says " The Mexicans were more successful in sculpture than in painting. They learned to express in their statues all the attitudes and postures of which the human body is capable they observed the proportions exactly and could, when necessary execute the most delicate and minute strokes with the chisel. The works which they executed by casting of metals were in still more esteem. The miracles they produced of this kind would not be credible if, besides the testimony of those who saw them, curiosities in numbers

¹ Hodges Travels in India. Mr Hodges says " I am concerned I cannot pay so high a compliment to the art of sculpture among the Hindus as is usually paid by many ingenuous authors who write on the religion of Bramah. Considering these works as I do, with the eyes of an artist, they are only to be paralleled with the rude carvings of the ingenuous Indians I have met with in Oubene and on other islands in the South Seas " p 26. He adds in the next page that in point of carving, that is the mere mechanical part, the ornaments in the Hindu temples are often beautiful. In another passage too p 131 he speaks again of the same works in nicely the peculiar sharpness of the cut in Hindu carvings. See to the same purpose Trottet's Indian Antiquities p 170.

² Buchanan Journey through Mysore Ac 11 291

of this nature, had not been sent from Mexico to BOOK II.
Europe "¹ CHAP 8

The progress was similar, as we might presume, in the sister art of painting. The Hindus copy with great exactness, even from nature. By consequence they draw portraits, both of individuals and of groups, with a minute likeness; but peculiarly devoid of grace and expression. Their inability to exhibit the simplest creations of the fancy, is strongly expressed by Dr. Tennant, who says, "The laborious exactness with which they imitate every feather of a bird, or the smallest fibre on the leaf of a plant, renders them valuable assistants in drawing specimens of natural history, but farther than this they cannot advance one step. If your bird is to be placed on a rock, or upon the branch of a tree, the draughtsman is at a stand; the object is not before him; and his imagination can supply nothing"² In one remarkable circumstance their painting resembles that of all

¹ Clavigero, Hist Mex book vii sect 50 He adds, "The works of gold and silver sent in presents from the conqueror Cortez to Charles V filled the goldsmiths of Europe with astonishment, who, as several authors of that period attest, declared that they were altogether inimitable. The Mexican founders made, both of gold and silver, the most perfect images of natural bodies. They made a fish in this manner, which had its scales, alternately, the one of silver and the other of gold, a parrot with a moveable head, tongue, and wings, and an ape with a moveable head and feet, having a spindle in its hand in the attitude of spinning" Ibid Garcilasso tells us, "that the Pernvians framed many figures of men and women, of birds of the air, and fishes of the sea, likewise of fierce animals, such as tigers, lions and bears, foxes, dogs, cats, in short, all creatures whatsoever known amongst them, they cast and moulded into true and natural figures of the same shape and form of those creatures which they represented. They counterfeited the plants and wall-flowers so well, that being on the walls they seemed to be natural, the creatures which were shaped on the walls, such as lizards, butterflies, snakes, and serpents, some crawling up and some down, were so artificially done, that they seemed natural, and wanted nothing but motion" (Book vi chap 1)

² Tennant's Ind Rec i 299

BOOK II other nations who have made but a small progress in
CHAP 8 the arts. They are entirely without a knowledge of perspective and by consequence of all those finer and nobler parts of the art of painting, which have perspective for their requisite basis¹

¹ Dr Tenant, at the place cited above, supports his own authority by quoting the following passage of Socrate. "La peinture chez les Iodiens est, et sera toujours dans l'enfance. Ils trouvent admirable un tableau chargé de rouge et de bleu, et dont les personnes sont vêtus d'or. Ils n'entendent point le clair obscur, n'arondissent jamais les objets, et ne savent pas les mettre en perspective; en un mot, leurs meilleures peintures ne sont que de mauvaises enluminure." (*Voyages aux Indes*, i. 99.) The Indian pictures says Mandelsoe are more remarkable for their diversity of colours than any exactness of proportion Harris Collect. of Voy. 1 How exactly does this correspond with the description which Chardin gives us of the state of the same art among the Persians? En Perse les arts sont liberaux que chez nous; sont en general presque tous rudes et bruts; en comparaison de la perfection ou l'Europe les a portés. Ils entendent faire mal le dessin, ne sachant rien faire au naturel; et ils n'ont aucune connoissance de la perspective. Pour ce que de la plate peinture il est vrai que les visages qu'ils représentent sont assez ressemblans; ils les tirent d'ordinaire de profil parce que ce sont ceux qui ils sont le plus à l'aisance; Ils les font aussi de trois quarts; mais pour les visages en plain ou de front ils y réussissent fort mal, n'entendant pas à y donner les ombres. Ils ne connaissent former une attitude et une pose.

It is anomalous and somewhat surprising that the BOOK II.
music of the Hindus should be so devoid of all excel- CHAP. 8
lence. As music is, in its origin, the imitation of the
tones of passion, and is most naturally employed for
the expression of passion, in rude ages, when the
power of expressing it by articulate language is the
most imperfect, simple melodies, and these often
highly expressive and affecting, are natural to un-
cultivated tribes. It was in the earliest stage of civi-
lization, that Orpheus is fabled to have possessed the
power of working miracles by his lyre. Yet all
Europeans, even those who are the most disposed to
eulogize the attainments of the Hindus, unite in de-
scribing the music of that people, as unpleasing, and
void both of expression and art. Dr. Tennant, who
founds his testimony, both on his own, and other
people's observation, says "If we are to judge
merely from the number of instruments, and the
frequency with which they apply them, the Hindoos
might be regarded as considerable proficients in music,
yet has the testimony of all strangers deemed it
equally imperfect as the other arts. Their warlike
instruments are rude, noisy, and inartificial: and in

the same perfections and imperfections with that of these eastern nations. The colours, Robertson (iii 278) informs us, were remarkably bright, but laid on without any art, and without any regard to light and shade, or the rules of perspective. Clavigero, though the skill of the Mexicans in painting is not one of the points for which he most highly admires them, says, "We have seen, among the ancient paintings, many portraits of the kings of Mexico, in which, besides the singular beauty of the colours, the proportions were most accurately observed." (Hist Mex book vii sect 49) "Les Mexicains," says Humboldt, "ont conservé un goût particulier pour la peinture et pour l'art de sculpter en pierre et en bois. On est étonné de voir ce qu'ils exécutent avec un mauvais couteau, et sur les bois les plus durs. Ils montrent beaucoup d'aptitude pour l'exercice des arts d'imitation, ils en déplacent une plus grande encore pour les arts purement mécaniques. Cette aptitude deviendra un jour très précieuse, &c" Humboldt, Essai Politique sur le Royaume de la Nouvelle Espagne, p 9.

BOOK II. temples, those employed for the purposes of religion
CHAP 8 are managed apparently on the same principle for, in their idea, the most pleasant and harmonious is that which makes the loudest noise"¹ After a description of the extreme rudeness of the instruments of music of the people of Sumbhulpoor, Mr Motte says "The Rajah's band always put me in mind of a number of children coming from a country fair"²

¹ Indian Rec. I 300—Ces peuples n'ont aucune idée des accords. Leur chant commence par un broudonnement sourd et fort bas, après lequel ils crient. Amaury Duperreux Voyage aux Indes Orientales Zendavesta I xxvi. E. en Sonnerat himself informs us that their music is bad and their songs destitute of harmony. Voyages aux Indes lit iii chap. viii

² Motte's Journey to Orissa (Anat. An Regist. i Miscellaneous Tracts p. 77) "Their ideas of music if we may judge from their practice are barbarous." Orme's Hist. Milt. Trans. i 3 The following passage from Garcilaso de la Vega is an important document in the history of music. It exhibits more nakedly the fact respecting its origin than perhaps any other written monument; and it proves at the same time the power of expression which the art had attained

In music" says he "the Peruvians arrived in a certain harmony in which the Indians of Colla did more particularly excel, having been the inventors of a certain pipe made of canes glued together every one of which having a different note of higher and lower in the manner of organs, made a pleasing noise by the dissonancy of sounds the treble tenor and base exactly corresponding and answering to each other with these pipes they often played in concert. They had also other pipes, which were flutes with four or five stops like the pipes of shepherds; with these they played not in concert but singly and joined them to sonnets which they composed in metre the subject of which was love and the passions which arise from the favours or disfancies of a mistress. Every song was set to its proper tune so that two songs of different subjects could not correspond with the same air by reason that the music which the gallant made on his flute was designed to express the will fiction or discontent of his mind which were not so intelligible perhaps by the words as by the melancholy or cheerful tenor of the tune which he played. A certain Spaniard one night late encountered an Indian woman in the streets of Cuzco, and would have brought her back to his lodgings; but she cried out 'For God's sake sir let me go, for that pipe which you bear in your pocket has made me with great passion and I cannot refuse the summons for love constrain me to go that I may be his wife and be my husband. The songs which they composed of their wars and great achievement were never set to the air of their flute being too grave and serious to

As the talent of the Hindus for accurate imitation, BOOK II.
both in the manual and in some of the refined arts,
CHAP 8
has excited much attention; and been sometimes
regarded as no mean proof of ingenuity and mental
culture, it is necessary to remark, that there are few
things by which the rude state of society is more uni-
formly characterized. It is in reality the natural
precursor of the age of invention; and disappears, or
at least ceases to make a conspicuous figure, when the
nobler faculty of creation comes into play. Garcilasso
de la Vega, who quotes Blas Valera, in his support,
tells us that the Peruvian Indians, "if they do but
see a thing, will imitate it so exactly, without being
taught, that they become better artists and mecha-
nics than the Spaniards themselves"¹

be intermixed with the pleasures and softnesses of love, for these were only sung at their principal festivals when they commemorated their victories and triumphs" Royal Comment book ii ch xiv "The accounts of twenty-two centuries ago represent the Indians as a people who stood very high in point of civilization but to judge from their ancient monuments, they had not carried the imitative arts to any thing like the degree of perfection attained by the Greeks and Romans, or even by the Egyptians Both the Hindoos and the Chinese appear to have carried the arts just to the point requisite for useful purposes, but never to have approached the summit of perfection, as it respects taste or boldness of design" Rennel's Memoir, Introd p xxii Our latest informants are the most intelligent Mr Ward (Introd p lxii) assures us, "whatever may have been the case in other countries, idolatry in this has certainly not contributed to carry the arts of painting or sculpture to any perfection The Abbé Dubois (p 463) observes, "that the ornamental arts, such as painting, instrumental music, and the like, are extremely low in estimation Hardly any but the low tribe of the Mushiers exercise the first of these, and music is nearly confined to the barbers and Pariahs, instrumental music wholly so The small encouragement these two arts receive is, no doubt, owing to the little progress they have made In painting, nothing can be seen but mere daubing, set off with bright colours and extravagant glare And though all Hindus are great lovers of music, introducing it into all their civil and religious ceremonies, yet I can vouch that it is still in its infancy"

¹ Royal Comment part ii book ii chap xxv Frezier (Voyage to the South Sea, p 263) says of the same people, "They have a genius for

BOOK II Sir William Jones, in pompous terms, remarks
CHAP. 8. "The Hindus are said to have boasted of three inventions, all of which indeed are admirable—the method of instructing by analogies the decimal scale and the game of chess, on which they have some curious treatises."¹ As the game of chess is a species of art, the account of it seems to belong to this place; and as it has been rated high among the proofs of the supposed civilization of the Hindus, we must see what it really imports. Though there is no evidence that the Hindus invented the game except their own pretensions, which as evidence are of very little value, it is by no means improbable that the invention of ingenious games is a sentiment most commonly displayed by nations in their rude condition. It is prior to the birth of industry, that men have the strongest need for games, to relieve them from the pain of idleness; at that period they are most addicted to gaming, bestow upon it the greatest portion of time, and most intensely fix upon it all their faculties. It is in fact, the natural occupation and resource of a rude mind, whenever destitute of the

motives to industry. The valuable and intelligent BOOK II.
 historian of Chili observes of a tribe, but a few removes from the savage state; " If what the celebrated Leibnitz asserts is true, that men have never discovered greater talents than in the invention of the different kinds of games, the Araucanians may justly claim the merit of not being in this respect inferior to other nations. Their games are very numerous, and for the most part very ingenious; they are divided into the sedentary and gymnastic. It is a curious fact, and worthy of notice, that among the first is the game of chess, which they call *comican*, and which has been known to them from time immemorial. The game of *quechu*, which they esteem highly, has a great affinity to that of backgammon, but instead of dice they make use of triangular pieces of bone marked with points, which they throw with a little hoop or circle, supported by two pegs" ¹

¹ Molina, Civil Hist of Chili, book ii chap x. The Persians claim the invention of this game, and as their game is radically different from that of the Hindus, it is probable they are both inventions. See Chardin, Voy en Perse, iii 62. Gibbon, vii 276, marks a fact in the narrative of Paul Diaconus, expressive of the manners of the Heruli. Dum ad tabulam luderet, while he played at draughts, says Gibbon, but he might as well have said chess, for the word as much expresses the one as the other. And we know that, among the Scandinavians, a game very closely resembling chess was known. The ancient chronicles of the Scandinavians frequently present us with young warriors endeavouring to acquire the good opinion of their mistresses by boasting of their accomplishments, such as *their skill at chess*, their dexterity in swimming and skating, their talents in poetry, and their knowing all the stars by their names. Mallet, Introd Hist Denmark, chap xiii. Mr Barrow informs us that the chess of the Chinese is totally different from that both of the Hindus and Persians. Travels in China, p 158. It has been therefore probably, in each of those cases, a separate invention. The idea that chess was invented by the Hindus was, we believe, first started by Hyde (de Relig. Vet Pers' ii 1), and thereafter it has been taken for granted. The curious reader may see an interesting description of a game at chess by four Brahmins, in Moor's Hist of Capt Little's Detachment, p 139. That there are books in India containing the doctrine of chess proves nothing. There are books in Ice-

BOOK II **CHAP. 8.** Though the Hindus knew the art of making a species of rude glass, which was manufactured into trinkets and ornaments for the women they had never possessed sufficient ingenuity to apply it to the many useful purposes to which it is so admirably adapted. In few climates is glass in windows more conducive to comfort than that of Hindustan yet the Hindus had never learnt to afford this accommodation to themselves. Of its adaptation to optical purposes they were so ignorant that they were astonished and confounded at the effects of a common spy-glass. They are unable to construct furnaces sufficiently powerful to melt either European glass, or cast iron¹.

Landie on the art of poetry but the Icelanders were not the inventors of poetry

" Buchanan's Journey through Mysore &c. is 370 Dr Tennant says; " Before the arrival of the Europeans there was not a house in all India furnished with glass windows even at present when glass is so common here I believe none of the natives have avoided themselves of so obvious a remedy. Glass is considered by the Europeans as an indispensable requisite in the construction of every Bungalow at the upper stations; they have even introduced the use of it into the camp. Several officers carry on their march a frame of glass which they fix in the windward door of their tents during the hot wind should the service call them into the field at that season" Indian Recreations I 303 See too, Voyage aux Indes par le P Paulin II. 403 404 The Jews first discovered the art of making glass Tacit Hist lib. 1 cap. viii; Plin. lib. 3 cap. xi also lib. xxxi cap. xxii Stein lib. xvi; Josephus Wars of the Jews lib. 19. The Hindus seem to be considerably behind the perfection which the Japanese have attained in the metal arts. As to all sorts of handicrafts says Hempfer "either curious or useful they are so far from having reached perfection that they rather exceed all other nations in Ingenuity and neatness of workmanship particularly in brass, gold silver copper. What skill they have in working and tempering of iron is evident by the grandeur and neatness of their arms. No nation in the East is so dexterous and ingenious in making carriages gilding gilding of screens which is a particular kind of a precious blackish metal made like by a mixture of copper with like gold. Their workmen are so fine so neat and equal that they are incomparable even to the Chinese" Hempf' Hist of Japan Appendix 2 & c.

In almost every manufacture, and certainly as a BOOK II.
manufacturing people in general, the Hindus are ^{CHAP 8.}
inferior to the Chinese Yet Sir William Jones says
of that latter people; " Their mechanical arts have
nothing in them characteristic of a particular family;
nothing which any set of men, in a country so highly
favoured by nature, might not have discovered and
improved."¹ The partialities, which it was so much
his nature to feel, prevented him from perceiving how
much less entitled to any kind of admiration were the
arts of another people, whom he had adopted it as a
business to eulogize.

¹ Works of Sir W Jones, Discourse on the Chinese.

CHAP IX

Literature

BOOK II As the knowledge of what conduces to the augmentation of human enjoyment and the diminution of human misery is the foundation of all improvement in the condition of human life and as literature is not synonymous with that knowledge is its best friend and its inseparable companion the literature of any people is one of the sources from which the surest inferences may be drawn with respect to their civilization

CHAR 9 The first literature is poetry Poetry is the language of the passions, and men feel, before they speculate The earliest poetry is the expression of the feelings, by which the minds of rude men are the most powerfully actuated Before the invention of writing men are directed also to the use of versification by the aid which it affords to the memory As every thing of which the recollection is valuable must be handed down by tradition whatever tends to make the tradition accurate is of corresponding importance No contrivance to this end is comparable to verse which preserves the ideas, by preserving the very words In verse not only the few historical facts are preserved to which the curiosity of a rude age attaches itself but in verse are promulgated the maxims of religion and the ordinances of law Even after the noble art of writing is known the habit of consigning to verse

every idea, destined for permanency, continues, till certain new steps are effected in the intellectual career¹ BOOK II. CHAP. 9.

At this first stage the literature of the Hindus has always remained The habit of expressing every thing in verse, a habit which urgent necessity imposes upon a people unacquainted with the use of permanent signs, and which the power of custom upholds, till after a certain progress in improvement, even among those to whom permanent signs are known, we trace among the Hindus to the present day. All their compositions, with wonderfully few exceptions, are in verse For history they have only certain narrative poems, which depart from all resemblance to truth and nature; and have evidently no farther connexion with fact than the use of certain names, and a few remote allusions. Their laws, like those of rude nations in general, are in verse Their sacred books, and even their books of science, are in verse, and what is more wonderful still, their very dictionaries.²

¹ “ It was long before mankind knew the art of writing, but they very early invented several methods to supply, in a good measure, that want The method most commonly used was, to compose their histories in verse, and sing them Legislators made use of this expedient to consign and hand down to posterity their regulations The first laws of all nations were composed in verse, and sung Apollo, according to a very ancient tradition, was one of the first legislators The same tradition says, that he published his laws to the sound of his lyre, that is to say, that he had set them to music We have certain proof that the first laws of Greece were a kind of songs The laws of the ancient inhabitants of Spain were verses which they sung Tuiston was regarded by the Germans as their first lawgiver They said he put his laws into verses and songs This ancient custom was long kept up by several nations ” Goguet’s Origin of Laws, i 28 See the various authorities there quoted The laws of the Druids were in verse Henry, Hist. of Great Britain, i 315

² “ Le Dictionnaire Amarasingha est écrit en vers Sanscrit, comme tous les anciens livres, et n’est pas divisé par chapitres comme les nôtres, mais par classes de noms ainsi classe *Svargavargga*, c’est à dire classe des noms qui appartiennent au ciel, *Manouchavargga*, de

BOOK II. There is scarcely any point connected with the state of Hindu society, on which the spirit of exag-
CHAP 9 geration and enthusiasm has more signally displayed itself than the poetry of the Hindus. Among those whose disposition was more to admire than explore, scarcely any poetry has been regarded as presenting higher claims to admiration. Among the Hindus there are two great poems, the Ramayan and the Mahabarat which are long narratives, or rather miscellanies in verse and which their admirers have been puzzled whether to denominate histories, or epic poems. By the Hindus themselves, they are moreover regarded as books of religion nay farther, as books of law and in the Digest which the Brahmens, under the authority of the British government, have recently compiled the text of these poems is inserted as text of the law in the same manner as the text of any other legal authority and standard. They may even be regarded as books of philosophy and accordingly the part of the Mahabarat, with the translation of which Mr Wilkins has favoured us, he actually presents to his reader as one of the most instructive specimens of the philosophical speculations of the country.

It is incompatible with the present purpose to speak of these poems in more than general terms. They describe a series of actions in which a number of men and gods are jointly engaged. These fictions are not only more extravagant, and unnatural less correspondent with the physical and moral laws of

the universe, but are less ingenious, more monstrous, BOOK II.
and have less of any thing that can engage the affection, awaken sympathy, or excite admiration, reverence, or terror, than the poems of any other, even the rudest people with whom our knowledge of the globe has yet brought us acquainted.¹ They are excessively prolix and insipid. They are often, through long passages, trifling and childish to a degree, which those acquainted with only European poetry can hardly conceive. Of the style in which they are composed it is far from too much to say, that all the vices which characterize the style of rude nations, and particularly those of Asia, they exhibit in perfection. Inflation, metaphors perpetual, and these the most violent and strained, often the most unnatural and ridiculous, obscurity; tautology, repetition, verbosity, confusion, incoherence, distinguish the Mahabarat and Ramayan. That amid the num-

CHAP 9.

¹ Even Mr Maurice, whose appetite for Hindu miracles is not easily overcome, could not digest the beauties of their historic muse. After an exhibition of some of these specimens in his history, he says, "I know not whether some of my readers may not be so insensible to the charms of the Indian historic muse, as to rejoice that the Ramayan (only passages of it were then in an English dress) has not been translated, for certainly inflated accounts of the combats of giants, hurling rocks, and darting serpents at one another, and of monsters, whose blood, spouting forth in torrents, is formed into considerable rivers, are not very consistent with the sober and dignified page of history." Maurice, Hist of Hindustan, ii 100. "To the above list of absurdities, we may add monsters with ten heads and a hundred hands, which continue to fight after all their heads are cut off, and mow down whole battalions" Ibid p 248. "The minute accounts of incantations and combats of giants, that fill the Indian legends, however they may astonish the oriental literati, have no charm for the polished scholar of western climes, and are justly consigned to puerile reading" Ibid p. 251. Yet Sir William Jones could say, "The first poet of the Hindus was the great Valmic, and his Ramayan is an epic poem on the story of Rama (or rather of the three Ramas,) which in unity of action, magnificence of imagery, and elegance of style, far surpasses the learned and elaborate work of Nonnus" See Asiat Res i 258. We strongly suspect that Sir William Jones never read the poem, or more of it than scraps.

BOOK II Verless effusions, which a wild imagination throws forth, in its loose and thoughtless career there should now and then be something which approaches the confines of reason and taste, is so far from surprising that it would be truly surprising if there were not. A happy description or here and there the vivid conception of a striking circumstance, are not sufficient the exact observation of nature and the symmetry of a whole are necessary, to designate, the poetry of a cultivated people.

Of the poems in dialogue, or in the dramatic form, *Sacontala* has been selected as the most favourable specimen. The author, Calidas, though he left only two dramatic pieces, Sir William Jones denominates the *Shakspeare of India*, and tells us that he stands next in reputation to their great historic poets, *Valmīcī* and *Vyāsa*.

Sacontala was the daughter of a pious king named Causica and of a goddess of the lower heaven brought up by a devout hermit as his daughter in a consecrated grove. The sovereign of the district on a hunting excursion arrives by accident in the forest. He observes *Sacontala* and her two companions, the daughters of the hermit in the grove with watering pots in their hand watering their plants. Instantly he is captivated. He enters into conversation with the damsels, and the heart of *Sacontala* is secretly inflamed. The King dismisses his attendants and resolves to remain in the forest. In a little time the quality of the lover is ascertained while the secret agitation in the bosom of *Sacontala* throws her into a languor which re embles disease. The King over hears a conversation between her and her companion in which being closely interrogated she confesses her love. The King immediately discovers himself and declares his passion. The two friends

contrive to leave them together, and they consummate BOOK II.
CHAP 9 that kind of marriage which two lovers contract from the desire of amorous embraces." So precipitate a conclusion, irreconcileable as it is with the notions of a refined people, is one of the numerous marriages legal among the Hindus. Presently, however, the king is summoned to his court. He promises to send for his wife in three days, and leaves a ring. In the mean time a Brahmen, of a proud and choleric temper, comes to the residence of the hermit, when his two daughters are at a little distance, and Sacontala has been overtaken with sleep. Finding no one to receive him with the expected honours, he utters an imprecation. "He on whom thou art meditating, on whom alone thy heart is now fixed, while thou neglectest a pure gem of devotion who demands hospitality, shall forget thee when thou seest him next, as a man restored to sobriety forgets the words which he uttered in a state of intoxication." This malediction, which falls upon Sacontala, is overheard by her companions, and fills them with horror. They hasten to appease the angry Brahmen; who tells them, his words cannot be recalled, but that the spell would be dissolved when the lord of Sacontala should look upon his ring. Her two friends agree to conceal the calamity from Sacontala, who now languishes at the neglect of her husband, and finds herself pregnant. The hermit Canna, who at the time of the visit of the king was absent from home, returns, and is, by a voice from heaven, made acquainted with the events which have intervened. Encouraged by good omens, he soothes Sacontala, and resolves to send her to her lord. Her friends instruct her, should he not immediately recognise her, to show him the ring. Arrived at the palace, she is disowned by the king, thinks of the ring, but

BOOK II discovers it is lost. The King treats her, and the **CHAR 9** messengers who brought her, as impostors and orders them into custody but while they are conveying her away, a body of light, descending in a female shape, receives her into its bosom and disappears upon which the king regards the whole as a piece of sorcery, and dismisses it from his thoughts. After a time, however, the ring is found, and conveyed to the king when his wife and all the connected circumstances, immediately rush upon his mind. He is then plunged into affliction - ignorant where Sacontala may be found. In this despondency he is summoned by Indra, the god of the firmament, to aid him against a race of giants, whom Indra is unable to subdue. Having ascended to the celestial regions, and acquitted himself gloriously in the divine service, he is conveyed, in his descent to the earth, to the mountain Hemacuta, "where Casyapa, father of the immortals and Aditi his consort, reside in blessed retirement." To this sacred spot had Sacontala, by her mother's influence been conveyed and there she had brought forth her son a wonderful infant, whom his father found at play with a lion's whelp, and making the powerful animal feel the superiority of his strength. The King now recognizes his wife and his son, of whom the most remarkable things are portended and perfect happiness succeeds.

There is surely nothing in the invention of this story which is above the powers of the imagination in an uncultivated age. With the scenery and the manners which the Hindu poet has perpetually present to his observation, and the mythology which perpetually reigns in his thoughts, the incidents are among the most obvious, and the most easy to be imagined which it was possible for him to

choose Two persons of celestial beauty and accomplishments meet together in a solitary place, and fall mutually in love: To the invention of this scene but little ingenuity can be supposed to be requisite To create an interest in this love, it was necessary it should be crossed. Surely no contrivance for such a purpose was ever less entitled to admiration than the curse of a Brahmen A ring with power to dissolve the charm, and that ring at the moment of necessity lost, are contrivances to bring about a great event, which not only display the rudeness of an ignorant age, but have been literally, or almost literally, repeated, innumerable times, in the fables of other uncultivated nations To overcome the difficulties, which the interest of the plot rendered it necessary to raise, by carrying a man to heaven to conquer giants for a god, for whom the god was not a match, is an expedient which requires neither art nor invention; and which could never be endured, where judgment and taste have received any considerable cultivation.

BOOK II
CHAP. 9

The poem, indeed, has some beautiful passages. The courtship, between Sacontala and Dushmantu, is delicate and interesting; and the workings of the passion in two amiable minds are naturally and vividly pourtrayed The friendship which exists between the three youthful maidens is tender and delightful; and the scene which takes place when Sacontala is about to leave the peaceful hermitage where she had happily spent her youth; her expressions of tenderness to her friends, her affectionate parting with the domestic animals she had tended, and even with the flowers and trees in which she had delighted, breathe more than pastoral sweetness. These, however, are precisely the ideas and affections, wherever the scene is a peaceful one, which may naturally arise

BOOK II. in the simplest state of society as the fables of **CHAP 9** the golden age and of Arcadia abundantly testify; and in whatever constitutes the beauty of these scenes they are rivalled by the Song of Solomon, which is avowedly the production of a simple and unpolished age¹. Beyond these few passages, there is nothing in Sacontala, which either accords with the understanding or can gratify the fancy, of an instructed people.

Sir William Jones, who on the subject of a supposed ancient state of high civilization, riches and happiness among the Hindus, takes every thing for granted, not only without proof but in opposition to almost every thing saving the assumptions of the Brahmins, which could lead him to a different conclusion says, "The dramatic species of entertainment must have been carried to great perfection, when Vicratnadya, who reigned in the first century before Christ gave encouragement to poets, philologers, and mathemoticons, at a time when the Britons were as unlettered and unpolished as the army of Hanumot."² Sir William forgets that, even a century before Christ, the Britons had their Druids between whom and the Brahmins, in character, doctrines, and requirements, a remarkable similarity has been traced³.

¹ Of the Song of Solomon Voltaire notwithstanding all his perorations against the Jews, confesses "Après tout, ce cantique est un exercice précieux de l'antiquité. C'est le seul li re d'amour qui nous soit resté des Hébreux. Il y est toutent poésie de Juiverance. C'est une élogie Juive. Le style est comme celui de tous les ouvrages de l'époque des Hébreux sans liaison sans sorte de plaid, d'répétition, toutefois subtilement métaphorique; mais il y a des endroits qui se répètent. Il n'a pas été et l'amour Voltaire Diction. Mais Non Solon. The criticism would in most respects exactly suit Sacontala.

² Preface to Sir William Jones' Translation of Sacontala.

³ The comparisons in their religious systems have really been remarked. All their doctrines their manners and even the laws of which they were the promulgators "I find in vain," "They had made considerable progress," says Dr. Henry "in several branches of knowl-

The mere existence, however, of dramatic entertainments has been held forth, in the case of the Hindus, as proof of a high state of civilization ; and Sir William Jones, whose imagination on the accomplishments of the orientals delighted to gild, thinks the representation of Sacontala must have been something pre-eminently glorious , as the scenery must have been striking , and “as there is good reason,” he says, “to believe, that the court at Avanti was equal in brilliancy, in the reign of Vicramaditya, to that of any monarch in any age or country.”¹ To how great a degree this latter supposition is erroneous, we shall presently see. In the mean time, it is proper to remark, that nations may be acquainted with dramatic entertainments, who have made but little progress in knowledge and civilization. In extent of dominion, power, and every thing on which the splendour of a court depends, it will not, probably, be alleged, that any Hindu sovereign ever surpassed the present emperors of China. The Chinese, too, are excessively fond of dramatic performances ; and they excel in poetry as well as the Hindus ; yet our British ambassador and his retinue found their dramatic representations very rude and dull entertainments.²

ing We shall be confirmed in this,” he adds, “by observing the respectful terms in which the best Greek and Roman writers speak of their learning Diogenes Laertius places them in the same rank, in point of learning and philosophy, with the Chaldeans of Assyria, the Magi of Persia, and the gymnosophists and Brachmans of India Both Caesar and Mela observe, that they had formed very large systems of astronomy and natural philosophy, and that these systems, together with their observations on other parts of learning, were so voluminous, that their scholars spent no less than twenty years in making themselves masters of them, and in getting by heart that infinite multitude of verses in which they were contained” Henry’s Hist. of Great Britain. ii 5, and 1 153

¹ Preface to Sacontala

² “Wretched dramas,” Lord Macartney calls them Barrow’s Life of Lord Macartney, ii 286

Garcilasso de la Vega, on the subject of the ancient Peruvians, says,

BOOK II As poetry is the first cultivated of all the branches
CHAP. 9 of literature, there is at least one remarkable instance, that of Homer, to prove, that in a rude state of society it may acquire extraordinary perfection. At a point of civilization lower than that which we ascribe to the Hindus, poetry has been produced more excellent than theirs. From the effects produced by the poetic declamations of the Druids, it is certain that they must have possessed the faculty of working powerfully on the imaginations and sympathies of their audience. The Celtic poetry, ascribed to Ossian and other bards, which whatever age, more recent or more remote, controversy may assign for its date, is, beyond a doubt, the production of a people whose ideas were extremely scanty, and their manners rude surpasses in every point of excellence, the sterile extravagance of the Hindus. In so rude a state of society as that which existed in Denmark, Iceland, Sweden, at the time of our Anglo-Saxon monarchies, the number of poets,

¹ The Amazons, who were men of the best ingenuity among them invented comedies and tragedies, which in their solemn festi-vals they represented before their king and the lords of his court.—The plot or argument of their tragedies was to represent their military exploits and the triumphs' victories and heroic actions of their renowned men." Royal Commentaries of Peru book II chap. x.

Dramatic as well as lyric poetry" says Clavigero "was greatly in repute among the Mexicans." He then describes their theatres and adds "Boturini says that the Mexican comedies were excellent" Clavigero Illus of Mexico, book vii sect. 43 Cagli (Lettres Américaines L 295) says "Mais que dites vous si je vous assure que les Péruviens jouaient des comedies pendant ces Rues et qu'ils aimoient particulièrement ce plaisir. Cela est évidemment vrai. La comédie fu soit donc un des plus usés du Pérou; mais la tragédie étoit préférée à Théâtre, d'où le peuple étoit républicain. Chez un peuple indépendant on se plait à produire les tyrans sur la scène pour en inspirer la haine à la génération actuelle, qui le transforme à la morte" "Il n'y a pas de son remarquer que du théâtre étes plus rares peuples des îles du Sud." Boturini which is known to the islanders of the South Sea. Is this a proof of the heresy? The plays in the Indian empire are full of music entered under it; but these entertainments are among them the very rude Dr Bluckstein, Asiat. Rev. vi. 30

and the power of their compositions, were exceedingly great.¹ BOOK II
CHAP 9

Even in that figurative and inflated style, which has been supposed a mark of oriental composition, and is, in reality, a mark only of a low stage of society, uniformly discovered in the language of a rude people, the poetry of the northern bards exhibits a resemblance

"The poets of the north" (to use the words of Dr Henry) "were particularly famous in this period, and greatly caressed by our Anglo-Saxon kings. It would be endless," (says an excellent antiquary) "to name all the poets of the north who flourished in the courts of the kings of England, or to relate the distinguished honours and magnificent presents that were heaped upon them." The same writer hath preserved the names of no fewer than eight of those Danish, Norwegian, and Icelandic poets, who flourished in the Court of Canute the Great—The poems of those ancient bards of the north are said to have produced the most amazing effects on those who heard them, and to have roused or soothed the most impetuous passions of the human mind. Revenge, it is well known, rages with the greatest violence in the hearts of warlike, fierce barbarians, and is of all their passions the most furious and ungovernable, and yet it is said to have been subdued by the enchanting power of poetry. Egil-Skallagrim, a famous poet of those times, had quarrelled with Eric Blodov, King of Norway; and in the course of that quarrel had killed the King's son and several of his friends, which raised the rage of Eric against him to the greatest height. Egil was taken prisoner, and sent to the King, who was then in Northumberland. No sooner was he brought into the presence of the enraged Monarch, who had in his own mind doomed him to the most cruel tortures, than he began to sing a poem which he had composed in praise of his royal virtues, and conveyed his flattery in such sweet and soothing strains, that they procured him not only the forgiveness of all his crimes, but even the favour of his prince. The power of poetry is thus described in one of their most ancient odes. "I know a song by which I soften and enchant the arms of my enemies, and render their weapons of none effect. I know a song which I need only to sing when men have loaded me with bonds, for the moment I sing it my chains fall in pieces, and I walk forth at liberty. I know a song useful to all mankind, for as soon as hatred inflames the sons of men, the moment I sing it, they are appeased. I know a song of such virtue, that, were I caught in a storm, I can hush the winds, and render the air perfectly calm."—Those ancient bards, who had acquired so great an ascendant over the minds of their ferocious countrymen, must certainly have been possessed of an uncommon portion of that poetic fire which is the gift of nature, and cannot be acquired by art.—Henry's Hist. of Great Britain, book vi chap v.

BOOK II. to that of the Hindus, the Persians, Aralians, and other eastern nations. "The style of these ancient poems," says Mallet, "is very enigmatical and figurative, very remote from common language, and for that reason grand, but tumid, sublime, but obscure. If every thing should be expressed by imagery, figures, hyperboles, and allegories, the Scandinavians may rank in the highest class of poets."¹ For these peculiarities, too, thus author philosophically accounts "The soaring flights of fancy, may possibly more peculiarly belong to a rude and uncultivated than to a civilized people. The great objects of nature strike more forcibly on their imaginations. Their passions

¹ Mallet, *Introd. Hist. Denmark* I. 13. The following is a very soft but correct delineation of the rude features of Hindu poetry. The poetical expression of the Hindus perhaps offends by too great stiffness and emphasis. One may understand their books and conversation in prose; but it is impossible to comprehend those in verse until diligent study has rendered them familiar. Quaint phrases, perpetual allegories, the poetical terminations of the words, contracted expressions and the like render the poetical style obscure and difficult to be understood excepting to those who are initiated to it. One of the principal defects of the Hindu poets is that their descriptions are commonly too long and minute. For example. If they are describing a beautiful woman, they are never contented with drawing her likeness with a single stroke.

Such a mode of expression would not be strong enough for the gross comprehension of a Hindu. The poet must particularize the beauty of her eyes, her forehead, her nose, her cheeks, and must expatiate on the colour of her skin and the manner in which she adorns every part of her body. He will describe the turn and proportion of her arms, legs, thighs, shoulders, chest, and in a word of all parts visible or invisible; with an accurate recital of the shape and form which best indicate their beauty and symmetry. He will never desist from his colouring, till he has represented in detail every feature and part in the most libentious and tedious style. But at the same time with the closest resemblance. The epithets in their poetical style are frequent, and almost always burlesque.—The beauty and coquetry of many modes of expression in the Hindu idioms does not hinder their style upon the whole from being extremely diffuse.—To give an exact idea of the different species of Hindu poetry would not be much facilitated by the greater number of reader's and critic's own ears. All the chief species of Hindu poetry are in general very flat." Description de l'Inde, etc. etc. "In—by Mallet I. p. 26

are not impaired by the constraint of laws and education. The paucity of their ideas, and the barrenness of their language, oblige them to borrow from all nature images in which to clothe their conceptions."¹ The poetry of the Persians resembles that of the Arabians; both resemble that of the Hindus, both have been celebrated in still higher strains, and are entitled to more of our admiration. The Persians have their great historic poem, the *Shah Namu*, corresponding to the Mahabarat or Ramayan of the Hindus. It embraces a period of 3,700 years, and consists of 60,000 rhymed couplets. On this poem the most lofty epithets of praise have been bestowed; and a part of it, embracing a period of 300 years, Sir William Jones selects as itself a whole; a poem truly epic, of which the merit hardly yields to that of the Iliad itself.² We shall speak of it in the language of an oriental scholar, who has made the literature of Persia more peculiarly his study than Sir William Jones. The *Shah Namu*, says Mr. Scott Waring, "has probably been praised as much for its length as its intrinsic merit. When we allow it is unequalled in the East,

¹ Mallet, *ut supra*. In the very subjects of their poems, as well as the style of them, the Scandinavian bards bore a great resemblance to the Hindu. Of the poetry of the Scalds, Mallet says, *Ibid* ii. 183, "The same taste and mode of composition prevails every where we have constantly allegories and combats, giants contending with the gods, Loke perpetually deceiving them, Thor interposing in their defence, &c." The Scandinavians had not only striking poems, but treatises on the art of poetry. *Id. Introduction to the Edda*, p. viii Clavigero says of the Mexicans, "The language of their poetry was brilliant, pure, and agreeable, figurative, and embellished with frequent comparisons to the most pleasing objects in nature, such as flowers, trees, rivers, &c." *Hist. of Mex.* book vii. sect. 42.

² The words of Sir William Jones are "Nobilissimum interea, et longissimum (voluminis enim permagni, prope dimidiam partem constituit) est sine ulla dubitatione vere epicum, et profecto nullum est ab Europeis scriptum poema, quod ad Homeri dignitatem, et quasi cœlestem ardorem proprius accedat" *Works*, ii. 502.

BOOK II we must pause before we pronounce it to be equal, or
CHAP. 9 to approach very nearly, to the divinest poem of the West. The stories in the Shah Namu," he says, "are intricate and perplexed, and as they have a relation to each other they can only be understood by a knowledge of the whole. Episodes are interwoven in episodes—peace and war succeed each other—and centuries pass away without making any alteration in the conduct of the poem—the same prince continues to resist the Persian arms—the same hero leads them to glory—and the subtlety of supposing two Astrabads or two Roostums, betrays, at least, the intricacy and confusion of the whole fable. The character of Nestor answered the most important ends his eloquence and experience had a wonderful effect in soothing the contentions of a divided council—but the age of Zal or of Roostum answers no purpose for they only share longevity in common with their fellow creatures." In many instances, he adds, "the poet is tedious and uninteresting. He is often too minute and by making his description particular makes it ridiculous. An example of this may be given in his description of the son of Ukwon Deo which instead of expressing his immense size by some bold figure gives us his exact measure. *He was one hundred yards high and twenty broad*"¹. With respect to the style of this as well as of other Persian poets, the same author informs us that "the style of the most admired Persian authors is verbose and turgid—the mind is filled with words and epithets and you probably meet with several quibbles and monstrous images before you arrive at one fact."² And in another

¹ *Tours to Shemsh* by Ed Scott Waugh pp. 148, 149, 160, 161.

² *Ibid.* p. 150. The author add. I shall give one instance from an immense number of the forced images of Persian literature; it would be tedious to the reader to produce others:—"a style of which were

passage he says, "The Persian poets, in all their BOOK II,
similes or comparisons, fall infinitely below medioc- CHAP. 9.
rity."¹

As soon as reason begins to have considerable influence in the direction of human affairs, no use of letters is deemed more important than that of preserving an accurate record of those events and actions by which the interests of the nation have been promoted or impeded. But the human mind must have a certain degree of culture, before the value of such a

than one instance would disgust must be a bad style indeed — "Nous savons assez," says Voltaire, "que le bon gout n'a jamais été connu dans l'Orient — Otez aux Arabes, aux Persans, aux Juifs, le soleil et la lune, les montagnes et les vallées, les dragons et les basilics, il ne leur reste presque plus de poesie" Voltaire, *Essai sur les Mœurs et l'Esprit de Nations*, tom 1 ch 1.

¹ Tour to Sheeraz, ut supra, p 235 To the imagination of the eastern poets, and above all, of the Hindus, may be aptly applied, in many of its particulars, the description of the Demoness, Imagination, in the enchanted castle of Hermaphrodite.

Sous les grands arcs—d'un immense portique,
Amas confus de moderne et d'antique,
Se promenoit un fantôme brillant,
Au pied léger, à l'œil étincelant,
Au geste vif, à la marche égarée,
La tête haute, et de clinquans parée
On voit son corps toujours en action,
Et son nom est l'*Imagination*,
Non cette belle et charmante déesse
Qui présida dans Rome et dans la Grèce,
Aux beaux travaux de tant de grands auteurs,
Qui repandit l'éclat de ses couleurs,
Mais celle là qu'aljure le bon sens,
Cette etourdie, effarée, insipide,
Que tant d'auteurs approchent de si près

• • •
Près d'elle étoit le Galimatias,
Monstre bavard caressé dans ses bras

La Pucelle d'Orléans, Chant 17me

Gibbon well denominates the Koran, "an endless incoherent rhapsody of fable, and precept, and declamation, which seldom excites a sentiment or an idea, which sometimes crawls in the dust, and is sometimes lost in the clouds" Chap I p 269. Yet it is a superior composition to any work among the Hindus.

BOOK II. memorial is perceived. **Chap. 9** The actions of his nation, or of his countrymen, which the rude and untutored barbarian is excited to remember, are those which he wonders at and admires and they are remembered solely for the pleasure of those emotions. Exaggeration, therefore, is more fitted to his desires than exactness and poetry than history. Swelled by fiction, and set off with the embellishments of fancy, the scene lays hold of his imagination, and kindles his passions. All rude notions, even those to whom the use of letters has long been familiar, neglect history, and are gratified with the productions of the mythologists and poets.

It is allowed on all hands that no historical composition existed in the literature of the Hindus they had not reached that point of intellectual maturity at which the value of a record of the past for the guidance of the future begins to be understood. "The Hindus" says that zealous and industrious Sanscrit scholar, Mr. Wilsford, "have no ancient civil history." Remarking a coincidence in this characteristic circumstance between them and another ancient people he adds, "Nor had the Egyptians any work purely historical."¹ Major Rennel says, that founded on Hindu materials, there is no known history of Hindustan nor any record of the historical events of that country prior to the Mohomedan conquests² and since that period it is not to Hindu but Mahomedan pens that we are indebted for all our knowledge of the Mohomedan conquests and of the events which preceded the passage to India by the Cape of Good Hope.³ An inclination at first appeared among

¹ Wilsford on Egypt and the Nile Asiat. Rev. p. 29.

² Rennel's Memoir, Intro. p. xl.

³ "The two Hindu nations, but the C. bmr. have I seen regular histories," says Sir W. Jones, "in their several languages we must

the warm admirers of Sanscrit to regard the poems BOOK II.
Mahabharat and Ramayan, as a sort of historical re- CHAP 9.
- cords. A more intimate acquaintance with those

ever lament." *Asiat Res* iv xvii What he meant by excepting the Cashmarians, we know not No history of them has ever been seen "Although we have had recourse," says Dr Tennant, "to the Sanscrit records at Benares for several years, no history of the country has been found, which is the composition of a native" *Ind Rec* i 10 "Their poets," says Mr W Chambers, "seem to have been their only historians as well as divines, and whatever they relate is wrapped up in this burlesque garb, set off, by way of ornament, with circumstances highly incredible and absurd, and all this without any date, and in no order or method, than such as the poet's fancy suggested and found most convenient *Asiat Res* i 157 Such is the character of the Puranas, from which Mr Wilford has exerted himself with such a waste of labour and credulity to extract some scattered fragments of history, or rather something, it is difficult to say what, on which some few historical inferences might be founded "The department of ancient history in the East is so deformed by fable and anachronism, that it may be considered an absolute blank in Indian literature" Wilks's *Mysore*, Pref p xv Mr Dow's prejudices went far "We must not," says he, (Preface to his *Hist of Hindostan*) "with Ferishta, consider the Hindoos as destitute of genuine domestic annals, or that those voluminous records they possess are mere legends framed by the Bramins" Yet it has been found that all which Ferishta said was true, and all that Col. Dow believed was false—"Seriously speaking, the turn and bent of the imagination of the people of India are such, that they can in no wise be excited but by what is monstrous Ordinary occurrences make no impression upon them at all Their attention cannot be gained without the introduction of giants and pygmies The Brahmins, therefore having studied this propensity, availed themselves of it to invent a religious worship, which they artfully interwove with their own private interests—This passion of the Hindus for the extraordinary and the wonderful must have been remarked by every one who has ever so little studied their character It continually leads to the observation I have so frequently repeated, that as often as it was necessary to move their gross imagination, some circumstance, altogether extravagant, but coloured with the hue of truth, was required to be added to the simplicity of narrative or fact To give them any idea of the marvellous, something must be invented that will overturn, or at least alter the whole order of nature The miracles of the Christian religion, however extraordinary they must appear to a common understanding, are by no means so to the Hindus Upon them they have no effect The exploits of Joshua and his army, and the prodigies they effected by the interposition of God, in the conquest of the land of Canaan, seem to them unworthy of notice, when compared with the achievements of their own Rama, and the miracles which attended his progress when he sub-

BOOK II grotesque productions has demonstrated the impossibility of reconciling them with the order of human affairs, and, as the only expedient to soften the deformities in which they abound, suggested a theory that they are allegorical.¹

CHAP. 9 The ancient Persians, who used the Pehlivi language, appear in this respect to have resembled the Hindus. "I never" says Sir John Malcolm, "have been able to hear of the existence of any work in the ancient Pehlivi that could be deemed historical."²

jected Ceylon to his yoke. The mighty strength of Samson dwindles into nothing, when opposed to the overwhelming energy of Râni, of Râvan and the giants. The resurrection of Lazarus itself is in their eyes an ordinary event, of which they see frequent examples in the Vishnu ceremonies of the *Pâtrikâdam*—I particularise these examples because they have been actually opposed to me more than once by Brahmins, in my discussions with them on religion." Abbe Dubois, p. 421.

Such is the opinion of some of the best Sanscrit scholars; for example of Mr. Wilkins. The same idea is encouraged by Sir William Jones Anat. Res. ii. 135. The good sense of Major Rennel rejected at an early period the notion of their historical truth. "The Mahabharat supposed to contain a large portion of interesting historical matter: but if the father of Grecian poetry made so total a change in the story of Helen in order to give a full scope to his imagination what security have we that another poet may not mislead us in matters of fact," Memoir p. xlvi. A rulod of greater compass and force had previously said "It were absurd to quote the fable of the Iliad or the Odysey, the legends of Hercules, Theseus or Oedipus as authorities in matter of fact relating to the history of mankind; but they may with great justice be cited to ascertain what were the conceptions and sentiments of the age in which they were composed or to characterize the genius of that people with whose imaginations they were blended and by whom they were fondly rehearsed and admired." Ferguson's *Essay on the Iliad of Civil Society* part ii sect. I.

* Hist. of Persia L. 2nd Yet the Jewish scriptures tell us that the deeds of the kings of Persia were written in chronicles of that kingdom; and Ctesias who was at the court of Artaxerxes Mnemnon in the hall access to volumes existing in the royal archivæ. The Persians had no historians before the time of Mohammed; Knecht's *Gesch. Mem. of the Persian Empire* p. 49.—In Persia there is now as there has long been a royal historiographer whose business it is to record the glories of the reigning prince. Ibid.

The modern Persians, in this, as in many other respects, are found to have made some progress beyond the ancient Persians, and beyond the Hindus. The first step towards the attainment of perfect history is the production of prose compositions, expressly destined to exhibit a record of real transactions, but in which imagination prevails over exactness, and a series of transactions appears in which the lines of reality can but faintly be traced. With histories of this description the Persians abound, but "the Persians," says Mr. Scott Waring, "do not make a study of history, consequently their histories abound with idle tales, and extravagant fables"¹ Another celebrated Persian scholar says; "The Persians, like other people, have assumed the privilege of romancing on the early periods of society. The first dynasty is, in consequence, embarrassed by fabling. Their most ancient princes are chiefly celebrated for their victories over the demons or genii called dives; and some have reigns assigned to them of eight hundred or a thousand years"² On the comparison of the Grecian and native histories of Persia, he says, "There seems to be nearly as much resemblance between the annals of England and Japan, as between the European and Asiatic relations of the same empire." The names and numbers of the kings as exhibited by the historians of the two countries, have no analogy. No mention in the Persian annals is made of the Great Cyrus, nor of any King of Persia, the events of whose reign can, by any construction, be tortured into a similitude with his. No trace is to be found of Croesus, of Cambyses, or of his expedition against the Ethiopians, none of Smerdis Magus, or of

¹ Tour to Sheeraz, p 152² Richardson's Dissertations, p 47.

BOOK II Darius' Hyrcaspes "not a vestige of the famous battles of Marathon Thermopylae, Salamis, Platea, or Mycale, nor of the mighty expedition of Xerxes."¹

¹ Richardson's *Dissertations* p. 47 to 60. He gives us the following as the account, by the Persian historians, of the conquest of Alexander Bohman the King, had married his own daughter. When he died leaving her pregnant he appointed her his successor if she had no son; and regent if she had one. The lady wished to reign; and being delivered of a son concealed his birth. He was exposed but found and brought up by a dyer. When grown to manhood he joined the Queen's army which was marching against the Greeks, and performed prodigies of valour. The Queen sent for him; he was recognized and the Queen reigned. He became King Darab. He marched against Philip of Macedon and forced him to take refuge in a forest. Peace was granted on Philip's giving his daughter to Darab and paying annually a thousand eggs of gold. Philip's daughter desired to please and Darab sent her back after she was pregnant. The child she brought forth was the famous Alexander. The son of Darab who succeeded him proved so bad a king that the nobles of Persia advised Alexander to assert his right to the throne. Alexander refused the annual tribute. Darab, the younger marched against him and was conquered. After the battle he was assassinated in his tent by his attendants. But Alexander protested his ignorance of the crime and Darab named him his successor requesting him to govern Persia by Persian nobles which he did. Ibid. In another passage (Ibid. p. 376) he acknowledges that no account is found in the Persian histories of the expedition of Cyrus the younger. The story of Alexander as told by Sir John Malcolm in his late history of Persia is similar though not the same. Mr. Gibbon says well. "The art and genius of his story have ever been unknown to the Ancients." And perhaps the Arabs might not find in a single historian so clear and comprehensive a narrative of their own exploits as will be deduced in the ensuing sheets." Gibbon, chap. II. Chardin the King of the ignorant of the Persians in regard to geography and history says. "On ne connaît jamais que cette Ignorance fut au siécle qui ille l'est et je ne l'aprouve pas eroit moins malicie si j'avois en etoie confiance par un bon usage Pour ce qu'il est de l'histoire du pays les livres qui en traient ne sont élatis et sûrs et ne se sui ent, que depuis la naissance de la religion Mahométaine; de maniere qu'on ne se peut servir de ces qui est rapporté de veiles precedens a tout en maniere de chose forte ou ces gens connaissent les plus grossieres erreurs, certains ont les veiles et mettant tout le siècle sans se soucier du temps —Toutes ces histories jusqu'au temps de Mahomed sont des pretextes sans envers ou il en est enqur et remplis d'erreurs ou il n'y a rien de véritable" Voyer en I. t. 1. "56. And C. Bonnass (Hist. of Pers. and Ell. ch. 2 p. 41.) "So little has been preserved of Eastern history before

On the geography and chronology, as parts of the BOOK II literature of the Hindus, I shall express myself in ^{CHAP. 9} the language of Mr. Wilford. "The Hindus," says that celebrated Hindu scholar, "have no regular-work on the subject of geography, or none at least that ever came to my knowledge—I was under a necessity of extracting my materials from their historical poems, or, as they may be called more properly, their legendary tales" In another place he says, "The Hindu systems of geography, chronology, and history, are all equally monstrous and absurd. The circumference of the earth is said to be 500,000,000 yojanas, or 2,456,000,000 British miles: the mountains are asserted to be 100 yojanas, or 491 British miles high. Hence the mountains to the south of Benares are said, in the Puranas, to have kept the holy city in total darkness, till Matra-deva growing angry at their insolence, they humbled themselves to the ground, and their highest peak now is not more than 500 feet high. In Europe, similar notions once prevailed; for we are told that the Cimmerians were kept in continual darkness by the interposition of immensely high mountains. In the Calica Purana, it is said that the mountains have sunk considerably, so that the highest is not above one yojana, or five miles high.—When the Puranics speak of the kings

Mahomet, that the modern Persians are totally ignorant of the victory of Sapor, an event so glorious to their nation"—"When the Romans had supplanted the Greeks, and extended their dominion over all Europe, they also engaged in endless wars with the Persian kings of the Ashkanian and Sassanian dynasties, for these Asiatic provinces. The events of these early periods are not well described in *our* histories, as we have no authentic records prior to the time of Mohammed. But the Greeks, who have histories which extend back 2000 years, have minutely described all the circumstances of these wars" Travels of Mirza Abu Taleb Khan, translated by Charles Stewart, Esq M A S Professor of Oriental Languages, in the Hon East India Company's College, Herts in 23

BOOK II of ancient times, they are equally extravagant. According to them King Yudhishthir reigned 27 000 years. King Naodo is said to have possessed in his treasury above 1 584 000,000 pounds sterling in gold coin alone the value of the silver and copper coin and jewels, exceeded all calculation and his army consisted of 100 000,000 men. These accounts, geographical, chronological and historical, as absurd and inconsistent with reason, must be rejected. This monstrous system seems to derive its origin from the ancient period of 12,000 natural years, which was admitted by the Persians the Etruscans and, I believe also by the Celtic tribes for we read of a learned nation in Spain which boasted of having written histories of above six thousand years.¹

It is an error to suppose, that for the origin of unprofitable speculations respecting the nature and properties of thought great progress in civilization is required. The fears and hopes, the conceptions and speculations, respecting the Divine Nature and respecting a future state of existence lead to inquiries concerning the invisible operations of the mind. If we consult but history, we shall be led to conclude that certain curious, and subtle but idle questions respecting the mental operations, are a mark not of a cultivated but a rude state of society. It was during an age of darkness and barbarity that metaphysical speculations engaged so passionately the minds of the European doctors and called forth examples of the greatest acuteness and subtlety. It was prior to the dawn of true philosophy that the sophists, whose doctrine was a collection of ingenuous quibbles on abstract questions enjoyed their celebrity in Greece. Pythagoras flourished at a very early

¹ See W. Ford on Egypt and the N. Amer. Rev. v. 173; and on the Chronology of the Hindus Ibid. p. 241.

age; and yet there is a high degree of subtle BOOK II
CHAP 9 ingenuity in the doctrines he is said to have taught. Amid the rudeness of the Celtic inhabitants of Gaul and Britain, the Druids carried, we know not how far, the refinements of metaphysical speculation. Strabo, as quoted by Dr Henry,¹ says, "The Druids add the study of moral philosophy to that of physiology."² Ammianus Marcellinus informs us, that the inhabitants of Gaul, having been by degrees a little polished, the study of some branches of useful learning was introduced among them by the bards, the Eubates, and the Druids. The Eubates made researches into the order of things, and endeavoured to lay open the most hidden secrets of nature. The Druids were men of a still more sublime and penetrating spirit, and acquired the highest renown by their speculations, which were at once subtle and lofty."³ The progress which the Arabians made in a semblance of abstract science has been highly celebrated. The following observations, borrowed from one of the most intelligent of the Europeans by whom they have been studied, will enable us to appreciate their metaphysical science. Of the Arabians, he says, even at the brightest period of their history, the Europeans, have been prone to form too favourable, indeed extravagant ideas.⁴ Their best writers are the translators or copiers of the Greeks. The only study peculiar to them, a study which they continue to

¹ Hist of Great Britain, ii 4

² Strabō, lib iv p 197

³ Ammian Marcell lib xv cap ix

⁴ The high civilization, refined literature, beautiful language, profound philosophy, polished manners, and amiable morals of the Arabians, are celebrated in the highest strains, by M de Boulainvilliers, *Vie de Mahomet*, p 38, Ed of Amsterdam, 1791 Pythagoras, after having studied the sciences of the Egyptians, travelled into Arabia to learn the philosophy of the Arabians Porphȳ de Vit Pythag.

BOOK II. cultivate, is that of their own language But by the
CHAP. 9. study of language; among the Arabians, we must not understand that philosophical spirit of research which in words investigates the history of ideas in order to perfect the art by which they are communicated. The study is cultivated solely on account of its connexion with religion As the word of God conveys the meaning of God no conceivable nicety of investigation is ever too much to elicit that meaning in its divine purity For this reason, it is of the highest moment to ascertain not only the exact signification of the words, but likewise the accents, inflections, signs, and pauses in a word, all the most minute niceties of prosody and pronunciation and it is impossible to conceive to what a degree of complication they have invented and refined on this subject, without having heard their declamations in the mosques The grammar alone takes several years to acquire Next is taught the nahou which may be defined the science of terminations These which are foreign to the vulgar Arabic are superadded to words, and vary according to the numbers cases, genders, and persons After this, the student, now walking among the learned, is introduced to the study of eloquence For this years are required because the doctors, mysterious like the Brahmens impart their treasures only by degrees At length arrives the time for the study of the law and the Iahah or science peculiarly so called by which they mean theology If it be considered that the object of these studies is always the Koran that it is necessary to be acquainted with all its mystical and allegorical meanings to read all its commentaries and paraphrases of which there are 200 volumes on the first verse and to dispute on thousand of ridiculous cases of conscience it cannot

but be allowed that one may pass one's whole life in BOOK II learning much and knowing nothing.¹ It is vain, as ^{CHAP 9} the same author still further remarks, to tell us of colleges, places of education, and books. These words, in the regions of which we are treating, convey not the same ideas as with us.² The Turks, though signal, even among rude nations, for their ignorance, are not without speculations of a similar nature, which by superficial observers have been taken for philosophy. "Certain it is," says Sir James Porter, "that there are among the Turks many philosophical minds. They have the whole systems of the Aristotelian and Epicurean philosophy translated into their own language."³ "The metaphysical questions," says Gibbon, "on the attributes of God, and the liberty of man, have been agitated in the schools of Mahomedans, as well as in those of the Christians."⁴ And Mr. Elphinstone informs us, that if the rude Afghaun is ever stimulated to any degree

¹ Volney's Travels in Egypt and Syria, n 434 "In two recent voyages into Egypt," says Gibbon, (Hist of Decline and Fall, &c n 448) "we are amused by Savary, and instructed by Volney I wish the latter could travel over the globe" "The last and most judicious," he calls him, "of our Syrian travellers" Ibid p 294

² Volney, ut supra, p 443

³ Observations on the Religion, Laws, Government, and Manners of the Turks, p 39 Most, if not all, the Arabian versions of the Greek authors, were done by the Christian subjects of the caliphs Sec Gibbon, ch III The same is probably the origin of the Turkish versions What use, if any, they make of them, does not appear. Mr Scott Waring says, "The science of the Persians is, I believe, extremely confined They have translations of Euclid, Ptolemy, the works of Plato, Aristotle, Pythagoras, and some other of the Grecian philosophers, which few of them read, and fewer understand" Tour to Sheeraz, p 254

⁴ Hist of Decline and Fall, &c ch 1 Mr Forster mentions a Mussulman fellow-traveller, a disputant, who, says he, "unhappily for himself and his neighbours, had conned over some of those books of ingenious devices and quaint syllogisms, which are held in high note among the modern Mahometans, and have fixed among them a false distorted taste" Travels in India, p 106

BOOK II of literary activity, it is when pursuing the subtleties.
CHAR 9 of metaphysical speculation¹

These facts coincide with a curious law of human nature, which some eminent philosophers have already remarked. The highest abstractions are not the last result of mental culture and intellectual strength. It is discovered that some of our most general and comprehensive notions are formed at that very early period, when the mind, with little discriminating power, is apt to lump together things which have but few points of resemblance and that we break down these genera into species more and more minute in proportion as our knowledge becomes more extensive, more particular and precise. The propensity to abstract speculations is then the natural result of the state of the human mind in a rude and ignorant age.²

The Vedanti doctrine, which has caught the fancy BOOK II
 of some of the admirers of Sanscrit, appears to be ^{CHAP 9}
 delivered *viva voce*, and solely in that mode. As no
 passage implying it has been quoted from any Sanscrit
 work, it might, if it were any refinement, be suspected
 of being wholly modern. The following is the ac-
 count of it by Sir William Jones. "The funda-
 mental tenet of the Vedanti school consisted, not in
 denying the existence of matter, that it, of solidity,
 impenetrability, and extended figure, (to deny which
 would be lunacy) but in correcting the popular no-
 tion of it, and in contending, that it has no essence
 independent of mental perception, that existence
 and perceptibility are convertible terms, that external
 appearances and sensations are illusory, and would
 vanish into nothing, if the divine energy, which
 alone sustains them, were suspended but for a mo-
 ment, an opinion which Epicharmus and Plato seem
 to have adopted, and which has been maintained in
 the present century with great elegance, but with
 little public applause, partly because it has been
 misunderstood, and partly because it has been mis-
 applied by the false reasoning of some unpopular
 writers, who are said to have disbelieved in the moral
 attributes of God, whose omnipresence, wisdom, and
 goodness, are the basis of the Indian philosophy I
 have not sufficient evidence on the subject to profess
 a belief in the doctrine of the Vedañta, which human
 reason alone could, perhaps, neither fully demon-
 strate, nor fully disprove, but it is manifest, that
 nothing can be further removed from impiety than a
 system wholly built on the purest devotion "¹

apprend mieux à faire l'analyse des choses" Cours d'Etude, 1 49, 50
 Ed à Parme, 1776 Vide note A at the end of the volume

¹ Works of Sir Wm Jones, 1 165 It may be remarked, that Sir
 William Jones, after all these praises, allows that the Vedanti doctrines
 are wild and erroneous Asiat Res iv 164, 165.

BOOK II "In some of these observations," Mr Dugald
CHAP 9 Stewart very justly remarks, "there is a good deal
of indistinctness, and even of contradiction." He
also remarks, that Sir William Jones totally misun-
derstands the doctrine of Berkeley and Hume.¹ We
may suspect that he not less widely mistakes the
doctrine of the Brahmins, and fastens a theory of his
own creation upon the vague and unmeaning jargon
which they delivered to him. If in all minds the
propensity be strong and in weak minds irresistible,
to see only through the medium of a theory we need
not wonder if theory manufactures the ideas of the
other senses, of hearing for example, after the same
manner. "If the simplest narrative of the most
illiterate observer involves more or less of hypothesis
and a village apothecary or a hackneyed nurse is
seldom able to describe the plainest case, without
employing a phraseology of which every word is a
theory,"² we may conclude with certainty that the
same intrusion is very difficult to avoid, in making
up our own conception of what we hear and still
more in clothng it with our own language. Of the
ideas which we profess to report, and which we
believe that we merely report, it often happens that
many are our own ideas and never entered the mind
of the man to whom we ascribe them.

We have a more distinct account of the same
doctrine from Sir James Mackintosh whose mind is
more philosophical, and on oriental subjects less pre-
possessed and less credulous than that of Sir William
Jones. Presenting in a letter to Mr Dugald Stewart
an account of a conversation with a young Brahmin

Elements of the Philosophy of the Human Mind, vol i. part II.

The words in which this important point was expressed and are
borrowed from a happy application of it by Mr Stewart in the same
vol. see p. 461

"He told me," says he, "that besides the myriads BOOK II
of gods whom their creed admits, there was one whom CHAP 9
they know by the name of Brim, or the great one, without form or limits, whom no created intellect could make any approach towards conceiving, that, in reality, there were no trees, no houses, no land, no sea, but all without was Maia, or illusion, the act of Brim; that whatever we saw or felt was only a dream; or, as he expressed it in his imperfect English, thinking in one's sleep; and that the re-union of the soul to Brim, from whom it originally sprung, was the awakening from the long sleep of finite existence."¹

It will require few words, in application of the evidence adduced in the chapter on religion, to make it sufficiently appear, that this is a natural part of that language of adulation towards the deity, in which the Hindu theology mainly consists. One of the deities, who is chosen as the chief object of adoration, is first made to excel all the other deities, next to absorb all their powers; next to absorb even themselves, and lastly absorb all things². The fancy of "Maia," is only a part of "the absorption of all things in God." There is nothing but God. All our supposed perception of things besides God is, therefore, only illusion; illusion created by God. Why, then, does God create such an illusion? This is a very necessary question. If it were put, and why it has not been put, we may a little admire, the Brahmens might very consistently reply, that as for a use, a design, a purpose, in the actions of their God, they never thought of ascribing to them any such quality. He pleases himself by his actions, and that is enough, no matter how fantastic the taste.

¹ The passage is transcribed by Mr Stewart, in the note quoted above.

² Vide supra, vol 1 p 315

BOOK II It is with great pleasure I quote the following coincidence with my own opinion, expressed in a subsequent passage of the same letter ' I intend to investigate a little the history of these opinions for I am not altogether without apprehension that we may all the while be mistaking the hyperbolical effusions of mystical piety, for the technical language of a philosophical system Nothing is more usual, than for fervent devotion to dwell so long and so warmly, on the meanness and worthlessness of created things, and on the all sufficiency of the Supreme Being that it slides insensibly from comparative to absolute language and, in the eagerness of its zeal to magnify the Deity seems to annihilate every thing else To distinguish between the very different import of the same words in the mouth of a mystic and sceptic requires more philosophical discrimination than most of our Sanscrit investigators have hitherto shown''

Sir Jones might have passed beyond a suspicion if from nothing else from the very words of the conversation he reports. Human life is there not compared to a sleep it is literally affirmed to be a sleep and men are not acting or thinking but only dreaming Of what philosophical system does this form a part? We awake, only when we are re united to the Divine Being that is, when we actually become a part of the Divine Being not having a separate existence Then of course we cease to dream and then it may be supposed that Man ceases. Then will there be any thing to be known? any thing real? Or is it the same thing whether we are awake or asleep? But my reader might well complain I was only trifling with him if I pursued this jargon any further What grieves me is that between the two

passages which I have immediately quoted, Sir James BOOK II.
(we must remember that it is in the negligence of ^{CHAP 9} private correspondence) has inserted the following words " All this you have heard and read before as Hindu speculation What struck me was, that speculations so refined and abstruse should, in a long course of ages, have fallen through so great a space as that which separates the genius of their original inventor from the mind of this weak and unlettered man The names of these inventors have perished; but their ingenious and beautiful theories, blended with the most monstrous superstitions, have descended to men very little exalted above the most ignorant populace, and are adopted by them as a sort of articles of faith, without a suspicion of their philosophical origin, and without the possibility of comprehending any part of the premises from which they were deduced" Yet Sir James himself has described the origin from which they were deduced; namely, "the hyperbolical effusions of mystical piety," and surely the Brahmens of the present day may understand these effusions, as well as their still more ignorant predecessors¹

¹ Another circumstance is always to be remembered If the Brahmens are once informed of the European doctrine, they will take abundant care to make their own conform to it " With respect to the real tenets of the Hindus, on subjects of theology, they are to be taken from their ancient books, rather than from the oral declarations of the most learned Brahmens of modern times, who have discovered that the opinions of Christians, concerning the nature of God, are far more rational than those currently entertained among them, and that the gross idolatry of the Hindus is contemned by the more intelligent natives of the western world Bernier seems to have found occasion for the same remark in his time, for, after relating a conference between him and some learned pandits, in which the latter endeavoured to refine away the grossness of their image worship , ' Voilà (says he) sans ajouter ni diminuer la solution qu'ils me donnerent , mais, à vous dire le vrai, cela me sembloit un peu trop bien concerté a la Chretienne, aux prix de ce que j'en avois appris de plusieurs autres pandits ' " (Grant's Observations on India)

BOOK II **Char⁹** With respect to morals or duty, it appears not that any theory has ever been constructed by the Hindus. In what regards the preceptive part, their ethics exactly resemble those of all other rude and uninstructed nations: an excellent precept and a foolish or absurd one, are placed alternately, or mixed in nearly equal proportions, in all their books which treat upon the subject. For specimens of their ethical precepts, it is sufficient to refer to what we have already produced under the head of religion. If all the good precepts were selected from the rest, and exhibited pure by themselves, they would present a tolerably perfect code of the common duties of morality. As we have authors who have attached importance to this without advertting to the fact that a soundness in detached maxims of morality is common to all men down to the lowest stage of society, it is necessary to give a specimen of the ethical rules of nations confessedly barbarous. We might, perhaps, be satisfied with a reference to the

relations on the State of Society among the Asiatic Subjects of Great Britain p. 73. Papers on India, ordered to be printed by the House of Commons 15th June 1813.) This supposed refinement such as it is, Mr Elphinstone found among the rude and untaught herd. As I am “Another sect in Coabal is that of the Soosers who ought, perhaps, to be considered as a class of philosophers rather than of religions. As far as I can understand their mysterious doctrine, their leading tenet seems to be, that the whole of the animated and inanimate creation is an illusion; and that nothing exists except the Supreme Being which presents itself under an infinity of shapes to the soul of man, itself a portion of the Divine essence. The contemplation of the divine raises the Soosers to the utmost pitch of enthusiasm. They admire God in every thing; and by frequent meditation on his attributes and by tracing him through all his works, they imagine that they attain to an ineffable love for the Deity, and even to an entanglement with his substance” (An Account of the Kingdom of Coabal by the Hon. Mountstuart Elphinstone, p. 507) we find an account of a most sect in Pen. Malabar's Hill. of Pen. i. 3. How different is all this from the curious results of the refuted and inverted reasoning of Berkeley! And how it allows the leading of each and them!

proverbs of Solomon, and other preceptive parts of BOOK II.
the Jewish writings, which are not equalled by the ^{CHAP 9} corresponding parts of the books of the Hindus. We shall, however, produce another instance, which is less exposed to any objection. The Hayamaal or sublime discourse of Odin, is a Scandinavian composition of great antiquity. It is a string of moral aphorisms, comprised in 120 stanzas, with which, as a whole, there is nothing in Hindu literature in any degree worthy to be compared. The following is a specimen.

“ To the guest who enters your dwelling with frozen knees, give the warmth of your fire he who hath travelled over the mountains hath need of food and well-dried garments.

“ A man can carry with him no better provision for his journey than the strength of the understanding. In a foreign country this will be of more use to him than treasures ; and will introduce him to the table of strangers.

“ There is nothing more useless to the sons of the age than to drink too much ale , the more the drunkard swallows, the less is his wisdom, till he loses his reason. The bird of oblivion sings before those who inebriate themselves, and steals away their souls .

“ I have never yet found a man so generous and munificent, as that to receive at his house was not to receive , nor any so free and liberal of his gifts as to reject a present when it was returned to him

“ They invite me up and down to feasts, if I have only need of a slight breakfast; my faithful friend is he who will give me one loaf, when he has but two .

“ Where is there to be found a virtuous man with-

BOOK II out some failing? or one so wicked as to have no
CHAR 9 good quality?"¹

Among the parts of Hindu learning chosen by its admirers as the peculiar objects of their applause are the niceties, the numerous and intricate subtleties, of the Hindu grammar. We are informed by an eminent Sanscrit scholar, that the grammatical precepts of one single treatise are no fewer than 3996. The reader will observe that this number is composed of the digit 3 and its multiples, to which peculiar virtues are ascribed by the Hindus. It is not improbable that the rules may have been made to correspond with the number rather than the number with the rules. Nevertheless, we learn from Mr Colebrooke that those rules are framed with the utmost conciseness the consequence of very ingenious methods. But it is added that the studied brevity of the Paniniya Sutras renders them in the highest degree obscure that even with the knowledge of the key to their interpretation, the student finds them ambiguous that the application of them even when understood, discovers many seeming contradictions and that, with every exertion of practised memory the utmost difficulty is experienced in combining rules dispersed in apparent confusion through different portions of Paninis and lectures. The number of commentaries on the books of grammar is exceedingly great and many of them very voluminous."²

As these endless conceits answer any purpose rather than that of rendering language a more commodious and accurate instrument of communication they afford

See Mallin. Indiad. II. 1. Denmark vol. ii. For all illustrations we may refer to the maxims of Confucius and Zoroaster Colebrooke on the Sanscrit & Persian Languages. As in Res. i. 1.

a remarkable specimen of the spirit of a rude and ignorant age ; which is as much delighted with the jugglingies of the mind, as it is with those of the body, and is distinguished by the absurdity of its passion for both.¹ It could not happen otherwise than that the Hindus should, beyond other nations, abound in those frivolous refinements which are suited to the taste of an uncivilized people. A whole race of men were set apart and exempted from the ordinary cares and labours of life, whom the pain of vacuity forced upon some application of mind, and who were under the necessity of maintaining their influence among the people, by the credit of superior learning, and, if not by real knowledge, which is slowly and with much difficulty attained, by artful contrivances for deceiving the people with the semblance of it. This view of the situation of the Brahmins serves to explain many things which modify and colour Hindu society. In grammatical niceties, however, the Hindus but discover their usual resemblance to other nations in the infancy of knowledge and improvement. We have already seen that the Arabians on this subject carry their complex refinements to a height scarcely inferior to that of the Brahmins themselves.² Even the Turks, who are not in general a refining race, multiply conceits on this subject.³ During the dark ages the fabrication of grammatical distinctions and subtleties furnished a favourite exercise to the European schoolmen⁴

¹ Mr. Colebrooke still farther remarks, that the Hindus delight in scholastic disputation, and that their controversial commentaries on grammar exhibit copious specimens of it. *Ibid*

² *Vide supra*, p 67—69

³ Tout ce que le mauvais goût peut inventer pour fatiguer l'esprit, fait leur délices, et ravit leur admiration. *Mémoires du Baron de Tott sur les Turcs et les Tartares*, i 8

⁴ The following remarkable passage in the celebrated letter of our

BOOK II **CHAP. 9** Not only the grammar the language itself has been celebrated as the mark of a refined and elegant people. It is more copious" we are told than the Latin. It has several words to express the same thing. The sun has more than thirty names, the moon more than twenty. A house has twenty a stone six or seven a tree ten, a leaf five, an ape ten a crow nine."¹

That which is a defect and a deformity of language, is thus celebrated as a perfection.² The high

countryman and (but for one exception) admirable countryman Sir Thomas More to *Mario Dorpius*, affords at once a proof of the fact, and a judgment on the practice. At nunc absurdia quardam portentis ad certam bonarum artium notae perniciem et locolecter ab antiquis distincta communcoerunt; et veterum pernissimas traditiones suis adjectis cordibus infecerant omnia. Nam in Grammatica (ut omniam Alex sandrum aliquae id genus alios; qui quamquam impotest lumen grammaticam uterunque docuerant) Albertus quidam grammaticam et tres ditorum professorum, logicanm nobis quendam aut metaphysicam immo neutrā sed mera somnia mera delicia grammaticos loco subiit toti et tamen hic nugacissime usque in publicas academias non tantum recepti sunt, sed etiam plerique tam impotest placuerunt, ut propositum solus aliquid in grammatica valere censeatur quisquis fuerit Albertiste nomen assequetus. Tantum auctoritatis habet ad persistenda bonorum quoque ingeniorum Judicis semel ab inceptis tradita magistris deinceps corroborata persuasio. Quo sit ut minus miser ad eundem modum in dulcedesse locum nugas plus quam sophisticas irreipisse qua cultoribus suis arguitur omnime tum vehementer amident." Caramuel says of the subtle doctor Scotus *Ex aliis scriptis quibus cura de grammatica ac dis agitatis erit*. Mr Horne Tooke however on this remark says that in *De rebus significatibus* he will be entitled, *An Exemplar of the subtle art of writing* appears next and of discourse ag deeply and learnedly on a subject with which we are perfectly unacquainted. *Quod si enim scilicet i talibus magis tenue quod in grecis nihil est?* (Division of P. 1st Instal. p. 18.)

¹ Le Pere Paulini (*Bartolomeo*) *Voyage aux Indes* p. 201.

² Mr Gibbon quaintly says "In Asia as well as in Greece the perfection of language outshone the refinement of manners; and no speech could describe the more numerous of horses, the two hundred of a serpent, the six hundred of a lion, the thousand of a sword, at a time when this empious devotion of was exhibited in the treasury of an illiterate people." III. L. of Pers. and II. &c. p. 210. The German professor Kotter who writes notes on the *Voyage du Pere I. alii* is not ineptly on the passage quoted in the text, (I. alii. Voy. 1. 2.

est merit of language would consist in having one BOOK II.
name for every thing which required a name, and no more than one. Redundancy is a defect in language, not less than deficiency. Philosophy, and even common good sense, determine, that every thing which can simplify language, without impairing it in point of precision and completeness, is a first rate advantage An ignorant and fantastical age deems it a glory to render it in the highest degree perplexing and difficult.

The other perfections which are ascribed to the

Indes, iii 399) " Ce n'est pas de cette manière-la qu'on doit juger de la richesse d'une langue On a coutume de dire que la langue Arabe est riche, parceque elle a je ne suis quel nombre de synonymes pour exprimer le mot épée Un de ces synonymes, par example, signifie le meurtrier des hommes Ce n'est là, dans la réalité, qu'une expression metaphorique et figurée, telle qu'on en peut former dans toutes les langues tant soit peu cultives On pouvait de même trouver plus de trente noms pour exprimer le soleil dans les poetes Grecs, mais il n'est venu dans l'esprit de personne, de faire valoir cela pour prouver la richesse de la langue Grecque" Our own sagacious, and in many respects highly philosophical Wilkins judges better, when he names, "significancy, perspicuity, brevity, and consequently facility," among the perfections of a language, and says that the multitude of rules in the Latin "argues the imperfection of that language, that it should stand in need of such and so many rules as have no foundation in the philosophy of speech

If these rules be not necessary to language, and according to nature, but that words may signify sufficiently, and in some respects better without them, then there is greater judgment showed in laying them aside, or framing a language without them" Essay towards a Real Character &c p 448 Another writer, who speaks with as much boldness, as he thinks with force on the subject of language, says, " Persons too dull or too idle to understand the subject cannot, or will not, perceive how great an evil *many words* is, and boast of their *copiae verborum*, as if a person diseased with gout or dropsy boasted of his great joints, or big belly" And again, "It cannot be too often repeated that superfluous *variety* and *copia*, are faults, not excellencies Simplicity may be considered poverty by perverted understandings, but it is always of great utility, and to true judges it always possesses beauty and dignity" Philosophic Etymology, or Rational Grammar, by James Gilchrist, p. 110, 170 If the Sanscrit is to be admired for its amlicated grammar, the Ethiopic should be admired for its 202 letters , Wilkins' Essay towards a Real Character, p 14

BOOK II Sanscrit are its softness, or agreeableness in point of sound, and its adaptation to poetry. Of its completeness or precision, those who were the fullest of admiration for it, were too little acquainted with it to be able to venture an opinion. Let completeness and precision would have been undeniable proofs of the mental perfection of the people by whom it was used, while a great multitude of useless words and grammatical rules were the very reverse. Nothing is more probable than that a language which has too many words of one description, has too few of another, and unites in equal degree the vices of superfluity and defect. The adaptation of a language to poetry and the ear affords no evidence of civilization. Languages, on which equal eulogies are bestowed to any which can be lavished on Sanscrit, are the languages confessedly of ignorant and uncivilized men. Nothing can surpass the admiration which is often expressed of the language of the modern Persians. Molina, the intelligent and philosophical historian of Chili informs us, that of the language of the Chilians the grammar is as perfect as that of the Greek or Latin. That of no language does the formation and structure display greater ingenuity and felicity.¹ The language of the Malays is described as remarkably sweet and well adapted to poetry.² Clavigero knows not where to set a limit to his admiration of the Mexican tongue.³

" Many extravagant things have been advanced concerning the great antiquity and superior excellency of the Anglo-Saxon language According to some writers, it was the most ancient and most excellent in the world, spoken by the first parents of mankind in Paradise , and from it they pretend to derive the names, Adam, Eve, Cain, Abel, and all the antediluvian patriarchs."¹

The same sacred volume which affords the most authentic materials for ascertaining the Hindu modes

more than the English, or any other language we know, in verbal and abstract terms for there is hardly a verb from which there are not many verbals formed, and scarcely a substantive or adjective from which there are not some abstracts formed It is not less copious in verbs than in nouns , as from every single verb others are derived of different significations *Chihua* "is to do," *Chichihua* "to do with diligence or often," *Chihuihuia* "to do to another," *Chihuaultia* "to cause to be done," *Chihuatuh* "to go to do," *Chihuaco* "to come to do," *Chuhtuh* "to be doing," &c. Having mentioned the extraordinary variety with which the Mexicans express different degrees of respect, by adding adverbs and other particles to the names employed, Clavigero adds, "This variety, which gives so much civilization to the language, does not, however, make it difficult to be spoken , because it is subjected to rules which are fixed and easy , nor do we know any language that is more regular and methodical The Mexicans, like the Greeks and other nations, have the advantage of making compounds of two, three, or four simple words , but they do it with more economy than the Greeks did , for the Greeks made use of the entire words in composition, whereas the Mexicans cut off syllables, or at least some letters from them *Tlazotti* signifies-valued, or beloved, *Mahuitzic*, honoured or revered, *Tesquiaqui*, priest ; *Tath*, father To unite these five words in one, they take eight consonants and four vowels, and say, for instance, *Notlazomahuitzteopixcatzin*, that is, my very worthy father, or revered priest, prefixing the *No* which corresponds to the pronoun *my*, and adding *tzin*, which is a particle expressive of reverence There are some compounds of so many terms as to have fifteen or sixteen syllables In short, all those who have learned this language, and can judge of its copiousness, regularity, and beautiful modes of speech, are of opinion, that such a language cannot have been spoken by a barbarous people" Clavigero, Hist. of Mexico, book vii sect 41

¹ Henry's Hist of Great Britain, ii 365 —" I know not a language spoken in Europe that hath words of more sweetness and greatness than theirs " Penn's Letter on the American Indians, in Clarkson's Life of Penn, i. 385

BOOK II of accounting for the phenomena of mind lends equal assistance in leading us to a knowledge of their modes of accounting for the phenomena of matter. At the close of the night of Brhma, 'intellect called into action by his will to create worlds performed again the work of creation and thence first emerges the subtle ether, to which philosophers ascribe the quality of conveying sound '¹ Ignorant that air is the great agent in the conveyance of sound the Hindus had recourse to a fiction the imagination of n something, of whose existence they had no proof Equally futile is their account of air "From ether effecting a transmutation in form springs the pure and potent air a vehicle of all scents and air is held endued with the quality of touch "² The word touch is here ambiguous it may mean either that air is tangible or that it has the faculty the sense of touch The latter, I suspect, is the meaning of the original for I can hardly credit that so great a master of language as Sir William Jones would have explained a passage which only meant that air is tangible by so exception able a term as that it is endued with the quality of touch I can with less difficulty suppose from other instances that he endeavoured to cloak a most absurd idea under an equivocal translation

With respect to light and heat we are told in the immediately succeeding passage "Then from air operating a change in es light or fire making objects visible spreading bright rays and it is declared to have the quality of figure "³ It sufficiently appears from the several passages that the accounts with which they satisfy themselves are merely such random guesses as would occur to the most vulgar and untaught minds From intellect nor ether from ether

air; from air, fire and light. It appears from this ^{BOOK II.} _{CHAP 9} passage that they consider light and heat as absolutely the same; yet the moon afforded them an instance of light without heat, and they had instances innumerable of heat without the presence of light. What is the meaning, when it is declared that fire, alias light, has the quality of figure, it is impossible to say. That fire, or, which is the same thing, light, is itself figured, is an affirmation wherein little meaning can be found. That fire, that is, light, is the *cause* of figure in all figured bodies, is an affirmation which, notwithstanding the absurdity, is in exact harmony with the mode of guessing at the operations of nature, admired as philosophy among the Hindus.

The account of water and earth is a link of the same chain. "From light, a change being effected, comes water with the quality of taste, and from water is deposited earth with the quality of smell."¹ As from ether came air, so from air light, from light water, and from water earth. It is useless to ask what connexion appears between water and light, or earth and water. Connexion, reason, probability, had nothing to do with the case. A theory of successive production struck the fancy of the writer, and all inquiry was out of the question. Here occurs the same difficulty as in the case of air; air was endowed with the quality of touch, water and earth are said to have the qualities of smell and taste. In this we perceive a most fantastic conceit. To water is ascribed the quality of taste, to earth, the quality of smell, to fire, the quality of *figure*, (I suspect it should be translated *sight*), to air, the quality of touch; and to ether, the quality (as Sir William Jones translates it) of conveying sound, I suspect it *should* be translated, the quality of hearing.

BOOK II **Cx^{tr} 0** We have thus seen the speculations respecting the origin and qualities of the principal parts of inanimate nature. The same divine volume affords us a specimen of their ideas concerning the origin of at least one great department of animated nature. "From hot moisture are born biting gnats, lice fleas, and common flies these, and whatever is of the same class, are produced by heat"¹ If this be an idea natural enough to the mind of an uncultivated observer it is at least not a peculiar proof of learning and civilization.

Of the arbitrary style of deciding without inquiry, the natural and ordinary style of all rude minds a curious specimen is afforded by the Hindu dogma, that vegetables, as well as animals, "have internal consciousness, and are sensible of pleasure and pain"²

Mr Wilford, the industrious explorer of the literature of this ancient people informs us "The Hindus were superficial botanists and gave the same appellation to plants of different classes"³ To arrange or classify, on this or on any other subject, seems an attempt which has in all ages exceeded the mental culture of the Hindus.

Of all the circumstances however, connected with the state of Hindu society nothing has called forth higher expressions of eulogy and admiration than the astronomy of the Brahmens Mons Bailly the celebrated author of the History of Astronomy may be regarded as beginning the concert of praises upon this branch of the science of the Hindus The grounds of his conclusions were certain astronomical tables from which he inferred not only advanced progress in the science but a date so ancient as to be entirely

¹ Laws of Men. ch 1 43. ² Ibid 49. See also Ib. xl. 147 to 162.

³ Wilford on Egypt and the Nile, Anat. Ret. i. p. 310

inconsistent with the chronology of the Hebrew Scriptures. The man who invented a theory of an ancient and highly civilized people, now extinct, formerly existing in the wilds of Tartary, and maintained it with uncommon zeal, and all the efforts of his ingenuity, is not to be trusted as a guide in the regions of conjecture. Another cause of great distrust attaches to Mons. Bailly. Voltaire, and other excellent writers in France, abhorring the evils which they saw attached to catholicism, were labouring to subvert the authority of the books on which it was founded. Under this impulse they embraced, with extreme credulity, and actual enthusiasm, the tales respecting the great antiquity of the Chinese and Hindus, as disproving entirely the Mosaic accounts of the duration of the present race of men. When a case occurred in which it appeared that this favourite conclusion could be established on the strength of astronomical observations and mathematical reasoning, the grand object seemed to be accomplished. The argument was laboured with the utmost diligence by Mons. Bailly, was received with unbounded applause, and for a time regarded as a demonstration in form of the falsehood of Christianity.

The most eminent of all the mathematical converts, gained by Mons. Bailly, was Mr. Playfair, the professor of mathematics in the University of Edinburgh. A bias was probably created in his mind by the high reputation of Mons. Bailly for his attainments in that science in which Mr. Playfair himself was so great a master, and any feeling of that nature could not fail to be greatly strengthened, by the loud applause, in which his countrymen, both those who were still in India, and those who had returned from it, at that time concurred, of the wonderful learning, wonderful civilization, and wonderful institutions of the Hindus;

BOOK II. applause which imposed implicit belief on minds such as that of his illustrious colleague, the author of the Historical Disquisition concerning the knowledge which the ancients had of India. In a paper published in the Transactions of the Royal Society of Edinburgh Mr Playfair stated, with skill and dexterity the matter of evidence on which the proposition is founded¹ and in an article lately published in the Edinburgh Review,² the arguments are controverted by which Mr Bentley had endeavoured to overthrow his opinion but a suspension of belief, till further information shall yield more satisfactory proof is all that in this latter document is contended for.

Such a demand however is infinitely too much, and at variance with all the principles of reasoning. When an opinion is obviously contradicted by a grand train of circumstances and is not entirely supported by the special proofs on which it pretends to rest it is unproved and whatever is unproved and out of the known order of nature is altogether unworthy of belief deserves simple rejection.

Whoever in the present improved state of our knowledge, shall take the trouble to contemplate the proofs which we possess of the state of knowledge and civilization among the Hindus can form no other conclusion but that every thing (unless astronomy be an exception) bears clear concurring and undeniable testimony to the ignorance of the Hindus, and the low state of civilization in which they remain. That such a people are masters of the science of astronomy to a degree which none but nations highly cultivated have elsewhere ever attained is certainly

¹ Transactions of the Royal Society of Edinburgh, vol. 16.

² Of which he has over all Europe been recognized as the author. Vide Index p. 93 note 2.

not to be credited on any chain of proof that is not BOOK II.
entire.¹ CHAP. 9

Of the fitness of the proof to maintain any such conclusions as have been founded upon it, an idea may be formed from this, that Mr. Bentley, who has paid great attention to the books of Hindu astronomy, says they are all of modern date, and their pretensions to antiquity founded only on forgery.² As his moderate knowledge of mathematics, however, and even the inelegancies of his style, have been sarcastically employed to throw discredit upon his conclusions, it is of importance to add, that the two mathematicians whose reputation for profundity seems to exceed that of all their contemporaries, Laplace, and an eminent ornament of our country, not only reject the inference of the great antiquity and perfection of the Hindu astronomy, but, from the evidence offered, draw a conclusion directly the reverse, viz. that this science is in the very same state of infancy among the Hindus with all the other branches of knowledge. The Surya Sidhanta is the great repository of the astronomical knowledge of the Hindus. It is on the authority of our own countryman I am enabled to declare, that this book is itself the most satisfactory of all proofs of the low state of the science among the Hindus, and the rudeness of the people from whom it proceeds, that its fantastic absurdity is truly Hindu; that all we can learn from it is a few facts, the result

¹ Mr Playfair has himself given us a criterion for determining on his notions of the Hindu astronomy, which is perfectly sufficient. He says, in the conclusion of his discourse (Edin Trans n 192), "These conclusions are without doubt extraordinary, and have no other claim to our belief, except that their being false were much more wonderful than their being true." On this principle, the question is decided, for the wonder is little that they should be false, but mighty indeed were they true.

² Asiat. Res vi 577

BOOK II of observations which required no skill that its vague
CHAP 9 allegories and fanciful reflections prove nothing, or
 every thing that a resolute admirer may build upon
 them all the astronomical science of modern times
 but a man who should divest his mind of the recollec-
 tion of European discoveries, and ask what a people
 unacquainted with the science could learn from the
Surya Sidhanta, would find it next to nothing¹

¹ Dr Smith with his usual sagacity says "There are various causes which render astronomy the very first of the sciences which is cultivated by a rude people; though from the distance of the objects, and the consequent mysteriousness of their nature and motions this would seem not to be the case. Of all the phenomena of nature the celestial appearances are by their greatness and beauty the most strikingly addressed to the curiosity of mankind. But it is not only their greatness and beauty by which they become the first objects of a speculative curiosity. The species of objects in the heavens are few in number; the sun the moon the planets and the fixed stars. All the changes too which are ever observed in these bodies evidently arise from some difference in the velocity and direction of their several motions. All this formed a very simple object of consideration. The objects, however, which the inferior parts of nature presented to view the earth and the bodies which immediately surround it though they were much more familiar in the mind were more apt to embarrass and perplex it by the variety of their species and by the intricacy and seeming irregularity of the laws or orders of their succession. The rarity of meteors in the air of clouds in airways, thunder lightning wind rain hail snow &c &c, and the order of their succession seems to be most irregular and uncertain. The species of fossils minerals plants animals which are found in the waters and near the surface of the earth are still more intricate diversified; and if we regard the different manners of their production the result of influence in altering destroying supporting one another & the orders of their succession seem to admit of an almost infinite variety. If the imagination therefore when it considered the appearances in the heavens was often perplexed and drawn out of its course it would be much more exposed to the same embarrassment when it directed its attention to the objects which the earth presented to it and when it endeavoured to trace their progress and successions & revolutions." Extract by Dr Adam Gad利 p 57-58. Of the Persians Mr Scott Waring says "Their perverse predilection for judicial astrology excites them to the study of astronomy merely that they may foretell the conjunctions of the planets; and when they are able to do this with any degree of accuracy they are accounted men of considerable science. They have two descriptions of instruments; the first containing the con-

The Hindú astronomy is possessed of very considerable accuracy in regard to the mean motions. In other respects it has no pretensions to correctness or refinement. Astronomy may acquire great accuracy in regard to the mean motions, without the help of any nice or delicate observations; and while the science can hardly be said to exist. If there is every reason to believe, and none whatsoever to disbelieve, that the mean motions of the Hindu astronomy have been gradually corrected in the same manner in which the calendars of ancient nations have been improved, the legitimate conclusion cannot be mistaken.

As far as a conclusion can be drawn respecting the state of astronomy among the Hindus, from the state of their instruments of observation (and an analogy might be expected between those closely connected circumstances), the inference entirely corresponds with what the other circumstances in the condition of the Hindus have a tendency to establish. The observatory at Benares, the great seat of Hindu astronomy and learning, was found to be rude in structure, and the instruments with which it was provided of the coarsest contrivance and construction.

Even Mr. Playfair himself observes that "regular observations began to be made in Chaldea with the era of Nabonassar, the earliest which have merited the attention of succeeding ages" The observation which he next presents is truly philosophical and

junction and opposition of the luminaries, and the second the eclipses, the longitude and latitude of the stars," &c Tour to Sheeraz, p 254 The pages of the historian being little adapted to mathematical and astronomical discussion, I have inserted, by way of Appendix, an examination of the arguments for the antiquity and excellence of the Hindu astronomy; with which the friendship of the great mathematician to whom I have alluded has enabled me to elucidate the subject See Append No I at the end of the chapter

BOOK II important "The curiosity of the Greeks," says he,
CHAP. 8. "was, soon after, directed to the same object and that ingenious people was the first that endeavoured to explain or concoct by theory, the various phenomena of the heavens"¹ This was an important step all that preceded was mere observation and empiricism, not even the commencement of science² He adds "The astronomy of India gives no theory nor even any description of the celestial phenomena, but satisfies itself with the calculation of certain changes in the heavens particularly of the eclipses of the sun and moon, and with the rules and tables by which these calculations must be performed The Brahmin seating himself on the ground and arranging his shells before him, repeats the enigmatical verses that are to guide his calculation and from his little tablets and palm leaves takes out the numbers that are to be employed in it He obtains his result with wonderful certainty and expedition but having little knowledge of the principles on which his rules are founded, and no anxiety to be better informed he is perfectly satisfied if as it usually happens the commencement and duration of the eclipse answer, within a few minutes to his prediction. Beyond this his astronomical inquiries never extend and his ob-

servations, when he makes any, go no farther than BOOK II to determine the meridian line, or the length of the day at the place where he observes "^{CHAP 9}"¹

Scarcely can there be drawn a stronger picture than this of the rude and infant state of astronomy. The Brahmen, making his calculation by shells, is an exact resemblance of the rude American performing the same operation by knots on a string, and both of them exhibit a practice which then only prevails, either when the more ingenious and commodious method of ciphering, or accounting by written signs, is unknown, or when the human mind is too rude and too weak to break through the force of an inveterate custom.²

But the rude state of the science of astronomy among the Brahmens of the present day, is supposed to have been preceded by a period in which it was cultivated to a high degree of perfection. It is vain to ask at what date this period had its existence, and where the signs of such ancient knowledge are to be found. To these questions no answer can be returned Sir William Jones himself admits "it is improbable that the Indian astronomers, in very early times, had made more accurate observations than those of Alexandria, Bagdad, or Maraghah, and still more improbable that they should have relapsed without apparent cause into error"³ Mr. Davis,

¹ Playfair, on the Astron of the Brahm Trans R S E n 138, 189

² Goguet, having mentioned the quipos of the Peruvians, says, "It is the same with the negroes on the coast of Juida They know nothing of the art of writing, and yet they can calculate the largest sums with great facility, by means of cords and knots, which have their own signification" Hist Gen de Voyage, n 283, 373, and 393" Origin of Laws, 1 224 We are informed by Herodotus, that the Egyptians, like the Brahmens, counted by shells, and at one time at least, the Greeks, but in an inverse order, the Greeks passing from left to right, the Egyptians from right to left Herodot lib n cap 36

³ Asiat Rec n 115 The following is valuable from the pen of

BOOK II. one of the oriental inquirers to whom we are most
CHAP 9 indebted for our knowledge of Hindu astronomy, says,
 "I had been inclined to think with many others,
 that the Brahmins possess no more knowledge in
 astronomy, than they have derived from their ances-
 tors in tables ready calculated to their hands and
 that few traces of the principles of the science could
 be found among them but by consulting some San-
 scrit books I was induced to alter my opinion I
 believe the Hindu science of astronomy will be found
 as well known now as it ever was among them"¹
 In other words, the ignorance of the present age is
 the same with the ignorance of all former ages²

M Delambre 1 M La Place qui avoit quelque intérêt à soutenir la grande ancienneté de l'astronomie Indienne, et qui avoit d'abord parlé des mouvements moyens et des époques des Hindous de la manière la plus arachnéenne a fini pourtant par croire et imprimer que leurs tables ne remontent pas au delà du 15me siècle. Mr Playfair en répondant à l'objection de M de la Place ne la résout pas. Il eu suffisamment que Bailly ait affirmé plus ou moins directement et positivement la conjonction générale des planètes, qui a déterminé l'époque; Ce qu'il fallait éclaircir est un fait. Les tables Indiquent-elles en effet cette conjonction l'époque alors est fixée et l'astronomie Indienne est beaucoup plus moderne. Les tables n'indiquent-elles pas cette conjonction, alors l'objection de M de la Place tombe d'elle-même. C'est ce que ne dit pas Mr Playfair et c'est ce que je n'ai pas Je tems de vérifier. Mais quand tu me l'objection seras sans force il resterait bien d'autre difficultés. Ce ne sont pas quelques rencontres heureuses pour une partie de calculs erronés ou inconveniens qui suffisent pour prouver l'exactitude de l'astronomie Indienne. La forme mystérieuse de leurs tables et de leurs méthodes, suffisent pour donner des soupçons et leurs résultats. C'est une question qui probablement ne sera jamais déterminée et qui ne prouvera l'exactitude que par de nouvelles découvertes dans les écrits des Hindous." Letter from M Delambre dated Paris J ly 21 1814 published in Appendix to note D of "Researches concerning the Laws, &c. of Ind's. by Q Crawford Esq."

¹ At st. Ills. 1^o G—224

² Of that ignorance rule the following specimen — "The Bhagavat" (says Mr Davis Astr. Rev. 1. 1. 8. 1) "when treating of the system of the universe places the moon above the sun and the planets above the fixed stars. — The power of the pent element by nature is the right of the earth." See also beginning of sect. — "None of them" (the inhabitants of the present day) "are capable" (says Mr Ossian

While we are thus unable, from all we have learned of the Hindu astronomy, to infer either its high antiquity, or great excellence, it is a matter of doubt whether even that portion of the science which they possess, they may not to a great degree have derived from other nations more advanced in civilization than themselves. The Hindu astronomy possesses certain features of singularity which tend to prove, and have by various inquirers been held sufficient to prove, its perfect originality. But it may very well be supposed, that in a science which so naturally fixes the attention of even a rude people, the Hindus themselves proceeded to a certain extent, and even if they did borrow the most valuable portion of all that they know, that it was constrained to harmonize with the methods they had already invented, and the discoveries they had previously made. The fact, moreover, is, that if the Hindu astronomy exhibits marks of distinction from other systems, it exhibits, on the supposition of its originality, still more surprising instances of agreement with other systems. "The days of the week" (I use the language of Mr. Playfair) "are dedicated by the Brahmens, as by us, to the seven planets, and, what is truly singular, they are arranged precisely in the same order. The ecliptic is divided, as with us, into twelve signs of thirty degrees each. This division is purely ideal, and is intended merely for the purpose of calculation. The names and emblems by which these signs are expressed, are nearly the same as with us, and as there is nothing in the nature of things to have determined this coincidence, it must, like the arrangement of the days of the week, be the result of some

BOOK II ancient and unknown communication"¹ From this **CHAR 9** striking circumstance, Montucla the celebrated historian of mathematics, inferred that the Hindu zodiac was borrowed from the Greeks and from the vicinity of the Greek empire of Bactria as well as from the communications which took place between the Hindus the Persians and Arabians the facility with which the knowledge of the Grecian astronomy might pass into India is clear Sir William Jones controverts the position that the Hindu ecliptic was borrowed from the Greeks he contends that it was derived from the Chaldeans² But this is the same in the end³

¹ Playfair on the Astronomy of the Brahmins Tran R.S.E. ii 140 141 See to the same purpose Colebrooke on the Indian and Arabian Divisions of the Zodiac *Astr. Res.* ix 373 378

Astr. Res. ix 289.

The division of the zodiac among the Burmans as well as the Brahmins resembles ours the original Chaldeon My friend Sangerano (says Dr Boehmso *Astr. Res.* vi 201) "gave Captain Sykes a silver basin on which the twelve signs were embossed He conceived and I think justly that this zodiac had been communicated to the Burmans from Chaldea by the intervention of the Brahmins And I find that in this conjecture he is supported by Sir W Jones (*Astr. Res.* ii 300). Both however I am afraid will excuse the insignification of the Brahmins who as the learned Judge in another place alleges have always been too proud to borrow science from any nation ignorant of the Vedas Of their being so proud as not to acknowledge their obligations I make no doubt but that they have borrowed from the Chaldeans who were ignorant of the Vedas Sir W Jones himself has proved Why then should he have opposed the accurate smiles of perfectly credulous Pindar to the reasoning of M. M. Noel (*Astr. Res.* ii 300 "sq") when that learned man alleged that the Brahmins have derived a astronomical knowledge from the Greeks and Arabs The expression of the Brahmins quoted by him as a proof namely that a base creature can be lower than a dog or a crow only exposes the insatiable ignorance and daring of illiteracy —On this pride to give us learn (a sure sign of baseness) it is also to be remarked that in all moral connexion (among the Hindus) it is asserted falcon over a peacock took place between Socrates and his accusers On the other side "says Mr Wilford I visited the ponds of Benares and they all gave me the same answer namely that In the time of Ctesias the Sarasas were much corrupted and were said to

At one time a disposition appeared to set the know- BOOK II.
ledge of the Hindus in pure mathematics very high CHAP 9

sidered as a sort of Hindus" *Asiat Res* v 286 What was to hinder the Brahmins from learning astronomy from the Greeks at that period? Mr Wilford indeed says that a great intercourse formerly subsisted between the Hindus and the nations of the West *Ibid* iii 297, 298 Sir William seems to have known but little of the intercourse which subsisted between the Hindus and the people of the West *Suetonius (in vit. Octav)* informs us, that the Indians sent ambassadors to Augustus An embassy met him when in Syria, from king Porus, as he is called, with letters written in the Greek character, containing, as usual, an hyperbolical description of the grandeur of the monarch *Strabo, lib. xv p 663* A Brahmen was among those ambassadors, who followed Augustus to Athens, and there burnt himself to death *Strabo, Ibid* and *Dio Cass lib liii p 527* Another splendid embassy was sent from the same quarter to Constantine *Cedreni Annal p 242, Ed Basil 1566, Maurice, Hist* iii 125 "I have long harboured a suspicion," says Gibbon, "that all the Sejanian, and some, perhaps much, of the Indian science, was derived from the Greeks of Bactriana" *Gibbon, viii 294* A confirmation of this idea, by no means trifling, was found in China, by Lord Macartney and his suite, who discovered the mathematical instruments deposited in the cities of Pekin, and Nankeen, not constructed for the latitude of those places, but for the 37th parallel, the position of Balk or Bactria *Barrow's China, p 289* The certainty of the fact of a Christian church being planted in India at a time not distant from that of the apostles, is a proof that the Hindus had the means of learning from the Greeks — We learn the following very important fact from Dr Buchanan The greater part of Bengal manuscripts, owing to the badness of the paper, require to be copied at least once in ten years, as they will, in that climate, preserve no longer, and every copyist, it is to be suspected, adds to old books whatever discoveries he makes, relinquishing his immediate reputation for learning, in order to promote the grand and profitable employment of his sect, the delusion of the multitude As *Res vii 174*, note Anquetil Duperron, who had at an early period asserted the communication of Greek science to the Hindus, (*See Recherches Historiques et Philosophiques sur l'Inde*) supported this conclusion at the end of his long life "N'est il pas avoué," says he in his notes to the French translation of Paulini's Travels, iii 442, "que, de tout tems, sans conquête, avec conquête, par terre comme par mer, l'Asie, l'Inde, et l'Europe, ont eu des relations plus ou moins actives, que les savans, les sages de ces contrées se sont visités, ont pu se faire part de leurs découvertes, et qu'il n'est pas hors de vraisemblance que quelques uns auront fait usage dans leurs livres, même sans en averur, des nouvelles lumières qu'ils avaient reçues de l'étranger? De nos jours, le Rajah d'Amber, dans ses ouvrages astronomiques, parle des tables de la Hire Le Rajah Djessingue, aura profité des leçons du P Boudier, qu'il avait appelé

BOOK II. A very convenient, and even an ingenious mode of **CHAP 9** constructing the table of approximate signs, is in use among the Hindu astronomers. "But ignorant totally" says Professor Leslie, "of the principles of the operation, those humble calculators are content to follow blindly a slavish routine. The Brahmins must therefore, have derived such information from people further advanced than themselves in science, and of a bolder and more inventive genius. Whatever may be the pretensions of that passive race, their knowledge of trigonometrical computation has no solid claim to any high antiquity. It was probably, before the revival of letters in Europe carried to the East by the tide of victory. The natives of Hindustan might receive instruction from the Persian astronomers who were themselves taught by the Greeks of Constantinople, and stimulated to those scientific pursuits by the skill and liberality of their Arabian conquerors."¹

après de lui. Si l'astronome Brahme avec lequel M. le Gentil a travaillé à Pondichéry, écrit sur l'astronomie sans abandonner le fond des principes du système Indien, il adoptera des pratiques qu'il aura remarquées dans son disciple calculer, quoique Indien à la française et donnera comme de lui du pays, des résultats tellement tirés de ses rapports avec l'astronomie Française "que ces probabilités, c'est ne pas coûter aux hommes." — Il y a différentes époques dans les sciences Indiennes, dans la mythologie les opinions et croyances de cette époque. Les Indiens ont reçu ou imprimit d'autres connaissances des Arabes des Perses, en tel temps; des Grecs dans tel autre." Ib. p. 431.

¹ Elements of Geometry &c. By John Leslie Professor of Moral Philosophy in the University of Edinburgh note xxii. All that can be said in favour of the mathematical science of the Hindus I very skilfully summed up in the following passage by a most munificent but late expatriate Willm. Wallace Prof. of the Professors of Mathematics in the University of Edinburgh. The researches of the learned have brought to light astronomical tables in India which must have been constructed by the greatest of geometers; but the period at which they have been formed has by no means been completely ascertained. Some are of opinion that they have been framed from observations made at a very remote period, but that it must have been less than 1000 years before the Christian era; and it is upon the well founded the science of geometry could be developed and in fact

Arithmetic is a branch of mathematics ; and among other inventions, of which the honour has been claimed for the Hindus, is that of numerical characters. Whether the signs used by the Hindus are so peculiar as to render it probable that they invented them, or whether it is still more probable that they borrowed them, are questions which, for the purpose of ascertaining their progress in civilization, are not worth resolving. "The invention of numerical characters," says Goguet, "must have been very ancient.

a considerable extent, long before the period assigned to its origin in the West, so that many of the elementary propositions may have been brought from India to Greece. The Hindus have a treatise called the Surya Sidhanta, which professes to be a revelation from heaven, communicated to Meya, a man of great sanctity, about four millions of years ago, but setting aside this fabulous origin, it has been supposed to be of great antiquity, and to have been written at least two thousand years before the Christian era. Interwoven with many absurdities, this book contains a rational system of trigonometry, which differs entirely from that first known in Greece or Arabia. In fact, it is founded on a geometrical theorem, which was not known to the geometers of Europe, before the time of Vieta, about two hundred years ago. And it employs the sines of arcs, a thing unknown to the Greeks, who used the chords of the double arcs. The invention of sines has been attributed to the Arabs, but it is possible that they may have received this improvement in trigonometry, as well as the numeral characters, from India." Edinburgh Encyclopedia, Article Geometry, p 191. The only fact here asserted which bears upon the question of the civilization of the Hindus, is that of their using the sines of arcs instead of the chords of the double arcs. Suppose that they invented this method. It proves nothing beyond what all men believe, that the Hindus made a few of the first steps in civilization at an early period, and that they engaged in those abstract speculations, metaphysical and mathematical, to which a semi-barbarous people are strongly inclined. The Arabians were never more than semi-barbarous. The Greeks were no better, at the early age when they were acquainted with the elementary propositions of geometry. If the Greeks or Arabians invented, in the semi-barbarous state, the mode of computation by the chords, what was to hinder the Hindus from inventing, while semi-barbarous, the mode of computing by the sines of arcs? This is upon the supposition that the mode of computing by sines, and the elementary propositions on which it depends, really are original among the Hindus. But this seems not to rest upon very satisfactory proof, when it is barely inferred from the use of chords by the Greeks, and the *possibility* alone is asserted of the Arabians having derived the knowledge from the Hindus.

BOOK II For though flints pebbles and grains of corn, &c.
CHAP. 9. might be sufficient for making arithmetical calculations, they were by no means proper for preserving the result of them. It was, however necessary on many occasions to preserve the result of arithmetical operations, and consequently it was necessary very early, to invent signs for that purpose."¹ Under these motives, a people, who had communication with another people already acquainted with numerical signs, would borrow them. A people who had no such communication would be under the necessity of inventing them. But alphabetical signs, far more difficult, were invented at a rude period of society no certain proof of civilization is therefore gained by the invention of arithmetical characters. The characters of which Europeans themselves make use and which they have borrowed from the Arabians, are really hieroglyphics; and "from the monuments of the Mexicans" says Coguet "which are still remaining it appears that hieroglyphics were used by that people, both for letters and numerical characters."² That diligent and judicious inquirer says, in general The origin of cyphers or numerical characters was confounded with that of hieroglyphic writing. To this day the Arabian cyphers are real hieroglyphics and do not represent words but things. For which reason though the nations which use them speak different languages yet these characters excite the ideas of the same numbers in the minds of all."³

Algebraic signs which were brought into Europe from Arabia may it is said have originated in India. There is an account of the Arabian writers that an

¹ Or, *of Laws I. 21.*

Ibid. I. 21.

² Ibid. Mr. Gilchrist renders it highly probable that not only the
 characters but the letters of the alphabet are hieroglyphic. *Ilford's
 Library* p. 12.

Arabian mathematician in 959 travelled to India, in BOOK II.
 quest of information. He might, however, travel CHAP 9 without finding. On this foundation, it is plain that no sound inference can be established If, indeed, it were proved that the algebraic notation came from India, an invention, which the Arabians could make, implies not much of civilization wherever it was made The shape, indeed, in which it was imported from Arabia sets the question at rest It cannot be described more clearly and shortly than in the words of Mr. Playfair The characters, as imported from Arabia, "are mere abbreviations of words Thus the first appearance of algebra is merely that of a system of short-hand writing, or an abbreviation of common language, applied to the solution of arithmetical problems It was a contrivance merely to save trouble"¹

The books of the Hindus abound with the praise of learning, and the love and admiration of learning is a mark of civilization and refinement. By the panegyrics, however, in the books of the Hindus, the existence is proved of little of which admiration is due. On the pretensions of the Brahmins

¹ Second Dissertation, Supplement to the Encyclopædia Britannica, p 12 It is a coincidence well worth remarking, that Diophantus, a Greek mathematician of Alexandria, about 150 years after Christ, employed a like expedient "The questions he resolves," says Mr Playfair, "are of considerable difficulty The expression is that of common language abbreviated, and assisted by a few symbols" (ib. p 13) In a MS of Diophantus, which Bombelli says he saw in the Vatican library, the Indian authors, he says, are often quoted Nothing of this appears in the work of Diophantus, which was published about three years after the time when Bombelli wrote Nor has any other work of Diophantus been produced It is, besides, to be remembered, that the Greeks used the word *Indian* with great latitude They applied it not merely to the people beyond the Indus, they applied it also to a people on the Euxine Sea, to a people in Ethiopia, in a general way, to all the people of the East It is by no means clear that Diophantus would not apply it to the Arabians themselves (See Appendix, No. II at the end of the chapter)

BOOK II to learning, the title to which they reserved exclusively to themselves, a great part of their unbounded influence depended. It was their interest, therefore to excite an admiration of it that is, of themselves, by every artifice. When we contemplate however the acquirements and performances on which the most lofty of these panegyrics were lavished, we can be at no loss for a judgment on their learning or the motive from which the praises of it arose. To be able to read the *Vedas*, was merit of the most exalted nature to have actually read them, elevated the student to a rank almost superior to that of mortals. "A priest," says the sacred text of Menu "who has gone through the whole *Veda*, is equal to a sovereign of the whole world!" What is valuable in

¹ Laws of Menu ch. ix. 225. "Since the era of Haldhed and Sir William Jones" says Mr Scott Waring "the existence of the precious manuscripts of Sanscrit learning, has like the chorus to a popular song been echoed from author to author who though entirely ignorant of Sanscrit have stamped with credulity a seemingly vague opposition; for what produsion have we yet seen to justify those extravagant praises. Tour to Ceylon, by Mr Scott Waring p. 8. Mr Walford, better acquainted with the Puranas than any other European speaks of them with little respect. He talks of "the ignorant compilers of the Puranas who have arranged this heterogeneous mass with out reflected and ill-considered judgment." As Iket 1.171 M Bernier than whom no European had better opportunities of observing the actual and present state ment of the Hindoo men who observed with a penitence, and judgment, and wrote before the birth of theory on the subject says "Après le Puran que lques uns se jettent dans la philosophie ou certains envoient bien peu jusqu'à ce qu'ils soient devenues fâcheuses et pernicieuse et ne sont pas animées dans l'espérance de parvenir à qui que chose par leur efort." Suite des Mémoires sur l'Empire des Grandes Indes 184. "Les plus fameux Pandits" says he "n'ont pas été très ignorants" (Ibid. p. 183). Mentioning their account of the origin of the world he says "Il y en a aussi qui croient que la lumiere et les ten bres sont le premiers principes et d'autant plus il est nécessaire de faire son ordre que ce qui appartient de l'ordre est moins qu'il n'en faut pour plus mais toutefois la lumiere est le plus grande principe" (Ibid. p. 18.) Thus the Hindoo abhors in general the man whom they pretend to know more than only common castics. Il ne le voit pas d'autant

learning could be little understood, where consequences of so much importance were attached to a feat of this description.

BOOK II.
CHAP 9.

qu'il y a cinq mille vaines dans l'homme, ny plus ny moins, comme s'ils les avoient bien contées" (Ibid p 190) After a review of their whole knowledge, which would be reckoned no incorrect outline, by the best informed of the present day, he adds, "Toutes ces grandes impertinences que je viens de vous raconter m'ont souvent fait dire en moi-même que si ce sont là les fameuses sciences de ces anciens Bragmanes des Indes, il faut qu'il y ait eu bien du monde trompé dans les grandes idées qu'on en a conçues" (Ibid p 193)—"For some time a very unjust and unhappy impression appeared to have been made on the public mind, by the encomiums passed on the Hindoo writings In the first place, they were thus elevated in their antiquity beyond the Christian Scriptures, the writings of Moses having been called the productions of yesterday, compared with those of the bramhins The contents of these books, also, were treated with the greatest reverence, the primitive religion of the Hindoos, it was said, revealed the most sublime doctrines, and inculcated a pure morality We were taught to make the greatest distinction between the ancient and modern religion of the Hindoos, for the apologists of Hindooism did not approve of its being judged of by present appearances Some persons endeavoured to persuade us, that the Hindoos were not idolaters, because they maintained the unity of God, though they worshipped the work of their own hands as God, and though the number of their gods was 330,000,000 It is very probable, that the unity of God has been a sentiment amongst the philosophers of every age, and that they wished it to be understood, that they worshipped the One God, whether they bowed before the image of Mojoeh, Jupiter, or Käléé, yet mankind have generally concluded, that he who worships an image is an idolater, and I suppose they will continue to think so, unless in this age of reason common sense should be turned out of doors—Now, however, the world has had some opportunity of deciding upon the claims of the Hindoo writings, both as it respects their antiquity and the value of their contents Mr Colebrooke's essay on the védus, and his other important translations, the Bhágavat Géta, by Mr Wilkins, the translation of the Ramayúná, several volumes of which have been printed, some valuable papers in the Asiatic Researches, with other translations by different Sūngskritu scholars, have thrown a great body of light on this subject—and this light is daily increasing—Many an object appears beautiful when seen at a distance, and through a mist, but when the fog has dispersed, and the person has approached it, he smiles at the deception Such is the exact case with these books, and this system of idolatry Because the public, for want of being more familiar with the subject, could not ascertain the point of time when the Hindoo Shastrus were written, they therefore at once believed the assertions of the bramhins and their friends, that their antiquity was unfathomable"

BOOK II The Hindus have institutions of education and the
CHAP. 9. Brahmins teach the arts of reading and writing by tracing the characters with a rod in the sand¹. How extensively this elementary knowledge is diffused we have received little or no information. This is a satisfactory proof of the want of intelligence and of interest, with which our countrymen in India have looked upon the native population. The magistrates, however, who returned answers to the interrogatories of government in the year 1801, respecting the morals of the people describe the state of education, in general terms as deplorable in the extreme. Mr J. Straney, magistrate of Mymensing, says "The lower sort are extremely ignorant." Mr Paterson, magistrate of Dacca Jelalpore recommends "a total change in the system of education amongst those who have any education at all" adding that "the great mass of the lower ranks have literally none." The judges of the court of appeal and circuit of Moorshedabad say

"The moral character of a nation can be improved by education only. All instruction is unattainable to the labouring poor, whose own necessities require the assistance of the children as soon as their tender limbs are capable of the smallest labour. With the middle class of tradesmen, artificers, and shopkeepers, education ends at ten years of age, and never reaches further than reading, writing (a scarcely legible hand on the plantain leaf), and the simplest rules of arithmetic"¹ But if the Hindu institutions of education were of a much more perfect kind than they appear to have ever been, they would afford a very inadequate foundation for the inference of a high state of civilization. The truth is, that institutions for education, more elaborate than those of the Hindus, are found in the infancy of civilization. Among the Turks and the Persians there are schools and colleges, rising one above another, for the different stages of instruction.² And scarcely in any nation does the business

¹ Papers on India Affairs, No. III ordered to be printed by the House of Commons, 30th April, 1813

² "There were in these times [the times of Aliverdi, nabob of Bengal] at Azimabad," says the author of the *Seer Mutakhareen*, "numbers of persons who loved sciences and learning, and employed themselves in teaching and in being taught, and I remember to have seen in that city and its environs alone, nine or ten professors of repute, and three or four hundred students and disciples, from whence may be conjectured the number of those that must have been in the great towns, and in the retired districts" *Seer Mutakhareen*, 1 705, 4to Calcutta, 1789 N B This with regard to the *Mussulmans* of Bengal The translator says, in a note, "The reader must rate properly all these students, and all these expressions their only object was the Coran and its commentaries, that is the Mahometan religion, and the Mahometan law." *Ibid* A hint very different from those we are wont to receive from our guides in Hindu literature—"In vain do some persons talk to us of colleges, of places of education, and books These words in Turkey convey not the same ideas as with us" Volney's *Travels in Syria and Egypt*, II 443—Chardin, who formed as high an opinion of the Persians as Sir William Jones of the Hindus, tells us, (*Voyage en Perse*, in 130,) "Le genie des Persans est porté aux sciences, plus qu'à toute autre profession, et l'on peut dire que les Persans y réussissent si bien

BOOK II. extremely natural that Sir William Jones whose
CHAR 9 pundits had become acquainted with the ideas of European philosophers respecting the system of the universe, should hear from them that those ideas were contained in their own books. The wonder was that without any proof he should believe them¹

done; but when I send my interpreter who is also a Brahmen to copy the dates they pretend that their books are lost. Ibid : 333. All information he says, from the Brahmens, usually & here most essentially as derived from different individuals. Ibid ii 203. See an account of the imposition practised by his pundits upon Captain Wilford by Lord Tegnmouth in the Introduction to his Life of Sir William Jones; also an account by Mr. Wilford himself Lawy on the Sacred Isles in the West Asia, Rev. viii. 253.—In a letter to a friend Mr. W. Jones said “I can no longer bear to be at the mercy of our pundits, who deal out the Hindu law as they please and in fees at reasonable rates where they cannot find it ready made.” Life of Sir W. Jones by Lord Tern mouth 410 Ed. p. 307.—Colonel Wills accuses the Hindu author of the Digest of Hindu Law translated by Mr. Colebrooke of substituting a false principle of law for a true one out of a courtesy and consideration for opinions established by authority which is peculiar to the natives of India.” Histor. Sketches, p. 116.

¹ He might have got proofs equal to those with which they presented him of Plato's having been acquainted with the circulation of the blood; viz. because when speaking of that fluid he uses the word *κρεατος*, which signifies to be earned meat.—It is worthy of remark that the philosopher of whom Sir William heard and whose works contained such important secretaries as called Yatana Acharya that is Gentile or Greek. By the argument of Sir William, we might believe that the Greeks anticipated Newton. When Copernicus disengaged with the received account of the heaven only more or less addressed himself to discover a new arrangement, near it that he removed all the obscure traditions delitered on in old, concerning the other hypotheses which the ancient had invented. He found in Plutarch, that some old Pythagoreans had represented the earth as it being in the centre of the universe like a wheel to set in own axis; and that others of the same sect had removed it from the centre & represented it as revolving in the ecliptic like a star round the central sun. If this is central sun he supposed they meant the sun. See Dr. Adam's Library II. c. African p. 51. We must prove that in either case he had a just conception of the figure of the globe. Plutarch says that according to that inquiry T. L. S.

Herodotus mentions the opinion of a naturalist, even in his days, who BOOK IL supposed that the ocean flowed round the earth, (a bold step towards the CHAP 9. conception of its right figure,) τον ακεανον μην τερι πασσω ρεειν, lib. ii sect 22 — Dr Vincent, giving an account of the knowledge possessed by the ancients of the globular form of the earth, and of the saying of Strabo, that nothing obstructed the passage from Spain to India by a westerly course, but the immensity of the Atlantic ocean, has the following note; “ Aristotle seems the author of this supposition, as well as of most other things that are extraordinary in the knowledge of the ancients. See Bochart, Phaleg 169 Συναπτεις τον τερι τας Ηρακλεινς σηλας τοτον την περι την Ινδικην The parts about the pillars of Hercules join to those about India. This is a nearer approach still, but both suppositions arise from the contemplation of the earth as a sphere — Aristotle has also preserved the opinion of the Pythagoreans, who made the sun the centre of our system, with the earth and the other planets revolving round it, which is the hypothesis adopted by Copernicus, and established by Newton. Strabo, likewise, who left the phenomena of the heavens, and the form of the earth, to the mathematicians, still thought the earth a sphere, and describes our system agreeable to that which was afterwards adopted by Ptolemy, but he adds the idea of gravitation in a most singular manner. Σφαιροειδης μεν δο Κοσμος και δο Ουραρος Ή ΡΟΠΗ δεπι το μεσον των βαρων δουρανος περιφερεται περι τε αυτην και περι τον αξονα, απ' ανατολης επι δυσσ. Lib ii 110 The earth and the heaven are both spherical, but the tendency is to the centre of gravity. The heaven is carried round itself, and round its axis from east to west. I barely suggest the extent of ancient knowledge on these questions, those who wish to gratify their curiosity may consult Stobæus, tom ii cap 25, Ed Heeren, Gotting. 1792, 1794, and Diogenes Laertius in Anaximander, Pythagoras, and Zeno, lib vii sect 155” Periplus of the Erythræan Sea, part ii 517. —Sir William Jones tells us in his Discourse on the Hindu zodiac, that the pundit Ramachandra had a correct notion of the figure of the earth —So had the elder Hermes, of whom it was one of the established maxims, that the earth was ovoidal, and hence the oval form of many of the oldest temples of Egypt. The earth was called Brahma's egg. See Asiat Res i 360 Or Ramachandra, like a common fortune-teller, might only repeat to Sir William what he had learned from Sir William. —Europeans will arrive in time to think justly respecting the Hindus: Thus speaks Dr Buchanan, “No useful science have the Brahmins diffused among their followers, history they have abolished, morality they have depressed to the utmost, and the dignity and power of the altar they have erected on the ruins of the state, and the rights of the subject” Asiat. Res vi 166

APPENDIX N° I

Remarks on the Arguments for the Antiquity of the Hindu Astronomy

BOOK II. THE knowledge of the Europeans concerning the ^{Appendix} astronomy of India is chiefly derived from different sets of astronomical tables brought to Europe at different times. All these tables are obviously connected with one another for they are all adapted to one meridian the mean motions are the same in them all and their principal epochs are all deduced by calculation from one original epoch. The most ancient of the Indian epochs is fixed in the year 3102 before the Christian era, at the commencement of the Cali rug. On account of the mutual connection which it is allowed, subsists between the three remaining epochs, it is only necessary to discuss that one which seems to be the most important it is comparatively of modern date and goes back no further than to the year of Christ 1491.

M Bailly, in his *Astronomie Indienne* has endeavoured to prove that the more ancient of the two epochs is fixed by actual observations a proposition, which, if it were clearly made out, would confer the highest antiquity on the astronomy of India. In a paper in the Edinburgh Transactions Mr Playfair who has adopted the opinion of M Bailly has given a clear and forcible summary of all the arguments that have been adduced in favour of the side he supports. M Laplace who is the only other author that has noticed the subject of the Indian astronomy since the publication of M Bailly's work, does not

accede to the opinion of his brother academician. BOOK II.
In a very short passage in the "Système du Monde," ————— Laplace states it as his own opinion, that the ancient epoch of the Brahmens was adopted with the view of making all the celestial motions begin at the same point of the zodiac: and he very briefly hints the reasons on which his opinion is founded. In drawing up the following remarks the observations of Laplace have been kept in view.

1. If we set out from the epoch of 1491, and compute the places of the sun, moon, and the planets, for the ancient epoch in 3102 A. C. it is found that all the celestial bodies are then in mean conjunction with the sun in the origin of the moveable zodiac. Here then is an astronomical fact, which the Indian tables necessarily suppose to have taken place, and which, it must be allowed, appears to be very fit to bring the authenticity of the ancient epoch to the proof. For, although the tables of the modern astronomy, highly improved as they are, do not enable us to go back more than 2000 years with extreme accuracy, yet they are sufficiently exact to afford the means of judging whether the general conjunction, supposed in the Indian tables, was actually copied from the heavens or not. Now M Bailly has computed the places of the planets at the time of the ancient epoch of the Indians, or for the commencement of the Cali-yug, from the tables of M Lalande: and, although all the planets, except Venus, were then nearly in conjunction with the sun, yet they were by no means so near to one another as to render it probable that this epoch was fixed by observation. M. Bailly argues that the conjunction could not be determined by direct observation; because the planets are invisible when immersed in the sun's light: and he shows that fifteen days after the epoch all the

BOOK II. planets, except Venus, were contained within seven
 Appendix. teen degrees of the zodiac. But this is not satisfactory Mr Playfair admits that the Indian tables cannot be entirely vindicated in this respect. La place lays all the stress on this argument to which it seems fairly entitled.

The fiction of a general conjunction in the beginning of the moveable zodiac is the more remarkable because it agrees precisely with the account which M Bailly gives of the formation of the Indian astronomical systems.

The validity of the observations made by the critic in the Edinburgh Review as far as they regard the accuracy of the mean motions, and other astronomical elements which do not depend on the epoch, cannot be disputed. There is but one way of determining the mean motions with accuracy, namely by comparing together real observations of the places of the planets made at a sufficient interval of time. No fictitious, or assumed epochs can be of the least use for this purpose. Indeed Mr Bently does not maintain that the Brahmins make any such use of their assumed epochs. The artificial systems of the Indian astronomy necessarily suppose the mean motions and other elements, to be already determined and known. Mr Bently seems in some measure to have misconceived the nature of the arguments by which the Europeans endeavour to establish the antiquity of the Hindu astronomy. He seems to have imagined that nothing more was necessary for constituting all their reasoning on this subject than to make them acquainted with the formation of the artificial systems of the Brahmins.

But considering Mr Bently as a person unacquainted with the astronomy of the East, and as having access to the books in which it is contained, his testi-

timony cannot but be allowed to be of great force in BOOK II. the present argument. He tells us that the Brahmins, when they would form an astronomical system, go back to a remote epoch, and assume as the basis of their system, that all the heavenly bodies are in a line of mean conjunction with the sun in the beginning of Aries. Now the Indian tables actually suppose such a conjunction at the commencement of the Cali-yug; and in this they are at variance with the most exact of the modern astronomical tables. Is it not then in the highest degree probable that the era of the Cali-yug is an assumed, or fictitious epoch in the astronomy of the Hindus?

If the ancient epoch, in 3102 A. C. be fictitious, the force of many of the arguments for the antiquity of the Indian astronomy will be greatly diminished. For that reasoning must needs be a good deal vague and unsatisfactory which rests entirely on the quantity of an astronomical element of an uncertain date affected, as must be the case, by the errors of observation, of the limits of which we have no means of judging.

2 The equation of the sun's centre, according to the Indian tables, is $2^{\circ} 10\frac{1}{2}'$, whereas the same quantity, according to modern observations, is only $1^{\circ} 55\frac{1}{2}'$. It is one consequence of the mutual disturbances of the planets that the excentricity of the solar orbit, on which the equation just mentioned depends, was greater in former ages than it is at the present time. From the quantity which the Hindus assign to this astronomical element, M. Bailly has drawn an argument in favour of the antiquity of the Indian tables, which, it must be confessed, is of great weight, when the difference of the Indian and European determinations is considered as arising from the gradual alteration of the planetary orbits. But Laplace has remarked that the equation, which in the Hindu

BOOK II. tables amounts to $2^{\circ} 10'$, is really composed of two parts namely, the equation of the sun's centre, and the annual equation of the moon both of which depend alike on the eccentricity of the sun's orbit, and complete their periods in the same interval of time. The Indians have naturally enough blended these two irregularities together because the great object of their astronomy being the calculation of eclipses, the relative places of the sun and moon are effected by the sum of both. The annual equation of the moon is nearly $11'$. And, when added to the equation of the sun's centre the amount ($2^{\circ} 6\frac{1}{2}'$) does not differ much from the quantity set down in the Indian tables. The force of M. Bailly's argument is therefore completely taken off.

But the remark of Laplace not only invalidates the argument for the antiquity, but it furnishes a powerful one on the opposite side. It is indeed in the situation of a perfidious ally, who not only deserts his friends, but marshals his whole force in the ranks of their opponents. The amount of the two irregularities which are blended together by the Indians is $2^{\circ} 6\frac{1}{2}$ at the present time but if we go back to the commencement of the Cali yug, there must be added about $13\frac{1}{4}$, on account of the greater magnitude of the sun's eccentricity in that age above what it is in the present century and thus we ought to have found $2^{\circ} 20'$ in place of $2^{\circ} 10'$ in the Hindu tables if their supposed antiquity be granted. It must be admitted that, in this instance at least the Indian tables when they are referred to the ancient epoch are fairly at variance with the state of the heavens.

3. The quantities which the Indian tables assign to two other astronomical elements, viz. the mean motions of Jupiter and Saturn, have been found to agree almost exactly not with what is observed at

the present time, but with what the theory of BOOK II gravity shows would have been observed at the beginning of the Cali-yug. This curious coincidence between the Hindu tables and the most abstruse theory of modern Europe, was discovered by Laplace after the publication of the *Astronomie Indienne* and it was communicated to M. Bailly in a letter inserted in the *Journal des Scavans*. The argument which this circumstance furnishes in favour of the antiquity is not forgotten by Mr Playfair; and it is also mentioned by the critic in the Edinburgh Review.

But the discovery of Laplace, although it cannot be disputed, is absolutely of no avail in establishing the antiquity of the Indian astronomy for no inference can be drawn from it respecting the ancient epoch in 3102 A. C. which is not equally conclusive with regard to the modern epoch in 1491 of our era.

The theory of astronomy is indebted to Laplace for many interesting discoveries. Of these, two equations, affecting the mean motions of Jupiter and Saturn, are not the least important. These irregularities are periodical, and they both complete their courses in $917\frac{3}{4}$ years. And while one of them augments the motion of one of the planets, the other diminishes the motion of the other planet. It is a consequence of this discovery of Laplace, that, after an interval of time equal to $917\frac{3}{4}$ years; or equal to twice, or thrice, or any exact number of times that period, the mean motions of Jupiter and Saturn will return, to be precisely of the same quantity that they were at the beginning of the interval of time. Now, if from the epoch 1491, we reckon back a number of years, equal to five times the period of Laplace, we shall arrive at the year 3095 A. C., which is so near the ancient epoch of the Indians, as to entitle us to

BOOK II infer that an observer who lived in 1491, would agree in his determinations of the mean motions of Jupiter and Saturn with an astronomer who had lived forty six centuries before, at the beginning of the Cali yug

Appendix No reliance, then, can be placed on this argument as a proof of the antiquity of the Hindu tables. On the contrary, if we admit, what it must be allowed is extremely probable, that the ancient epoch is a fictitious one, pointed out by superstition or fixed upon for convenience in calculation, this argument will concur with the last in giving to the astronomy of India, a modern date, rather than the high antiquity contended for.

4 M Bailly has shown that the place of the aphe-
lion of Jupiter's orbit, determined by the Indian ta-
bles for the beginning of the Cali yug agrees with
the modern tables of Lalande when corrected by the
theoretical equations of La Grange. The same thing
is true of the quantity which the Hindus assign to
the equation of Saturn's centre. It requires but little
scepticism to raise up doubts of the validity of argu-
ments founded on such coincidences. In the first
place we are ignorant of the limits of the errors that
the Indian determinations may be susceptible of. In
the second place the dates of the observations on
which the astronomical elements of the Indians de-
pend are unknown and merely conjectural yet there
are necessary data for calculating the corrections that
must be applied to the modern tables, to fit them for
representing the ancient state of the heavens. In
the third place the theoretical formulae themselves
by which the corrections are computed cannot be sup-
posed to enable us to go back with much accuracy to
so remote an epoch as the Cali yug a circumstance
which is not owing to any imperfection of the theory.

but to the want of our knowing with precision the BOOK II relative proportions of the masses of the planets that compose our system When we reflect on these things, even the very exact coincidence of the Indian elements, with the calculated quantities (which is nearer than there is reasonable ground to except) is apt to create a suspicion that the whole is owing to a happy combination of balancing errors

But waving these objections, fairness of reasoning requires that we should lay no more stress on such coincidences, as those just mentioned, in favour of one side of the question, than we are willing to allow to discrepancies in similar circumstances, in support of the other side. M. Bailly allows that not any more of the elements of the planetary motions, contained in the Indian tables, agree so well with the determinations derived from the theory of gravity: and the quantities which are assigned to the equations of the centre, for Jupiter and Mars, are quite irreconcileable with the supposition of so remote an antiquity as the beginning of the Cali-yug. Such a contrariety of results justly invalidates the whole argument

5. Another argument urged by the favourers of the antiquity of the Indian astronomy, is derived from the obliquity of the ecliptic, which the Indians state at 24° .

Both observation and theory concur in showing that the obliquity of the ecliptic has been diminishing slowly for many ages preceding the present At the beginning of the Cali-yug, this astronomical element, according to theory, was $23^\circ 51'$, which is still short of what the Indians make it. Twelve centuries before the Cali-yug, the actual obliquity of the ecliptic, as derived from theory, would coincide with the Indian quantity within $2'$ And, by going back

BOOK II. still further, the error may no doubt, be entirely annihilated. Nothing it must be confessed can be more vague and unsatisfactory than this sort of reasoning

Let us grant that the Hindus determined the obliquity of the ecliptic, 4300 years before our era, which supposes that they made an error of $2'$ only. How are we to account for the strange circumstance that a quantity which they were at one time able to determine with so much accuracy should remain unaltered for a period of nearly 6000 years during which time the error of the first determination has accumulated to half a degree? Are we to suppose that, immediately after this imaginary epoch the art of astronomical observation disappeared, and was entirely lost? Thus, we know, could not be the case because many other astronomical elements necessarily suppose observations of a comparatively modern date as, for instance the equation of the sun's centre.

We shall account for the quantity which the Hindus assign to the obliquity much more simply and naturally, if we trust to the authority of Mr Bentley. According to him the Hindu astronomers (unless in cases where extraordinary accuracy is required) make it a rule in observing to take the nearest round numbers rejecting fractional quantities so that we have only to suppose that the observer who fixed the obliquity of the ecliptic at 23° , actually found it to be more than $23\frac{1}{4}^\circ$.

6 The length of the tropical year as deduced from the Hindu tables is $365^{\text{d}} 5^{\text{h}} 50^{\text{m}} 35^{\text{s}}$ which is $1^{\text{d}} 46^{\text{m}}$ longer than the determination of La Caille. This is certainly not a little accurate and necessarily supposes some degree of antiquity and the comparison of observations made at a great interval of time. We shall be the better able to form a judgment of the length of time which such a degree of accuracy

may require, if we consider the errors of some of our BOOK II. older tables, published before the art of making astronomical instruments was brought to its present ^{Appendix.} perfect state. In the Alphonsine Tables, published about 1252, the length of the tropical year, is

365^d 5^h 49' 16"

Copernicus (about 1530) makes it.. 365 5 49 6
Kepler (about 1627) 365 5 48 57 $\frac{1}{4}$

These quantities are determined by observations distant from one another about 1500 or 1600 years: and the differences between them and the year of La Caille, is about the fourth part of the error of the Indians

If we suppose that the length of the year found in the Hindu tables was actually determined by observation at the beginning of the Cali-yug, the error, which has been stated at 1' 46", may be reduced to 1' 5". The reason of this is that the year has been decreasing in duration, for all the intervening time. and the quantity, computed by theory, which must be added to the length of the year as observed in the present age, to have its length forty-nine centuries ago, is 40 $\frac{1}{4}$ ". Arguments of this kind carry but little force with them For the time when the observations from which the length of the Indian year was deduced is totally unknown: and it seems highly probable, that the beginning of the Cali-yug is not an epoch settled by observation Besides, the error of observation (which cannot be reduced under 1' 5") must be allowed to be, in this instance, nearly double of the correction applied: and there is nothing to prove that it may not amount to much more.

It is to be remarked that the Indian tables contain the sidereal motion of the sun, and not his motion in respect of the moveable equinox as our tables do. If

BOOK II we draw our comparison from the length of the sidereal, instead of the tropical year, the result will not be so favourable to the accuracy of the Hindu astronomy. **Appendix** The sidereal revolution of the sun, according to the Indians, is $365^d\ 6^h\ 12^m\ 30^s$ according to modern observation it is $365^d\ 6^h\ 9^m\ 11^s$ and the error is $3^m\ 19^s$ nearly double the former error. The difference of those errors arises from the quantity which they assign to the precession of the equinoxes which is $54''$ instead of $50''$.

7 Of all the arguments in support of the antiquity of the Hindu astronomy, the strongest and most direct is that which is derived from an ancient zodiac brought from India by M le Gentil. This argument therefore deserves to be particularly considered.

It must be observed, that the force of an argument such as this, which turns on the magnitude of an astronomical quantity that accumulates slowly and is perceptible only after a long lapse of time will entirely depend on the authenticity of the observations or facts, from which the argument is drawn and on the precision and accuracy with which they are recorded. Any thing uncertain or arbitrary or hypothetical respecting these fundamental points, will greatly weaken the strength of the argument. We are told by Mr Playfair that the star Aldebaran has the longitude of $3^h\ 20^m$ in the zodiac of M le Gentil and it is on the authenticity and precision of this fact, that the validity of his reasoning hinges. Now if we turn to the passage of the Astronomie Indienne which is cited by Mr Playfair it will appear that this position of Aldebaran is rather a conjecture or hypothesis of M Bailly than an authentic observation recorded with precision.

The Indian zodiac moves westward at the same rate as the fixed stars, and it is divided into twenty

seven constellations, each of $13^{\circ} 20'$. The vernal BOOK II. equinox was 54° to the east of the beginning of the zodiac at the commencement of the Cali-yúg. and it was therefore in the fifth constellation, being $40'$ more advanced than the fourth. The Indians mark the fourth constellation, which they call Rhonini, by five stars, of which the most easterly, or the most advanced in the zodiac, is the very brilliant star Aldebaran. These things being premised, M. Bailly thus proceeds. "Il est naturel que cette belle étoile ait marqué la fin ou le commencement d'une constellation. Je suppose qu'elle marque en effet la fin de Rhonini, la quatrième des constellations Indiennes, et le commencement de la cinquième, il résulte de cette supposition que l'étoile Aldebaran étoit placée dans le zodiaque Indien à $1^{\circ} 23' 20'$ de l'origin du zodiaque." It appears then that the whole of the argument, which is stated so strongly by Mr. Playfair, and by the critic in the Edinburgh Review, rests on the conjecture of M. Bailly, that Aldebaran was exactly placed at the end of the fourth, and the beginning of the fifth constellation in the Indian zodiac. For this, no sort of proof is offered, except the conspicuousness of the star, which is certainly one of the most brilliant in the heavens. Are we to suppose, for the sake of this argument, that the position of the Indian zodiac was entirely regulated by the star Aldebaran? For it must be admitted that when the beginning of one constellation is fixed, all the rest are thereby determined. Or, are we to suppose, what is still more improbable, that the beginning of the fifth constellation fell, by a lucky chance, exactly in the place of this conspicuous star?

But the Indians themselves afford us the means of correcting the supposition of M. Bailly. Mr. Bently tells us that Bromhu Gupta makes the longitude of

BOOK II the star, Spica Virginis, in the moveable zodiac of the Hindus, $6^{\circ} 3'$ According to De la Caille, the longitude of the same star in 1750, was

Of Aldebaran	$6^{\circ} 20' 21' 18'$
	$2 \quad 6 \quad 17 \quad 47$
Difference	$4 \quad 14 \quad 3 \quad 31$

which subtracted from $6^{\circ} 3'$, leaves $1^{\circ} 18' 56' 29'$ for the longitude of Aldebaran in the Indian zodiac instead of $1^{\circ} 23' 20'$ which it is according to the hypothesis of M Baily. The error amounts to $4^{\circ} 23' 31'$ a quantity which is nowise inconsistent with the configuration of the constellation Rhoenini, while it is sufficient to show that the Indians may have fixed the origin of their zodiac at the beginning of the Cali yug by calculating back from a modern epoch.

And indeed the Brahmins point out a modern epoch a noted one in their astronomy, which is connected with the era of the Cali yug by their precession, in the same manner that the modern epoch 1491 is connected with it by the mean motions. Mr Bently tells us that according to Varaha, the year 3601 of the Cali yug (A D 499) began precisely at the vernal equinox which implies that the origin of the Indian zodiac did then coincide with the equinoctial point. Now if we deduct $1^{\circ} 21'$ the Indian precession for 3600 years from 12° , we shall have $10^{\circ} 6'$ for the origin of the zodiac reckoned eastward from the vernal equinox according to the practice of our astronomy precisely as it comes out by the Indian tables.

The epoch 3601 of the Cali yug is involved in all the Indian tables inasmuch that M Baily was led to discover it by calculation. And in fact, there is no authority for fixing the origin of the Indian zodiac in

10° 6° at the era of the Cali-yug, except by reckoning back from this epoch, according to the Hindu rule for the precession.

Appendix.

It appears then that the argument drawn from the zodiac of M. le Gentil, when closely considered, not only affords no evidence for the antiquity of the Indian astronomy, but rather favours the opinion that the beginning of the Cali-yug is a fictitious epoch fixed by calculation. For it has been shown that the place of the origin of the Indian zodiac, at the era of the Cali-yug, is connected by the precession contained in the Hindu tables with the epoch 3601 of that age: and indeed all the epochs of the Brahmins, ancient as well as modern, are connected with the same fundamental epoch, in what regards the precession. The pretended position of the star Alderbaran is merely a conjecture of M. Bailly. And it is at variance with the place which Bromha Gupta, and other Indian astronomers, assign to the star "Spica Virginis."

8. In the preceding observations, all the arguments that have been adduced in favour of the antiquity of the Indian astronomy, as far as the question is purely astronomical, have been considered, excepting those drawn from the places of the sun and moon, at the beginning of the Cali-yug, (at midnight between the 17th and 18th of February, of the year 3102 A. C.) With regard to the first of these, there is a difficulty which weighed so much with Mr. Playfair, as to induce him to set aside the argument entirely, and to lay no stress upon it. It is remarkable, that the critic in the Edinburgh Review has brought forward this argument, without noticing the difficulty which, in Mr. Playfair's opinion, rendered it inconclusive. After what has been urged to invalidate the opinion of M. Bailly, that the ancient epoch of the Indian tables was settled by observation, we shall be spared

BOOK II. the task of examining the remaining argument drawn from the place of the moon allowing to this argument all the force which the most sanguine supporters of the antiquity can demand, it can have but little weight in opposition to the many strong and concurring indications of a contrary nature.¹

10 If the author of the "Astronomie Indienne" has succeeded in establishing any of his positions, it is in proving that the astronomy of the Brahmens is original, or at least that it has not been borrowed from any of the astronomical systems that we are acquainted with. This was a preliminary point which his favourite system required him to examine for if the astronomy of the Brahmens had turned out to have an obvious affinity to the astronomical systems of Arabia or Greece, it would have been in vain to bring proofs of its antiquity. But how does this prove the antiquity of the Indian astronomy? It only proves that the inhabitants of the eastern world, separated from the rest of mankind, have made the same progress to a certain extent which in the western world, has been carried to a greater pitch of perfection.

¹ Laplace has remarked, that the mean motions of the lunar orbit are quicker in the Indian tables, than in those of Ptolemy; which indicates that the former tables were constructed posterior to those of the Greek astronomers. This argument is at least as strong as any of those by which the antiquity is supported.

APPENDIX. N° II.

Colebrooke on Sanscrit-Algebra.

SINCE the pages relating to the science of the BOOK II. Hindus were sent to the press, has appeared a work ^{Appendix.} entitled, "Algebra, with Arithmetic and Mensuration, from the Sanscrit of Brahmegupta and Bhascara; translated by Henry Thomas Colebrooke, Esq" No person who takes an interest in the history of the human mind, can fail to recognize that Mr. Colebrooke has added largely to the former obligations he had conferred upon us, not only by laying open to European readers the most approved production on Algebra, in the Sanscrit language, but by the research and ability with which, in a preliminary dissertation, he has brought together the materials for forming an opinion, both respecting the origin of that science among the Hindus, and their merit in the prosecution of it

On mathematics I must speak superficially, because my knowledge does not permit me to speak profoundly. Enough, I think, however, appears on the face of this subject, to enable me to resolve the only question, in the solution of which I am interested.

Mr Colebrooke thinks it possible, nay probable, that the Hindus derived their first knowledge of algebra from the Greeks; that they were made acquainted with the writings of Diophantus, before they had of their own accord made any attempts in the science, and that it is in the accessions which Algebra received in their hands, that their title, if any, to our respect, must, in this particular, look

BOOK II for its foundation¹ That the Hindus cultivated astronomy, and those branches of the art of calculation Appendix. subservient to astronomy solely for the purposes of astrology, is not disputed by any body and least of all by Mr Colebrooke. That candid and careful inquirer has brought to light a very important fact, that even on the subject of astrology on which they might have been supposed original the Hindus have been borrowers, and borrowers from the Greeks² "Join

"If it be admitted that a hint or suggestion the seed of their knowledge may have reached the Hindu mathematicians immediately from the Greeks of Alexandria, or mediately through those of Bactria it must at the same time be confessed that a slender germ grew and fructified rapidly and soon attained an approved state of maturity in Indian soil. More will not be here contended for. Since it is not impossible that the hint of the one analysis may have been actually received by the mathematicians of the other nation, nor unlikely, considering the arguments which may be brought for a probable communication on the subject of astrology" (Dissertation p. xxii). This is an important admission which Mr Colebrooke was too well informed to overlook and too honest to conceal. His part however lead him to a very useless effort of extenuation. Why call the knowledge which the Hindus derived of the Diophantine methods *a hint?* What should confine it to a *hint*? Why make use of the word *hint* when it is perfectly clear that if they had the means of receiving a hint they had the means of receiving the whole. The communication was full and complete between the Hindus and the Greeks both of Bactria and of Egypt; and the Hindus had the means of receiving from the Greeks all those parts of their knowledge which the state of civilization among the Hindus enabled them to take up. Of the exactness however of Mr Colebrooke on the other side about the growing and fructifying of the germ and its attaining a state of approved maturity in India we shall speak by and by.

He had stated long ago "That a astronomy was originally cultivated among the Hindus and left the purpore far off." That branch if not the whole of them is logic I science was borrowed from the Arabs. And that their astronomical knowledge more by consequence has been a useful in the course of time (A.D. II. is 376.) And on the present occasion I will say that the Hindus have borrowed and largely so from the Greeks. I am not however I grounded as the writer himself says on a thin branch of discussion on the one hand of course in English both. The mode of division as laid down are implemented by me in

ing," he says, "this indication, to that of the division of BOOK II. the zodiac into twelve signs, represented by the same figures of animals, and named by words of the same import, with the zodiacal signs of the Greeks, and taking into consideration the analogy, though not identity, of the Ptolemaic system, and the Indian one of excentric deferents and epicycles, no doubt can be entertained that the Hindus received hints from the astronomical schools of the Greeks" ¹

To draw, then, from the tracts which Mr. Colebrooke has translated, an inference to any high state of civilization among the Hindus, the three following propositions must, first, be established,

1. That the Greeks did not teach to the Hindus as much of the science as the works in question contain.

2. That the works are sufficiently old to render it impossible that the knowledge could have been borrowed from any modern source

3. That the accessions made to the knowledge derived from the Greeks are so difficult as could not have been made except by a people in a high state of civilization.

If all these propositions are not fully and entirely made out, if any weakness appears in the evidence of any one of them, the inference falls to the ground

its Arabian origin Astrological prediction, by configuration of planets, in like manner, indicates even by its Indian name a Grecian source It is denominated *Hórá*, the second of three branches which compose a complete course of astronomy and astrology and the word occurs in this sense in the writings of early Hindu astrologers The same term *hórá* occurs again in the writings of the Hindu astrologers, with an acceptation—that of hour—which more exactly conforms to the Grecian etymon The resemblance of a single term would not suffice to ground an inference of common origin, since it might be purely accidental But other words are also remarked in Hindu astrology" &c (Algebra, &c from the Sanscrit, Dissert Notes and Illust p lxxx)

¹ Ibid p xxiv

BOOK II Upon inquiry, it seems to come out, that for not one of them is the evidence sufficient, or trustworthy

Appendix

1 That the Hindus received from the Greeks all that the latter knew is admitted by Mr Colebrooke. It is also admitted by Mr Colebrooke, that "Diophantus was acquainted with the direct resolution of affected quadratic equations, and of indeterminate problems of the first degree that he displays infinite sagacity and ingenuity in particular solutions and that a certain routine is discernible in them"¹ It is unfortunately from Diophantus alone that we derive any knowledge of the attainments of the Greeks in this branch of mathematics. It is no less unfortunate, that out of thirteen books which he wrote upon this subject, only six or possibly seven have been preserved. How does Mr Colebrooke know, that these other books of Diophantus did not ascend to more difficult points of the science?² He says you have no right to infer that. True but neither has he any right to infer the contrary. There is, however another possibility and a still more important one which Mr Colebrooke has altogether overlooked. Supposing that nothing more of Algebra was known to the

¹ Algebra &c. from the Sanscrit. Dinet. Notes and Illustr. pp x and xvi.

Dr Hutton says that Diophantus knew the composition of the cube of a binomial. In some parts of book vi. it appears that he was acquainted with the composition of the fourth power of the binomial root, as he sets down all the terms of it; and from his great skill in such matters, it seems probable that he was acquainted with the composition of other higher powers and with other parts of Algebra besides what are here treated of. Upon the whole the work is treated in a very able and masterly manner manifesting the unusual address and knowledge in the solutions and forms, a proof also that the author was deeply skilled in the science of Algebra to some of the most intricate parts of which these questions or exercises relate. However as he contains his assumptions and not their, so as to reduce all his conclusions to a simple equation, or at least a quadratic, it does not appear what his knowledge was, in the resolution of compound or affected quadratic equations. Mathematical Dictionary Art. Diophantus.

Greeks, at the time of Diophantus, than is found in BOOK II., seven out of thirteen books of one author, which is a pretty handsome allowance; is it certain, or is it probable, that when the Greeks had made so considerable a progress, they remained stationary? and though the most ingenious and inventive people in the world, peculiarly at that time turned to mathematical and abstuse investigations, they made no addition, through several generations, to what was taught them by Diophantus? This argument appears to be conclusive.

2. Mr. Colebrooke has a very elaborate, complex, and in some parts obscure train of argument to prove the antiquity of certain points of Algebraic knowledge among the Hindus. That it is not conclusive may be made to appear very certainly; it is only to be regretted that so many words are required.

The point is, to prove the antiquity of certain treatises which Mr. Colebrooke possesses; part under the name of Bhascara, one mathematician, part under that of Brahmegupta, another. He begins with Bhascara.

There are two treatises of astronomy, which bear the name of Bhascara, and which themselves affirm, that they were written at a particular time, corresponding to the middle of the twelfth century of the Christian era. Therefore the Treatise on Algebra, possessed by Mr Colebrooke, was produced about the middle of the twelfth century. For this degree of antiquity, this is the whole of the evidence. Let us see what it is worth.

In the first place, the dates refer only to the astronomical treatises, not to the Algebraic. The algebraic is indeed prefixed to the astronomic, but it is alleged by one of the commentators, and believed by Mr Colebrooke, that it "may have been added sub-

Appendix.

BOOK II sequently" And then at what date subsequently, or
CHAP. 10 by what hand, are questions to which we shall pre-
sently see that there is no answer

In the next place, an important observation applies to the affirmations, with respect to their own age found in the treatises of astronomy. From the known the extravagant disposition of the Hindus to falsify with regard to dates, and make almost every thing with respect to their own transactions and attainments more ancient than it is, such assertions, found in books or transcripts of books, are no proof and only deserve a moment's regard when fully corroborated by other circumstances. Not one circumstance is adduced to corroborate them by Mr Colebrooke.

We come down, all at once, from the date of the work, to the date of the commentaries upon it. For none of them does Mr Colebrooke claim a degree of antiquity beyond that of 200 or 300 years. Supposing this date to be correct, what reason has Mr Colebrooke to infer that the work on which they comment was, at the time of that commentary 400 years old? None, whatsoever. In nine instances out of ten the commentator would be sure to speak of it as old, whether it was so or not. But further what reason have we to believe that the date which he ascribes to these commentaries is the real one? Again the answer is None none that will bear examination. The date of the oldest is assumed upon the strength of an astronomical example, describing a particular state of the heavens. But this may be perfectly accidental and besides the Hindus have the power of calculating backwards. Of the next two the date is assumed upon the strength of their own assertion. This we have shown is of no value. Of the next two the date is assumed upon the evi-

tion of other books : This, if possible, is of less value. BOOK II
 There are three others to which no date is assigned : ————— Appendix
 And there are two commentaries upon the astronomical treatises, the date of which too rests upon their own assertion.

Neither to the treatise, therefore, in the hands of Mr Colebrooke, nor to the Commentaries upon it, has any thing appeared in what we have yet mentioned, which enables us to assign, with any degree of certainty, any one date in preference to any other. We may, if we please, assume that all of them in a body are less than a century old

Beside the Sanscrit commentaries, there is a Persian translation, of each of the two treatises of Bhascara. In general, what is testified by Persian is far more trustworthy, than what rests upon Sanscrit authority, because there was more publicity in the Persian writings, whereas the Sanscrit being wholly secret, and confined to a small number of Brahmens, accustomed and prone to forgery, there is security for nothing which they had any interest, real or imaginary, to change. If there was any evidence, therefore, to fix the dates of the Persian translations, we could not reasonably dispute a degree of antiquity corresponding to them I suspect that there is no evidence to fix the dates of these translations. Mr. Colebrooke says, the one was made by order of the emperor Acber, the other in the reign of Shah Jehan. But he subjoins no reason for this affirmation. The cause probably is, that he had none ; and that he took the conjecture from some date written somewhere in the book, nobody knows at what time, nobody knows by whom.

Such is the whole of the evidence which is adduced by Mr Colebrooke to prove the antiquity of Bhascara. "The age of his predecessors," he adds, "can-

BOOK II not be determined with equal precision " that is to say, the evidence which can be adduced for the antiquity of the other treatise, that of Brahmagupta is still less conclusive and satisfactory As we have seen that the better evidence proves nothing I shall spare the reader a criticism to show, what he will easily infer that the worse evidence proves as little evidence which, as it is tedious and intricate, it would require a criticism of some length to unfold

3 We come to the third of the propositions that if the Hindus had discovered as much as they know of algebra beyond what appears in the fragment of Diophantus, they must have been placed in a high state of civilization. That this proposition cannot be maintained, I expect to find universally acknowledged I transcribe the passage from Mr Colebrooke in which he sums up the claims and pretensions of the Hindus "They possessed well the arithmetic of surd roots they were aware of the infinite quotient resulting from the division of finite quantity by cipher they knew the general resolution of equations of the second degree, and had touched upon those of higher denomination, resolving them in the simplest cases and in those in which the solution happens to be practicable by the method which serves for quadratics they had attained a *general solution* of indeterminate problems of the first degree they had arrived at a method for deriving a multitude of solutions of answers to problems of the second degree from a single answer found tentatively "¹

In all this it appear that the only point in which there can be a pretence for their having gone beyond what we have in the fragment of Diophantus is the *general solution* of indeterminate problems of the first

¹ Alter n; See volume II. p. 152

degree But, to quote Dr Hutton once more, "Dio- BOOK II phantus was the first writer on indeterminate problems. His book is wholly on this subject, whence it has happened that such kind of questions have been called by the name of Diophantine problems." Now, take the point at which the solution of indeterminate problems appears in the fragment of Diophantus, and the point at which it appears in the Sanscrit treatise, of whatever age, in the hands of Mr Colebrooke, the interval between the two points is so very small, and the step is so easily made, that most assuredly far more difficult steps in the progress of mathematical science have been made in ages of which the civilization has been as low as that of the Hindus Thales lived at a period when Greece was still uncultivated, and but just emerging from barbarism; yet he excelled the Egyptians in mathematical knowledge, and astonished them by computing the height of the pyramids from the shadow. Pythagoras lived in the same age; and was a great inventor both in arithmetic and geometry. In astronomy he made great discoveries, and maintained, we are told, the true system of the universe, that the sun is in the centre, and makes all the planets revolve about him. Regiomontanus was born in 1456, when the human mind was still to a great degree immersed in the darkness of the middle ages. Yet of him, Mr. Playfair says, "Trigonometry, which had never been known to the Greeks as a separate science, and which took that form in Arabia, advanced, in the hands of Regiomontanus, to a great degree of perfection; and approached very near to the condition which it has attained at the present day He also introduced the use of decimal fractions into arithmetic, and thereby gave to that scale its full extent, and to numerical computation the utmost de-

BOOK II. gree of simplicity and enlargement, which it seems Appendix. capable of obtaining¹ Cardon was born in 1501, when assuredly much had not yet been gained of what deserves the name of civilization "Before his time," says the same accomplished mathematician, "little advance had been made in the solution of any equations higher than the second degree In 1545 was published the rule which still bears the name of Cardan and which at this day, marks a point in the progress of algebraic investigation, which all the efforts of succeeding analysis have hardly been able to go beyond."² Even Vieta, with all his discoveries appeared at an early and ill instructed age

In looking at the pursuits of any nation with a view to draw from them indications of the state of civilization no mark is so important, as the nature of the *End* to which they are directed

Exactly in proportion as *Utility* is the object of every pursuit, may we regard a nation as civilized. Exactly in proportion as its ingenuity is wasted on contemptible or mischievous objects, though it may be, in itself, of no ordinary kind the nation may safely be denominated barbarous

According to this rule the astronomical and mathematical sciences afford conclusive evidence against the Hindus They have been cultivated exclusively for the purposes of astrology one of the most irrational of all imaginable pursuits one of those which most infallibly denote a nation barbarous and one of those which it is the most sure to renounce in proportion as knowledge and civilization are obtained

¹ Cappl. Encycl. Brit. Dux. Second, p. 4

² Ib. p. 11

CHAP. X.

General Reflections.

To ascertain the true state of the Hindus in the BOOK II scale of civilization, is not only an object of curiosity in the history of human nature ; but to the people of Great Britain, charged as they are with the government of that great portion of the human species, it is an object of the highest practical importance. No scheme of government can happily conduce to the ends of government, unless it is adapted to the state of the people for whose use it is intended In those diversities in the state of civilization, which approach the extremes, this truth is universally acknowledged. Should any one propose, for a band of roving Tartars, the regulations adapted to the happiness of a regular and polished society, he would meet with neglect or derision The inconveniences are only more concealed and more or less diminished, when the error relates to states of society which more nearly resemble one another If the mistake in regard to Hindu society, committed by the British nation, and the British government, be very great, if they have conceived the Hindus to be a people of high civilization, while they have in reality made but a few of the earliest steps in the progress to civilization, it is impossible that in many of the measures pursued for the government of that people, the mark aimed at should not have been wrong.

The preceding induction of particulars, embracing

BOOK II the religion, the laws the government, the manners,
CHAP. 10 the arts, the sciences, and literature, of the Hindus, affords, it is presumed, the materials from which a correct judgement may, at last, be formed of their progress toward the high attainments of civilized life. That induction, and the comparisons to which it led, have occupied us long, but not longer it is hoped, than the importance of the subject demanded, and the obstinacy of the mistakes which it was the object of it to remove

The reports of a high state of civilization in the East were common even among the civilized nations of ancient Europe. But the acquaintance of the Greeks and Romans with any of the nations of Asia, except the Persians alone, was so imperfect, and among the circumstances which they state so many are incredible and ridiculous, that in the information we receive from them on this subject, no confidence can be reposed.

Of the modern Europeans, the individuals who first obtained a tolerable acquaintance with any of the nations of the East were the popish missionaries, chiefly the Jesuits who selected Cluna for the scene of their apostolical labours. Visiting a people who already composed a vast society, and exhibited many though fallacious, marks of riches while Europe as yet was every where poor and feeble as it was natural for them to feel that the more they could excite among their countrymen an admiration of the people whom they described the greater would be the portion of that flattering sentiment which would redound upon themselves, these missionaries were eager to coax, and still more eager to propagate the most hyperbolical ideas of the arts, the sciences and institutions of the Chinese. As it is almost always more pleasing and certainly far more easy, to believe, than

to scrutinize; and as the human mind in Europe, at the time when these accounts were first presented,<sup>BOOK II.
CHAP 10.</sup> was much less powerful, and penetrating, than it is at present, they were received with almost implicit credulity. The influence of this first impression lasted so long, that even to Voltaire, a keen-eyed and sceptical judge, the Chinese, of almost all nations, are the objects of the loudest and most unqualified praise.¹ The state of belief in Europe has, through the scrutiny of facts, been of late approximating to sobriety on the attainments of the Chinese, and a short period longer will probably reduce it to the scale of reason and fact.²

It was under circumstances highly similar, that the earliest of the modern travellers drew up and presented their accounts of Hindustan. The empire of the Moguls was in its meridian splendour. It extended over the principal part of India; and the court, the army, and the establishments of Akber or Aurungzebe, exhibited that gorgeous exterior, that air of grandeur and power, which were well calculated to impose upon the imagination of an unphilosophical observer.³

¹ "Any thing proposed to us which causes surprise and admiration, gives such a satisfaction to the mind, that it indulges itself in those agreeable emotions, and will never be persuaded that its pleasure is entirely without foundation" (Hume, Treatise of Human Nature, 1 53.)

² To this good effect, if to no other, the embassy of Lord Macartney, and the writings to which it has given occasion, have largely contributed. See Barrow's two works, Travels in China, and Life of Lord Macartney, and above all, that important document, a volume of the Laws of China, translated by Sir George Staunton. No one has more approximated to a correct judgment of the Chinese, than De Guignes. See Voyage

³ Many of the observations of Mr Barrow upon the panegyrical accounts of the Chinese by the popish missionaries are very applicable to the flattering accounts which travellers have been so fond of giving us of the Hindus - "In the same breath that they extol the wonderful strength of filial piety, they speak of the common practice of exposing

BOOK II It was unfortunate that a mind so pure, so warm
CHAP. 10 in the pursuit of truth, and so devoted to oriental learning, as that of Sir William Jones, should have adopted the hypothesis of a high state of civilization in the principal countries of Asia. Thus he supported with all the advantages of an imposing manner, and a brilliant reputation and gained for it so great a credit, that for a time it would have been very difficult to obtain a hearing against it.

Beside the illusions with which the fancy magnifies the importance of a favourite pursuit, Sir William was actuated by the virtuous design of exalting the Hindus in the eyes of their European masters and thence ameliorating the temper of the government while his mind had scope for error in the vague and indeterminate notions which it still retained of the signs of social improvement. The term civilization was by him, as by most men attached to no fixed and definite assemblage of ideas. With the exception of some of the lowest states of society in which human beings have been found it was applied to nations in all the stages of social advancement¹.

It is not easy to describe the characteristics of the different stages of social progress. It is not from one feature, or from two, that a just conclusion can be

infants; the strict morality and ceremonious conduct of the people are followed by a lot of the most gross debauchery. The virtues and the philosophy of the learned are explained by their ignorance and their vices: if in one page they speak of the executive ability of the country and the amazing extension of agriculture in the next thousands are seen perishing with want, and whilst they extol with admiration the progress they have made in the arts and sciences, they plainly inform us that without the aid of fore-guess they can neither cast a cannon nor calculate an eclipse." Burton's *Treatise on China*, p. 21.

¹ One of the chief circumstances from which Sir William Jones drew conclusions respecting the high civilization of the Hindus was the supposition that they never went abroad; a supposition which is now well known to have been erroneous. See *Austl. Rev.* vi 531 and L 71.

drawn. In these it sometimes happens that nations resemble which are placed at stages considerably remote. It is from a joint view of all the great circumstances taken together, that their progress can be ascertained, and it is from an accurate comparison, grounded on these general views, that a scale of civilization can be formed, on which the relative position of nations may be accurately marked.

Notwithstanding all that modern philosophy had performed for the elucidation of history, very little had been attempted in this great department, at the time when the notions of Sir William Jones were formed,¹ and so crude were his ideas on the subject, that the rhapsodies of Rousseau on the virtue and happiness of the savage life surpass not the panegyrics

¹ The writings of Mr Miller of Glasgow, of which but a small part was then published, and into which it is probable Sir William had never looked, contained the earliest elucidations of the subject. The suggestions offered in his successive productions, though highly important, were but detached considerations applied to particular facts, and not a comprehensive induction, leading to general conclusions. Unfortunately the subject, great as is its importance, has not been resumed. The writings of Mr Miller remain almost the only source from which even the slightest information on the subject can be drawn. One of the ends which has at least been in view during the scrutiny conducted in these pages, has been to contribute something to the progress of so important an investigation. It is hoped that the materials which are here collected will be regarded as going far to elucidate the state of society in all the leading nations of Asia. Not only the Hindus, the Persians, the Arabians, the Turks, and Chinese of the present day, but the Hindus, Arabians, and Persians of ancient days, the Chaldeans, the Jews, and even the ancient Egyptians, may all be regarded as involved in the inquiry, and to these, with the sole exception of the wandering Tartars and the hyperborean hordes, may be added the second-rate nations, the inhabitants of the eastern peninsula, and of the plains and mountains of Tibet. It is surprising, upon a close inspection, how extensively all these various nations, notwithstanding the dissimilarity in some of the more obvious appearances, resemble one another, in laws and institutions of government, in modes of thinking, in superstition and prejudices, in arts and literature, even in the external forms of manner and behaviour and as well in ancient, as in modern times.

BOOK II of Sir William on the wild, comfortless, predatory, and ferocious state of the wandering Arabs. "Except," says he "when their tribes are engaged in war, they spend their days in watching their flocks and camels, or in repeating their native songs, which they pour out almost extempore, professing a contempt for the stately pillars and solemn buildings of the cities compared with the natural charms of the country and the coolness of their tents thus they pass their lives in the highest pleasure of which they have any conception in the contemplation of the most delightful objects, and in the enjoyment of perpetual spring"¹ If courtesy," he observes "and urbanity a love of poetry and eloquence, and the practice of exalted virtues be a just measure of perfect society, we have certain proof that the people of Arabia both on plains and in cities in republican and monarchical states, were eminently civilized for many ages before their conquest of Persia."² We need not wonder if the man who wrote and delivered this sound the Hindus arrived at the highest civilization Yet the very same author, in the very same discourse and speaking of the same people declared "I find no trace among them till their emigration of any philosophy but ethics"³ and even of this he says, "The distinguishing virtues which they boasted of included eating were a contempt of riches and even of death but in the age of the seven poets their liberality had deviated into mad profusion, their courage into ferocity and their patience into an obstinate spirit of encountering fruitless dangers."⁴ He adds "The only arts in which they pretended to excellence (I except

¹ I say on the Poetry of Eastern Nations. Volume retained on reading Rousseau panegyrics "J'aurai bientôt tout à faire de marquer à quatre pages"

horsemanship and military accomplishments) were poetry and rhetoric."¹ It can hardly be affirmed that these facts are less than wonderful as regarding a people "eminently civilized," a people exhibiting "a just measure of perfect society."²

¹ Sir W Jones, *Asiat Res* ii p 14—"On this occasion, as well as on many others, the sober historian is forcibly wakened from a pleasing vision, and is compelled, with some reluctance, to confess, that the pastoral manners, which have been adorned with the fairest attributes of peace and innocence, are much better adapted to the fierce and cruel habits of a military life" Gibbon, *Decline and Fall*, ch xxvi p 342

² In the same discourse Sir William further remarks, "That we have none of their compositions in prose before the Koran, may be ascribed, perhaps, to the little skill which they seem to have had in writing, to their predilection in favour of poetical measure, and the facility with which verses are committed to memory, but all their stories prove, that they were eloquent in a high degree, and possessed wonderful powers of speaking without preparation, in flowing and forcible periods" (*Asiat. Res* ii p 14) "Who," says Dr Ferguson, "would from mere conjecture suppose, that the naked savage would be a coxcomb and a gamester, that he would be proud and vain, without the distinctions of title and fortune, and that his principal care would be to adorn his person, and to find an amusement? Even if it could be supposed that he would thus share in our vices, and in the midst of his forest vie with the foppes which are practised in the town, yet no one would be so bold as to affirm that he would likewise in any instance excel us in talents and virtue, that he would have a penetration, a force of imagination and elocution, an ardour of mind, an affection and courage, which the arts, the discipline, and the policy of few nations would be able to improve. Yet these particulars are a part in the description which is delivered by those who have had opportunities of seeing mankind in their rudest condition and beyond the reach of such testimony, we can neither safely take, nor pretend to give information on the subject" Ferguson's *Essay on the History of Civil Society*, part ii sect 1

The extreme inaccuracy and fluctuation of the ideas of European scholars with respect to civilization, are curiously exemplified in their opinions of the Asiatic nations. Gibbon says, "The cavalry of Seythia was forced to yield to the admirable swiftness and spirit of the Arabian horses, their riders were skilled in the evolutions of irregular war, and the northern barbarians were astonished and dismayed by the inhuman ferocity of the barbarians of the south. A Gothic soldier was slain by the dagger of an Arab, and the hury, naked savage, applying his lips to the wound, expressed a horrid delight while he sucked the blood of his vanquished enemy" Gibbon, *Hist of the Decl and Fall, &c* iv 413 Of the various nations subject to the Persian sceptre, many of

BOOK II **CHAP. 10.** Among the causes which excited to the tone of eulogy adopted with regard to the Hindus, one undoubtedly was, the affectation of candour. Of rude and uncultivated nations, and also of rude and uncultivated individuals, it is a characteristic to admire only the system of manners, of ideas and of institutions to which they have been accustomed, despising others. The most cultivated nations of Europe had but recently discovered the weakness of this propensity. Novelty rendered exemption from it a source of distinction. To prove his superiority to the prejudices of home, by admiring and applauding the manners and institutions of Asia, became, therefore, in the

them still higher in civilization than the most civilized portion of the Arabians, the same author thus expresses himself. It was here," says he, "in a place where the opposite banks cannot exceed 500 paces, that Xerxes imposed a stupendous bridge of boats for the purpose of transporting into Europe 170 myriads of barbarians." Ibid. i. 9. Of the Syrians and Egyptians, who still more nearly than the Arabians resembled the Hindus, and were acquainted with more of the arts which attain their perfection in civilized life, he says, "The use of their ancient dialects by excluding them from the commerce of mankind checked the improvements of these barbarians." Ibid. i. 62. (N. B. The same cause operated among the Hindus, and still more powerfully to the production of the same effects.) Mr. Halhed says that the Jews at the time of the Mosaic institutions, "were very little removed from a state of barbarism, gross in their conceptions, illiterate in their education, and uncultivated in their manners." Preface to Code of Criminal Laws, p. xxii. And yet these institutions are not only superior to the institutions of the Hindus; they are in a high degree superior to the institutions of any other nation in Asia. But with the circumstances of Jewish society we become through the medium of our religion early and familiarly acquainted. No European is early; hardly any is even familiarly acquainted with the other nations of Asia. No blind propensity therefore excites admiration in the one case; several do so in the other. Among the authors who have followed Sir William Jones in his track of eulogy and admiration, it may be suspected, from the limited information of some, that they were unacquainted with the facts of men and life, and wherever man exhibited the attributes of humanity believed he must therefore be a civilized ignorant of the intense exercise which is given to several of the human faculties even among savages, and of the strength which those faculties must hence acquire.

breast of the traveller, a motive of no inconsiderable power¹

BOOK II.
CHAP. 10.

The nations of Europe became acquainted, nearly about the same period, with the people of America, and the people of Hindustan. Having contemplated in the one, a people without fixed habitations, without political institutions, and with hardly any other arts than those indispensably necessary for the preservation of existence, they hastily concluded, upon the sight of another people, inhabiting great cities, cultivating the soil, connected together by an artificial system of subordination, exhibiting monuments of great antiquity, cultivating a species of literature, exercising arts, and obeying a monarch whose sway was extensive, and his court magnificent, that they had suddenly passed from the one extreme of civilization to the other. The Hindus were compared with the savages of America; the circumstances in which they differed from that barbarous people, were the circumstances in which they corresponded with the most cultivated nations, other circumstances were overlooked, and it seems to have been little suspected that conclusions too favourable could possibly be drawn.²

¹ None of them has confessed the existence of this motive with more frankness than Le Gentil, Voy. ii. 98 “Avant que j'eusse perdu mon clocher de rue, les François étoient mes héros Quant à moi, je suis guéri de mes préjugés, et je m'applaudis en secret de m'être détrompé—Col. Dow boasts of being actuated by the same sentiment, and scruples not to call Goths, or worse than Goths, all those who are not so “In love with our own times and country,” says he, “we are apt to consider distant ages and nations, as objects unworthy of the page of the historian . Some men of genius have entertained sentiments upon that subject, too narrow and confined for the Goths of a much darker age Had the translator of the following history thought so meanly of the affairs of the East,” &c Dow's Hindostan, Preface

² The account which Robertson gives of the causes which led to exaggerated conceptions in the mind of the Spaniards, respecting the civilization of the Mexicans, applies in almost every particular to those of the English and French respecting the Hindus “The Spaniards,”

BOOK II
CHAP. 10

The progress of knowledge, and the force of observation demonstrated the necessity of regarding the actual state of the Hindus as little removed from that of half-civilized nations. The saving hypothesis, however was immediately adopted that the situation in which the Hindus are now believed is a state of degradation that formerly they were in a state of high civilization from which they had fallen through the miseries of foreign conquest and subjugation.

This was a theory invented to preserve as much as actual observation would allow to be preserved, of a pre-established and favourite creed. It was not an inference from what was already known. It was a gratuitous assumption. It preceded inquiry and no inquiry was welcome, but that which yielded matter for its support.¹

To this purpose were adapted the pretensions of

says he "when they first touched on the Mexican coast were so much struck with the appearance of attainments in policy and in the arts of life far superior to those of the rude tribes with which they were hitherto acquainted that they fancied they had at length discovered a civilized people in the New World. This comparison between the people of Mexico and their uncultivated neighbours they appear to have kept constantly in view and observing with admiration many things which marked the pre-eminence of the former they employed in describing their imperfect policy and忘却 in such term as are applicable to the insatiations of men far beyond them in improvement. Both these circumstances concur in detracting from the credit due to the descriptions of Mexican manners by the early Spanish writers. By drawing a parallel between them and those of people so much less civilized they raised their own ideas too high. By the rest of describing them they conveyed ideas to others no less exalted above truth. Later writers have adopted the style of the original historian and improved upon it." Hist. of Amer. ed. by Dr. D'Or.

¹ "Le voyageur raconte il ses a antures cherche dans l'alm ration de ceux qu'il rencontre, un deslouement sur le territ qu'il a coemps; il enfile la narration Le ignorant, q il a est d une beaucoup d peine pour apprendre des langues etrangères et bontuans, et il se fait faire les i f des on noms qu'il est parvenu à entendre" August Duperreux No. 1 Supplement a Recherches de ses Voyages

the Brahmens, who spoke of an antecedent period, BOOK II. when the sovereigns of Hindustan were masters of great power and great magnificence. It was of importance to weigh these pretensions; because the rude writers of rude nations have almost always spoken of antecedent times as deserving all the praise with which their powers of rhetoric or song could exalt them. If the descriptions of antiquity presented by the Brahmens bore the consistent marks of truth and reality, a degree of intrinsic evidence would be attached to them. If these descriptions flew wide of all resemblance to human affairs, and were nothing but wild unnatural fictions, they would be so far from proving an antecedent state of knowledge and civilization, that they would prove the reverse. And, had the Hindus remained fixed from the earliest ages in the semibarbarous state, it is most certain that the Brahmens would have given to us just such accounts of antiquity as those we have actually received at their hands.

As the Hindus have enlightened us by no record of antecedent events, and we thus have no immediate proof of their state of civilization, in the times that are past, the only sure ground of inference is the laws and institutions which they framed, the manners they adopted, and the arts and sciences to which they attended. If these great circumstances were at variance with the existing state of society, but adapted to one more advanced, the inference would certainly be a probable one, that to a period when society was in that improved condition, they really owed their birth. But in regard to the Hindus, their laws and institutions are adapted to the very state of society which those who visit them now behold. They are laws and institutions which, so far from importing any more perfect state of society, seem entirely inconsistent

BOOK II with it such as could neither begin, nor exist,
CHAP 10 under any other than one of the rudest and weakest
 states of the human mind As the manners, the arts
 and sciences, of the ancient Hindus are entirely corres-
 pondent to the state of their laws and institutions,
 every thing we know of the ancient state of Ilodus
 too coospires to prove that it was rude

It is another important fact that if the Ilodus had ever been placed in this pretended state of civiliza-
 zation we know of no such period of calamity as was
 sufficient to reduce them to a state of ignorance and
 barbarity The conquest of Hindustan, effected by
 the Mahomedan nations was to no extraordinary
 degree sanguinary or destructive It substituted
 sovereigns of one race to sovereigns of another and
 mixed with the old inhabitants a small proportion of
 new but it altered not the texture of society it
 altered not the language of the country , the original
 inhabitants remained the occupants of the soil they
 continued to be governed by their own laws and in-
 stitutions nay, the whole detail of administration
 with the exception of the army and a few of the
 more prominent situations remained invariably in
 the hands of the native magistrates and officers
 The few occasions of persecution to which under
 the reigns of one or two bigoted sovereigns they were
 subjected on the score of religion were too short and
 too partial to produce any considerable effect. *

* The administration of Justice has been almost universally by the Mogul conquerors of India derived upon the Ilodas the office of Durbar being generally conferred upon one of th 1 people " State on the Government and People of India p. 443 " Mihir is th Mogul Tartar under Tamerl ne and his successors have al so rendered themselves lords of almost the whole of it (India); yet the only mil inhabitants ha e lost very little of their original character by the establishement of these usurpers upon them" Ora 111 of Milt Transact in India i 2

* It seems to have been a rash and foolis h conclusion of the con-

When we look for the particulars of those pre-BOOK II.
tended reigns of mighty kings, the universal lords of CHAP 10
India, under whom science flourished, and civilization
rose to the greatest height, we meet with nothing but
fable, more wild, and inconsistent, and hyperbolical,
than is any where else to be found. From this no
rational conclusion can be drawn, except that it is
the production of a rude and irrational age. Bharat,
or Bharata, is said to have been the first universal
sovereign of India, which from him derived its name;
India, in the language of the natives, is Bharata
Versh. In this, however, as usual, the Hindu ac-
counts contradict themselves, since Bharat is repre-

quest of Hindustan by the Moguls to the overwhelming of the Roman
empire by the northern nations, that alone could have suggested so
gratuitous a supposition as that of the degradation of the Hindus from
an improved to a barbarous state of society by the calamities of conquest
The two cases are totally dissimilar By the successive inundations of
the barbarians, the ancient inhabitants of the Roman provinces were
well nigh swept from the face of the earth Every where they were
stript of the possession of the land, and commonly reduced to the state
of bondsmen and slaves The ancient institutions entirely gave way,
and were replaced by a set of institutions altogether new, The language
of the conquerors in most places entirely supplanted, in all it so much
altered, the language of the people subdued or exterminated, as to
impose upon it a different structure Another circumstance is never to
be forgotten. To such a degree of barbarity were the inhabitants of the
Roman provinces degraded, by the long continued effects of a detestable
government, that the invaders had really not much to accomplish to re-
duce them to the same level with themselves This was abundantly
seen in the state of the Greeks of the eastern empire , who, upon their
very first subjugation to the Turks, exhibited a condition not greatly
different from that in which they grovel at the present day The
conquest to which, with greatest propriety, that of the Hindus by one
tribe of Tartars might be compared, would be the conquest of the
Chinese by a similar tribe of Tartars There is no reason to think that
the one was a conquest of a more destructive nature than the other If
the Moguls did not adopt the religion and institutions of the Hindus,
it was because the religion and institutions of the Hindus admitted of
no participation, and because the Moguls had already embraced a more
enlightened faith See Francis's Minute, p 30 also the treatise of
Mr Grant, on the Character of the Hindus, printed by order of the
House of Commons in 1813

BOOK II. sents as preceding Rama, the son of Cush who,
CHAP. 10 according to Sir William Jones, might have established the *first regular government in India*.¹ Juhishter is another of these universal sovereigns but of him even the origin is allegorical he is the son of Dherma, or the god of justice and he reigned 27 000 years The name with which chiefly, the idea of the universal sovereignty of India, and the glory of art and science is combined is that of Vicramaditya. Of him let us hear what is represented and then we shall be enabled to judge "The two periods" says Captain Wilsford, "of Vicrama'ditya and Sahavhana are intimately connected and the accounts we have of these two extraordinary personages are much confused, teeming with contradictions and absurdities to a surprising degree In general the Hindus know but of one Vicramaditya but the learned acknowledge four and when at my request they produced written authorities, I was greatly surprised to find no less than eight or nine — Vicramaditya made a desperate *tapasya* in order to obtain power and a long life from Calidevi and as she seemingly continued deaf to his entreaties, he was going to cut off his own head when she appeared and granted him undisturbed sway over all the world for one thousand years after which a divine child born of a virgin and the son of the great Treasures carpenter or artist would deprive him both of his kingdom and of his life This would happen in the year of the Cali yug 3101 answering to the first of the Christian era The history of these nine worthies but more particularly when considered as a single individual is a most crude and undigested mass of heterogeneous legends taken from the apocryphal gospel of the infancy of Christ the tales of the Rabb and Lal

mudists concerning Solomon, with some particulars about Muhammed; and the whole is jumbled together with some of the principal features of the history of the Persian kings of the Sassanian dynasty. Thus *Vicrama* is made contemporary with Solomon, and like him, he is said to have found the great *mantra*, spell or talisman, through which he ruled over the elements, and spirits of all denominations, who obeyed him like slaves. Like Solomon, he had a most wonderful throne, supported and adorned with lions, who are endued with reason and speech. We read in the *Vetala-pancha-vinsati*, that it was through the assistance of the great *Vetala*, or devil, that two *Vicrama*-dityas obtained the empire of the world, a long life, with unlimited sway. They performed the *pújá* in his honour, offered sacrifices, and in short dedicated or gave themselves up to him "¹ On this foundation of historical matter is built the magnificent fabric of a great and universal monarchy, the reign of the arts and sciences, all that embellishes human life, and augments the human powers. Such being the premises, and such the conclusion, are they not admirably adapted to one another? The legend speaks, and that loudly, and distinctly, what it is, the creation of a rude and uncultivated fancy, exerting itself to rouse the wonder of a rude and uncultivated age, by a recital of actions, powers, and events, swelled beyond the measure of human nature, profiting by all the hints which the legends or history of other nations supplied to furnish out its story, and by appropriating the wonderful deeds of all the world to gratify the barbarous vanity of the people to whom the story was addressed. If the historian gave to his hero a reign of a thousand years, it was quite in the same temper, and condu-

¹ *Essay on Vicramaditya and Salivahana*, by Capt Wilford, *Asiat.* Res ix 117 to 120

BOOK II give to the same end, to give him the sovereignty of **CHAR. 10.** all India and not only of all India but, as we see was the fact, the sovereignty of the whole world. This is precisely the course which a wild and ignorant mind, regarding only the wonder which it has it in view to excite, naturally in such cases, and almost universally pursues. Such legends, if they existed in myriads, are no more a proof of a monarchy common to all India which they do not assert, than of the universal monarchy of the whole world, or of the thousands or the myriads of years to one reign, which they expressly assert.²

The very lists which are found in the books of the Hindus, filled up with the names of successive monarchs, Mr. Wilsford assures us, are the creation of the fancies of the writers, and are formed without any reference to facts. In enumerating the authorities, from which he drew his materials, in the essay on *Viceramaditya* and *Sahivalhana*, he says, "The fourth list has been translated into all the dialects of India and new modelled at least twenty different ways, according to the whims and pre-conceived ideas of every individual who chose to meddle with it. It is however the basis and ground work of modern history

² If we examine the chronological table of the Hindu kings presented to us by Sir William Jones we shall find *Viceramaditya* placed at an era posterior to the Mussulman conquests

Year	
From Chandragupta to the end of the Maurya race (A. Res. n. 150)	127
From the beginning to the end of the Sunga (Ibid. p. 140)	117
From the ditta to ditta of the Canna (Ibid.)	313
From ditto ditto of Andra (ending with Chandrabaya) (p. 111)	456
From Chandrabaya to <i>Viceramaditya</i> (Ibid. p. 147)	396
From Chandragupta to <i>Viceramaditya</i>	1416
Now Seleucus, who was contemporary with Chandragupta (Auct. Res. ii. 221) began to reign about 309 years before Christ. By the chronology therefore <i>Viceramaditya</i> began to reign about 1146 years after Christ.	

among the Hindus, as in the *Khulásetul Tuwarie*, BOOK II
CHAP 10 and the *Tadkeratussulatin*. The latter treatise is a most perfect specimen of the manner of writing history in India; for, excepting the above list, almost every thing else is the production of the fertile genius of the compiler. In all these lists the compilers and revisers seem to have had no other object in view, but to adjust a certain number of remarkable epochs. This being once effected, the intermediate spaces are filled up with names of kings not to be found anywhere else, and most probably fanciful. Otherwise they leave out the names of those kings of whom nothing is recorded, and attribute the years of their reign in some among them better known, and of greater fame. They often do not scruple to transpose some of those kings, and even whole dynasties; either in consequence of some pre-conceived opinion, or owing to their mistaking a famous king for another of the same name. It was not uncommon with ancient writers, to pass from a remote ancestor to a remote descendant; or from a remote predecessor to a remote successor, by leaving out the intermediate generations or successions, and sometimes ascribing the years of their reigns to a remote successor or predecessor. In this manner the lists of the ancient kings of Persia, both by oriental writers, and others in the west, have been compiled, and some instances of this nature might be produced from Scripture. I was acquainted lately, at Benares, with a chronicler of that sort; and in the several conversations I had with him, he candidly acknowledged, that he filled up the intermediate spaces between the reigns of famous kings, with names at a venture; that he shortened or lengthened their reigns at pleasure, and that it was understood, that his predecessors had taken the same liberties. Through their emenda-

BOOK II ^{CHAP. 10} tions and corrections you see plainly a total want of historical knowledge and criticism and sometimes some disingenuity is but too obvious. Thus is, how ever, the case with the sections on futurity in the Bhagavat, Vaya, Vishu and Brahmanda Puranas which with the above lists constitute the whole stock of historical knowledge among the Hindus and the whole might be comprised in a few quarto pages of print."¹

Such is the mode, in which the authors of the Puranas supply themselves with a convenient quantity of *ordinary* kings. Mr Wilsord affords most satisfactory information with regard to the manner in which they further supply themselves with *extraordinary* ones. "The propensity," says he, "of the Hindus, to appropriate every thing to themselves is well known. We have noticed before their claims to Bahram Gur and his descendants and in the same manner they insist that Achar was a Hindu in a former generation. The proximity of the time in which this famous emperor lived, has forced them, however, to account for this in the following manner. There was a holy Brahmen, who wished very much to become emperor of India and the only practicable way for him was to die first, and be born again. For this purpose he made a desperate *Sapasya*, wishing to remember then every thing he knew in his present generation. This could not be fully granted but he was indulged with writing upon a brass plate a few things which he wished more particularly to remember, then he was directed to bury the plate and promised that he would remember the place in the next generation. Mucunda for such was his name went to Allahabad, buried the plate, and then burned

¹ *Fairy on Veteranities and Solstitials* by Captain Wilsord. At. &c. Vol. ix. 132, 133.

himself Nine months after he was born in the character of Acbar, who, as soon as he ascended the thone, went to Allahabad, and easily found the spot where the brass plate was buried. Thus the Hindus claim Muhammed and Acbar as their own; exactly like the Persians of old, who insisted that Alexander was the son of one of their kings; so that after all they were forced to submit to their countrymen only."¹

The account of the claim to Bahram-Gûr, mentioned in the beginning of the preceding passage, is extremely important on the present occasion; as it shows us that Vicramaditya, whom the legend makes sovereign of the world, and the believers in the great Hindu monarchy take for emperor of Hindustan, was in reality a King of Persia, borrowed by the Brahmins, from their propensity to appropriate every thing remarkable which they heard of in the world. "One of these Vicramas," says Mr. Wilford, speaking of the different persons in whom this Vicramaditya appears, "was really a Sassanian Prince and the famous Shabour or Sapor, of that dynasty, who took the emperor Valens prisoner"² The story is as follows, "In Gurjara-mandalam are the Sabharamati and Mahi rivers, between them is a forest, in which resided Tamalipta-rišhi, whose daughter married King Tamrasena. They had six male children and one daughter called Mandava-rec'ha. The King had two young lads, called Devas'aīma and Havis'arma, whose duty chiefly was to wash, every day, the clothes of their master, in the waters of the nearest river. One day, as Devas'aīma went, by himself, for that purpose, he heard a voice, saying,

¹ Essay on Vicramaditya, and Salivahana, by Captain Wilford, Asiatic Res ix 158, 159

² Ibid p 149

BOOK II Tell King Tamrasena to give me his daughter
Chap. 10 should he refuse me he will repent it The lad on his return mentioned the whole to his master who would not believe it, and the next day sent Havisarma to the river, who heard the same voice also, with the threats in case of a refusal. The King was astonished and going himself heard the voice also On his return he assembled his council and after consulting together it was agreed, that the King should go again, and ask him who he was. The supposed spirit, being questioned, answered I am a Gandharva or heavenly choirister who having incurred Indra's displeasure was doomed to assume the shape of an ass I was born in that shape in the house of a cumbhacara, or potter in your capital city and I am daily roving about in quest of food The King said that he was very willing to give him his daughter, but that he conceived that such an union was altogether impossible while he remained in that shape The Gandharva said, Trouble not yourself about that comply with my request, and it shall be well with you. If, says the King, you are so powerful turn the walls of my city, and those of the houses, into brass and let it be done before sun rise to-morrow The Gandharva agreed to it and the whole was completed by the appointed time, and the King of course gave him his daughter This Gandharva's name was Jayanta, the son of Brahma. When cursed by Indra, he humbled himself and Indra, relenting allowed him to resume his human shape in the night time telling him that the curse should not be done away till somebody had burned his ass like a frame The mother of the damsel spied them once in the night, and, to her great joy found that the Gandharva dallied with her daughter in a human shape Rejoiced at this discovery, she looked for his

ass-like form, and burned it Early in the morning, BOOK II
the Gand'harva looked for this body of his, and found CHAP 10
that it had been destroyed He returned immediately
to his wife, informing her of what had happened, and
that his curse being at an end, he was obliged to re-
turn to heaven, and leave her He informed her also
that she was with child by him, and that the name of
the child was to be Vicramaditya.¹ After the state-
ment of some other particulars, Mr. Wilford says ;
“ This is obviously the history of Yesdegird, son of
Bahram-Gûi, or Bahram the ass, King of Persia the
grand features are the same, and the times coincide
perfectly. The amours of Bahram-Gûr, with an In-
dian princess, are famous all over Persia, as well as in
India.”² Such are the accounts of Vicramaditya, from
which we are called upon for our belief of an univer-
sal monarchy, and a period of civilization and know-
ledge.³

¹ Essay on Vicramaditya, and Salivahana, by Captain Wilford, *Asiat.*
Res ix 147, 148, 149

² *Ibid* p 149

³ Mr Wilford presents us also with the history which the Brahmens have manufactured for placing Mahomed among the great men of Hindustan It is of much importance, to elucidate the accounts, which are given by the Hindus, not only of the actions, but of the very persons and existence, of their pretended heroes I should otherwise have been well pleased to omit a story, tainted with that indelicacy, which, even when they are inventing, and have the circumstances at their own selection, marks the writings of an uncultivated people. “ The Hindus say, that the son of a certain King of India, being disgusted with the world, turned pilgrim, and went to Mocsheswarast'hana (or Mecca) In his way thither, and in Arabia, he stopped at the house of a Brahmen, who received him kindly, and ordered his daughter to wait on him as usual Whilst asleep, the cloth with which his loins were covered was accidentally defiled When he awoke, he took it off, and concealed it in a corner of the house, in some hole, and out of the sight of the damsel, as he thought Being from home, to perform his ablutions, in consequence of this nocturnal defilement, the damsel came at the usual hour, and her courses suddenly making their appearance, she was much distressed, and looking every where for some cloth, she spied the bundle—in short she conceived. He departed

BOOK II Our experience of human nature, and the phenomena which are exhibited under the manners, affections, &c.

for Mecca; and some months after, the parents of the damsel and herself were thrown into the greatest confusion as may be imagined. The holy man was considered as the author of their disgrace; though the damsel exculpated him; yet she could not account for her present situation. She was, like Hagar turned out of the house into the wilderness with her son; where they were miraculously preserved both being innocent. Some years after the boy man returned unconscious of his having been the cause of so much unkindness to the family of the hospitable Brahmin. After much abuse the master was explained; but the son of the damsel could not be admitted to share with his relatives or even to remain in their communion. He was however honourably dismissed with his mother after they had given him a suitable education and rich presents; and they advised him to shift for himself and to set up a new religion as he could not be considered as a member of the old one on account of his strange birth or rather conception. When advanced in years, he wished to see his paternal relations and India; and to persuade them to conform to his new doctrine; but he died in his way thither at Medina near Can-dahar. This Medina is Ghant called emphatically the second Medina from the great number of holy men entombed there; and it is obvious that the Hindoo have confounded Muhammed with Sultan Shah-mood whose sumptuous Mausoleum is close to that city. Thus we see that the account they give of Muhammed is a mere shapely retaining some of the principal features of the history of Ishmael Hagar Muhammed himself and Sultan Shah-mood.—This is in all probability the era of Mahabhat (Muhammed) was early introduced into India and the Hindus were obliged to use it as they do now in all their civil transactions; and thus Muhammed became at least a Sanatana or Sanyas. According to the rules laid down by the learned in India. Muhammed is certainly a Sanyas or Saceewara and is entitled to the epithet of Viceroy. He is a Sanyas or mighty chief; and like other Sanyas he killed his millions; he is Saceewara or the ruler of a sacred person still in use in India. For there is at the Pandit who a saint Abul Fazl did not scruple to bestow the title of Viceregal upon him; and even to consider him as the real worthy of that name; and in order to make the era or at least the time of Viceregality appear entire concord with the era of Muhammed they have most unmercifully distorted the chronology of the appendix to the Temporaria. Mr. Wilford A. at Res. ix 159 160 161 See a full narrative extracted out of my history of Jesus Christ borrowed from the spiritual gospel into the Puranas and to make Christ at last Christian at another time Sankaran at another time Verma I say on the Origin and Decline of Christianity in India by Captain W. H. Averill p. 2

ments, and institutions of the Hindus, are the only materials from which a rational inference can be drawn. It is by no means impossible for a people, who have passed but a small number of stages in the career of civilization, to be united, extensively, under one government, and to remain steady for a great length of time in that situation. The empire of China is one conspicuous proof; the ancient kingdom of Persia, which for several ages stood exempt from revolution, is another. The Ottoman empire may be considered as a similar instance. And the Russians, a

and is applied to any character, whether real or imaginary, whom it suited the Brahmens to erect into a hero, and whether it was originally the name of some Hindu prince who had greatly distinguished himself, or of pure invention, it is altogether useless to inquire. That this name has been attached to a particular era, in one of the numerous Hindu modes of dating, establishes nothing. What we do not know is—for what cause they adopted such an era. What we do know is—that they would very naturally apply to it the appellative Vicramaditya, whatever the cause. And no one can doubt the absurdity of supposing that the cause was a particular prince, contemporary at once with Solomon, with Jesus Christ, with Sapor, and with Mohammed.

What the Brahmens fable, about an universal monarchy, and the celestial glory of this or that pretended hero, can therefore be regarded as no evidence of the facts which they assert. The propensity of the Hindus to exaggeration is every where displayed. "The officers of government here," says Dr Buchanan, "had the impudence to inform me, that according to Chica Deva Raya's valuation of the country which belonged to Nandi Raj, it contained 32,000 villages." The account here given seems to be one of those gross exaggerations common in India, and is entirely contradicted by the accounts which I received from the revenue office at Seringapatam. Journey through Mysore, &c p 97 In other places the native officers told him lies, contradicted by the very facts presented to their and his eyes, at the moment of delivering them. "Among the natives, however, he remarks, "similar departures from the truth are common." Ibid p 136, 137 Vicramaditya is indeed, expressly, at times asserted, not to have been King of all India, but only of a certain portion of it in the west. "The author of the Vicrama Upac'hya says, that he was a powerful prince, in the west of India, and possessed of the countries which we find, afterwards, constituting the patrimonial territories of the Balahara, which included Gurjarasht'a (or Gujarat) with some adjacent districts" Essay on Vicramaditya, &c by Captain Wilsford, Asiatic Res p 149

BOOK II. barbarous people, have long formed a very extensive ^{Char 10} monarchy. It would therefore, be far from evidence of any higher civilization, among the Hindus than what they now manifest, had the existence of a great monarchy been proved. Among uncivilized nations however, it is most common to find a perpetual succession of revolutions and communities in general small though sometimes a prince or individual with uncommon talents arises and acquiring power extends his authority over several of those communities or even as in the cases of a Charlemagne, over a great number while after his death, the large empire which he had erected gradually dissolves till the whole or the greater part, is re-divided into small communities as before. Every thing which the Europeans have seen in Hindustan conspires to prove that such an alternation of communities, and occasional and temporary extensions of power in particular hands have composed the history of that country. The Mahratta empire affords a striking example of those changes which seem natural to the circumstances in which the people are placed. Within the period of the modern intercourse of the Europeans with Hindustan no aspiring individual was enabled to extend his authority partly by persuasion partly by force first over one district, and then over another till at last he united under his command an extensive empire composed chiefly of the separate and disjointed communities, who occupied the mountainous districts in the western and central parts of Hindustan.¹ Soon was this empire broken into several different governments, the

¹ The word Hindostan is in this work generally used to signify comprehensively the land of the Hindus from Cape Comorin to the northern boundary of the country which they inhabited. It is necessary to mention that in the oriental books it has often a more limited signification being appropriated to that part of the land of the Hindus which is north of the river Nerbunkar.

owners of which hardly acknowledged even a nominal hommage to the throne of Sevagee, and had they been left to themselves, free from the irresistible operation of the British power, the empire of the Mahrattas, in all probability, would have been resolved, ere this time, into its primitive elements. Even the empire of the Moguls, itself; though erected on firmer foundations than it is reasonable to suppose that any Hindu monarchy ever enjoyed, though supported by a foreign force, and acted upon by peculiar motives for maintaining undivided power, had no sooner attained its greatest extension by the conquests of Auruṅgzebe, than it began immediately to fall to pieces, and a single century beheld it in fragments

The monuments of the ancient state of Hindustan conspire in giving indication of a troubled scene. Every ancient writing, which bears any reference to the matter of history, the historical poems, the Puranas, hold up to view a state of society, the reverse of tranquil, perpetual broils, dethronements, injustice, wars, conquests, and bloodshed. Among the most important of all the documents of antiquity found in Hindustan, are the inscriptions, declaratory of grants of land, made by the ancient princes of the country. These princes are so far from appearing to have presided over a peaceful land, that they are all represented, as victorious warriors, and as having been surrounded by enemies, over whom they have triumphed, and whom they have severely chastised¹. Almost all the princes mentioned in these inscrip-

¹ See the inscription found at Monghir, and translated in the *Asiat Res* i 123 That found at Buddal, *Ibid* p 130 —That found at Tanna, *Ibid* p 357 —Those from the Vindhya mountains, *Ibid* ii 168, 169 —That on the staff of Feeroz Shah, *Ibid*, p 382 —That respecting a grant of land in Carnatic, *Ibid* iii 40—47 —That found in the district of Gorakhpur, *Ibid* ix 410 —That found at Chitradurg, *Ibid* p 418, 419, 420 —That found at Curugode, *Ibid* p 436, 437, 438 —Those found at Nedigal and Goujda, *Ib* p 447

BOOK II tions, princes in all the parts of India, and not pretended to have been more than the sovereigns of some particular district are described as the conquerors and sovereigns of the whole world¹

Of the unsparing and destructive cruelty which accompanied the perpetual wars and conquests of the Hindus, among other proofs, the following may be considered as strong. In the inscription found at Tanna, part of the panegyric bestowed upon the donor Prince, is in these words "Having raised up his slain foe on his sharp sword, he so afflicted the women in the hostile palaces, that their forelocks fell disordered their garlands of bright flowers dropped from their necks on the vases of their breasts, and the black lute of their eyes disappeared. A warrior, the plant of whose fame grows up over the temple of Brahma's egg [the universe] from the repeated watering-of it with the-drops-that fell from the eyes-of the wives-of his-slaughtered foe"² It would be in the highest degree absurd to reject this were it even a solitary instance as evidence of a general fact because the exterminating ferocity is described as matter of the highest praise and panegyric to be what it is must be conformable to the ideas of the people to whom it is addressed³

The picture which Major Rennel looking only to a limited period drew of the state of Hindustan may

¹ See the inscriptions cited in the *Asiat. Rec.* vol. 1. 250. 181 125; iii. 48. 50; ix. 40. 418. The inscription cut on a stone upon the hill of B. B. It is in part of the great Jain monk Lankarāma's testimony. In the year of the 57 or 1700 (A.D. 1257) "I success and glory to the honourable monarch the King and the ruler of eminent princes, lord of foes on high, w^t a name of Bhagavatya" (Asiat. Rec. ix. 250).

² Ad. i. ill. 5. 250

The inscription on the fort (wall) of T. T. S. It relates the monarch in whose honour it has been erected for having achieved conquest in the course of his King to holy places—a merit to his high king and his great to those whose necks are humbled—

be taken, agreeably to every thing which we know of Hindustan, as the picture of it, to the remotest period of its history. "Rebellions, massacres, and barbarous conquests, make up the history of this fair country, (which to an ordinary observer seems destined to be the paradise of the world.)—the immediate effect of the mad ambition of conquering more than can be governed by one man."¹ "Revolutions," (says Sonnerat, directing his attention to the coast of Malabar, which had been little affected by foreign conquest) "have been more rapid in this than in any other part of the globe. A daring robber, possessed

making Ariaverta [the land of virtue or of respectable men] once more what its name signifies, by causing the barbarians to be exterminated — Visala Deva, son of the fortunate Vella Deva, king of Sacimbri, the situation of which the translator does not know, most eminent of the tribe which sprang from the arms of Brahma—boasts of having rendered tributary the region of the earth between Ilunavat (the Imaus of ancient geographers) and Vindhya (the range of hills which passes through the provinces of Bahar, Benares) and exhorts his descendants to subdue the remainder"—No proof, all this, of the peaceful state of Hindostan The inscription continues—"May thy abode, O Vigraha, sovereign of the earth, be fixed, as in reason it ought, in the bosoms, akin to the mansions of dalliance, of the women with beautiful eyebrows, who were married to thy enemies"—The abuse of an enemy's wives is no great proof of a generous or civilized conqueror The inscription then deifies this same Rajah "Art thou not Vishnu himself? Art thou not he who slept in the arms of Lachshmi, whom thou didst seize from the ocean, having churned it?"—Are epithets of extravagant praise to the deity surprising, when they are thus heaped upon a mortal? (As Res ii 382) The account of the Sacas affords important proof of the glory that was attached by the Hindus to the shedding of blood The Cali yug is divided into six Sacas, so called from six glorious monarchs Of these, three have made their appearance, three are yet to come To become a Saca, each of these monarchs must have first killed 550,000,000 of a certain mighty tribe of heretics, called Sacas The first of these blood-thirsty sovereigns was Judishter, whose period was 3044 years, the second Vicramaditya, whose saka lasted only 135 years, the third, Salivahana, whose period is to last 18,000 years, the fourth, Nandana, 10,000 years, the fifth, Nagatjuna, 400,000 years, for the sixth, will re-appear the Antediluvian Bahi, whose period will be 821 years, at which period a general renovation of the world will take place. Wilsord, Asiat Res ix 82

¹ Rennel's Memoir, p 1

BOOK II of policy and courage, in a short time gives laws to
CHAP. 10 the whole coast, but in his turn becomes tributary to
 a bolder villain, who marching in the same path
 subjects him to that but he had inflicted on others."¹

Notwithstanding in other respects, the extreme
 scantiness and uncertainty of the materials for any
 inferences except the most general, in regard to the
 ancient state of Hindustan there is a great body of
 evidence to prove the habitual division of the country
 into a number of moderate and most frequently, petty
 sovereignties and states.² In the dramatic poem *Sa*
contala, the daughter of the hermit asks the royal
 stranger, who had visited their consecrated grove
 "What imperial family is embellished by our noble
 guest? What is his native country? Surely it must
 be afflicted by his absence from it?" The question
 undoubtedly implied that there were more royal
 families than one to which he might belong and
 these at no remarkable distance since the stranger
 was known to have come into the forest in the course

¹ Sonnerat *Voy. sur l'Inde* ch. ii. Their very laws and religion encourage a spirit of restlessness and warfare. "Fully performing all duties required by law let a king seek to possess regions yet unpossessed." (*Laws of Menu* ch. ix. 31.) This gives implicit encouragement to a spirit of conquest. The gloss of Culloca the commentator inserts the words *with justice* a saving clause; but even then the practical effect of the law is but too visible.

In the 18th gatka (See Maurice *Hist. of Hindostan* li. 39) Krishna says he does not boast, "though he carried away Rukmini from so numerous an assembly of monarchs." When Krishna fought with the seven bulls of Krookle great numbers of rajahs and rajaups were collected to see the conflict. Ib. p. 40^a. Bhoomi Asvini had collected the daughters of 10,000 rajahs. Ib. p. 403. Rajah Dron Jodhesh sovereign of Hissarpur had a daughter who was courted by rajahs and rajaups from every quarter. Ib. 413. Twenty thousand and eight hundred rajahs of eminence were held in confinement by Jarasandha and released upon his destruction by Krishna and Bama. Ib. p. 453. When Krishna carried away Rukmini Jarasandha said "This is surely most astonishing that in the presence of so many crowned heads as are here assembled this combat should make so bold an effort." Ib. p. 391.

of a hunting excursion. In the Hetopadesa mention is made of a variety of princes. Thus in the compass of a few pages, we are told, "In the country of <sup>BOOK II.
CHAP 10</sup> Calinga is a prince, named Rucmangada, who, advancing with preparations to subdue the adjacent regions, has fixed his station near the river Chandrabhaga."¹ Again, "In the country of Canyacuja is a prince named Virasena."² And further, "There is near the Bhagirathi a city, named Pataliputra, in which lived a prince named Sudersana."³ In the inscription, formerly quoted, found at Monghir, and bearing date 23 years B C. there is sufficient proof of the division of Hindustan into numerous kingdoms. Gopaal, the prince or the father of the prince by whom the grant is made, is panegyrized as the conqueror of many princes, and his son is, "He, who marching through many countries, making conquests, arrived with his elephants, in the forests of the mountains Beendhyo, where seeing again their long-lost families, they mixed their mutual tears; and who going to subdue other princes, his young horses meeting their females at Komboge, they mutually neighed for joy — who conquered the earth from the source of the Ganges as far as the well-known bridge which was constructed by the enemy of Dosaesyo, from the river of Luckeecool as far as the ocean of the habitation of Booroon."⁴ If this prince overran the peninsula, and conquered a multitude of princes, the peninsula must have been possessed by a multitude of princes before. And we may form an idea of the exaggeration used in the account of his victories, when we are told that his father Gopaal was king of the world, and possessed of two brides, the earth and her wealth.⁵ The conquests by those princes, even when they took place, were but inroads, never, to any considerable extent, effecting a durable possession. This

¹ Hetopadesa, in Sir William Jones's Works, v. 43² Ib. p. 44.³ Ibid. p. 51⁴ Asiat. Res. 1. 123.⁵ Ibid.

BOOK II prince himself, we are told, "when he had completed his conquests, released all the rebellious princes he had made captive, and each returning to his own country laden with presents, reflected upon this generous deed, and longed to see him again"¹ The laws frequently afford evidence to the same purpose. The penalty, so frequently imposed of banishment from one kingdom to another proves the vicinity of different kingdoms.² The following is another instance in point. "If a lender of money says to a person, A debt due to me is outstanding in your hands, and that person denies the debt, if at that time the bond is not in the lender's hands, but should be in some other kingdom then, until he brings the bond from such other kingdom, the suit shall not be determined"³

Asiat. Res. L. 123. The third stanza of this inscription, omitted by Mr Wilkins but translated by Sir W Jones affords additional proof that these conquests were but an usurpation. By whom having conquered the earth as far as the ocean, it was left as being unprofitably seized." *Ibid* p. 148. In the inscription on the pillar near Buddal found by Mr Wilkins, is described a race of princes who originally it is said ruled over "but one quarter and had no authority in other regions;" but one of the line "being a virtuous prince became supreme over every country without reserve and the three worlds were held in subjection by his hereditary rank." The dominions of his son and successor extended from Rura Janak, to the father of Gowree and to the two oceans, &c. and all this country the prince Sree Dev Pal rendered tributary *Ibid* p. 151. Yet Sir W Jones says that this race of princes were all along only private ministers to the House of Devu Pal: *p. 14** Nothing can be more contradictory to the text but it is necessary for Sir William's theory that the kings of Gaur of whom Devopal was one should be the lords paramount of India. Sir William, when he had a theory seems to have bad eyes to see nothing but what made in its favour. An additional proof of the small kingdoms of Hindustan is found in the inscription (*Audley. L. 133*) stanza xiii. "The king of Gowr" (Bengal) "for a long time enjoyed the country of the eradicated race of Oothal" (Orn. 2.) "of the Ilons" (Hons.) "of humbled pride of the kings of Dravet" (a country in the south of the Carnatic) "and Gonyur" (Gooty) "whose glory was reduced and the universal sceptre throne." Another grant of land (*Ib. p. 337*) affords evidence to the same purpose: a number of kings are actually named in the royal grant. At *Iles. iii. 48*

* See *Gentoo Code* parvum

► Halhed's *Gentoo Code*, ch. iii. sect. 6. p. 105, 107

In the code of Menu is a series of rules for behaviour BOOK II to neighbouring princes; sufficiently proving, that ^{CHAP. 10} Hindustan was in that state of subdivision which rendered these rules pertinent and useful¹ These articles, to which there is nothing whatsoever opposed, but the absurd fables of the Brahmens, constitute a degree of evidence to which we may with sufficient confidence attach our belief.²

¹ Laws of Menu, ch vii p 154, 155 Even Robertson, though a firm believer in the universal monarchy, is forced to allow that it had not yet existed in the time of Alexander "In the age of Alexander, though there was not established in it any powerful empire, resembling that which in modern times stretched its dominion from the Indus almost to Cape Comorin, it was even then formed into monarchies of considerable extent" Robertson's Disq concerning ancient India, p 21. But the times of Alexander, and times long antecedent, are the times fixed upon by the Brahmens, for this perpetually asserted, but never ascertained empire To what modern times does Robertson allude? for he himself gives it as true information, that in the tenth century, there were four kingdoms in the north part alone of India "The first was composed of the provinces situated on the Indus, and the rivers which fall into it, the capital of which was Moultan The capital of the second kingdom was Canoge, which, from the ruins of it remaining, appears to have been a very large city The third kingdom was Cachemire Massoudi, as far as I know, is the first author who mentions this paradise of India, of which he gives but a short description. The fourth is the kingdom of Guzerate, which he represents as the greatest and most powerful, and he concurs with the two Arabian travellers, in giving the sovereign of it the appellation of Balhara" Ibid Note xxxvii p 332

² The inconsistencies of the believers in the great empire of Hindustan are miserable Mr Maurice tells us that Bali, "if that name imply not rather a dynasty of princes than an individual monarch," [a shrewd suspicion] "was the puissant sovereign of a mighty empire, extending over the vast continent of India, that under Rama, the next in succession, there is every appearance of its having remained unbroken, that Judishter is generally acknowledged to have been the sovereign of all India" Maurice, Hist ii 511 Yet both Mr Maurice and Sir W Jones believe Rama to be the Raamah of Scripture, the son of Cush, Genesis, ch x ver 7, in whose days it was impossible that any considerable part of India could be peopled See Sir W Jones, Asiatic Res ii 401, and Mr Maurice, Hist iii 104 Bali, the Baal, and Bel, of other eastern nations, who is also said to have been the first king of Assyria, was not a name of any particular person, but a title assumed by many, and those of different nations. It is in fact a title of the sun,

We have already seen, in reviewing the Hindu form of government, that despotism, in one of its simplest and least artificial shapes, was established in Hindustan, and confirmed by Laws of Divine authority. We have seen likewise, that by the division of the people into castes, and the prejudices which the detestable views of the Brahmens raised to separate them, a degrading and pernicious system of subordination was established among the Hindus, and that the vices of such a system were there carried to a more destructive height than among any other people.¹ And we have seen that by a system of priest craft built upon the most enormous and tormenting superstition that ever harassed and degraded any

(See Bryant's *Myth*) Judahiter too it is remarkable was the cotemporary of Rama both being heroes in the war of the Mahabharat. For the performance of the Raishoo yug, it was not necessary as they pretend to conquer all princes since at Judahiter's yug, the father of Cansa, whom Creeshna after the death of Cansa seated on the throne of Mathura was not conquered by Judahiter. Nay it is remarkable that this yug was celebrated while Judahiter was yet a dependent upon Doorjoodhen, before the war of the Pandooos. Even after the war of the Mahabharat, when they assure us for certain that Judahiter was king of all Indus Ogur Sein the grandfather of Creeshna was reigning at Mathura; Creeshna and the Yadavas were all flourishing. See the Mahabharat translated by Halbed; Maurice History of India II 463

1 "In so far as the Hindu superstition tends to estrange mankind by creating artificial sources of mutual execration and disgrace, as it certainly does it counteracts the real interests of society. Let it not be urged that the practical effects of the artificial separation of the classes are not greatly felt in society; or that a Brahmin or Rajah will as readily supply the wants of the poorer classes as he would those of his own. The fact is otherwise; the Brahmin considers his order as in some measure a different race of beings; and imagines that the lower ranks are incapable of the same sensibility to a sense, he regards them as a race whose feelings are deadened by the meanness of their intellect and therefore not entitled to the same share of compassion. That this is the idea of the priests and it implantates thro'out India their own conduct sufficiently unkind; hence the serenity of their government, the rigor of their punishments, and their universal and dirence to the poor and even the lives of their subjects." Tennant's Indian Recreations L 121

portion of mankind, their minds were enchain'd more BOOK II.
intolerably than their bodies ; in short that, despotism CHAP. 10
and priestcraft taken together, the Hindus, in mind
and body, were the most enslaved portion of the hu-
man race Sir William Jones, in his preface to the
translation of the Institutes of Menu, says, that this
code exhibits " a system of despotism and priestcraft,
both indeed limited by law, but artfully conspiring to
give mutual support, though with mutual checks." The
despotism and priestcraft of the system were,
it seems, too glaring to be mistaken or denied , but,
in order to palliate the deformity, Sir William is
betrayed into nonsense. A despotism, he says,
limited by law ; as if a despotism limited by law
were not a contradiction in terms , what is limited by
law, so far as so limited, being not a despotism A
priestcraft, he also says, limited by law A law of
which the priests themselves were the sole makers,
and the sole interpreters ! A despotism, and a priest-
craft, he says, with mutual checks. Yes, truly , it
was the interest of the priestcraft to check the des-
potism, in all encroachments on the priestcraft; and it
was the interest of the despotism to cheek the priest-
craft, in all encroachments on the despotism . But
who checked the despotism and the priestcraft in
oppressing the people ? Alas ! no one. It was the
interest of the despotism and the priestcraft to join
together in upholding their common tyranny over the
people , and it must be allowed that so commanding
a motive had all the influence upon their conduct which
it might be expected to have. Apply this remark of
the splendid orientalist to the Turks *There* is a
despotism and a priestcraft, limited, (if we may so
abuse the term,) and still more strictly limited,
by law ; for the Moslem laws are more precise and
accurate than those of the Hindus *There*, too, the

BOOK II. despotism and priesthood check one another. But has
CHAP. 10. all this prevented the Turkish despotism and priesthood from being the scourge of human nature the source of barbarity and desolation?

That the Hindu despotism was not practically mild we have a number of satisfactory proofs. We have seen the cruelty and ferocity of the penal laws, itself a circumstance of the highest importance. "A thunderbolt," says the author of the *Hetopadesa* "and the power of kings, are both dreadful!" But the former expendeth its fury at once, whilst the latter is constantly falling upon our heads.¹ Some of the observations are so comprehensive, and pointed, as to afford the strongest evidence. "In this world," says the same celebrated book, "which is subject to the power of one above, a man of good principles is hard to be found, in a country for the most part, governed by the use of the rod."² "Princes in general alas! turn away their faces from a man endowed with good qualities."³ "The conduct of princes, like a fine harlot, is of many colours. True and false harsh and gentle, cruel and merciful niggardly and generous extravagant of expense, and solicitous of the influx of abundant wealth and treasure."⁴ "An elephant killeth even by touching a servant even by smelling, a king even by ruling."⁵

¹ Wilkins *Hetopadesa* p. 161

² *Ibid.* p. 42

³ *Ibid.* p. 160

⁴ *Ibid.* p. 164.

⁵ *Ibid.* p. 170. The following maxim among many others in the book is a proof of the idle and useless life of the rajahs; who devolve all business upon their ministers, and wallow in sensuality and sloth. "The sovereign being a ruler for the distribution of happiness and not for the execution of affairs, the minister who shall bring ruin upon the business of the state is a criminal" (*Ibid.* p. 142). The last article of the following character of a good minister is an abundant proof of the rapacious nature of the government; "A king should enrage for his minister one who is a native of his own country; pure in all his ways and cleanly in his dress; not one who is an outcast,

All the general maxims of the Hindus import the extreme degradation of the great body of the people. BOOK II
CHAP 10.

“The assistance, O king, which is rendered to those of low degree, is like endeavouring to please bears. A low person should never be placed in the station of the great. One of low degree having obtained a worthy station seeketh to destroy his master.”¹ “The Hindus,” says Dr. Buchanan, “in their state of independence, exacted deference from those under them with a cruelty and arrogance rarely practised but among themselves. A Nair was expected instantly to cut down a Tiar or Mucua, who presumed to desile him by touching his person; and a similar fate awaited a slave, who did not turn out of the road as a Nair passed”² In Sacontala, Dushmantu is represented as a king who possessed every virtue, and made happiness flourish as in the golden-age. Yet we have a specimen of the justice and legality which prevailed during this happy reign, in the passage relating to the innocent fisherman. He was found, by certain of the king’s officers, offering to sale a ring with the king’s name upon it. They instantly seize him, and drag him away to justice: all the while beating and bruising him; and loading him with opprobrious epithets. The victim of this brutal treatment offers only the most humble entreaties, making statement of the facts, and protestation of his innocence. Upon the sight of the ring, the king acknowledges that he is innocent; and orders him a sum of money, equal in value to the ring. Of this reward he is obliged to resign a half to the very men

addicted to idle pleasures, or too fond of women, but one of good repute, who is well versed in the rules of disputation, is of a firm mind, and expert in raising a revenue” Ibid p 179 See also the Inscription respecting a Royal Grant, *Asiat Res* iii 48

¹ Wilkins’ *Hetopadesa*, p 242

² Buchanan’s *Journey through Mysore, &c* ii. 410.

BOOK II who had abused him, "to escape," it is said, "the effects of their displeasure."¹

CHAP. 10 The laws for guarding the authority of the magistrate exhibit a character of extreme severity, and indicate an habitual state of the most rigid domination. "If a man speaks reproachfully of any upright magistrate, the magistrate shall cut out his tongue, or having confiscated all his effects shall banish him the kingdom."² By this law even the privilege of complaint was taken from the wretched Hindu. The victim of oppression was bound under ferocious penalties, to suffer in silence.

The following is a law by which every act of despotism is legalized. "If a magistrate, for his own good, hath passed any resolutions, whoever refuses to submit to such resolutions the magistrate shall cut out that person's tongue."³ If every resolution which the magistrate chooses to pass for his own good is by the very circumstance of his passing it, obligatory under violent penalties, the state of the government is not doubtful.

"If a man makes complaint before the magistrate against the magistrate's counsellor without any real fault in him or performs any business or service for the magistrate's accuser, the magistrate shall put him to death."⁴ Under the operation of this law the magistrate had little to fear from accusation. There could be no remedy for any grievance because the existence of any grievance could hardly ever be told. If the magistrate was willing to hear of his own

¹ Another remarkable circumstance. The leberman informs the officers he gives them his present to purchase wine; on which they cry, "Oh! now thou art our beloved friend—Cool wine is the best object of our affection.—Let us go together to the turban." *Scandalus et cetera.*

Haldes Gento Code ch. x sec. "

* It. l. xxi 10

* It !

misconduct, or that of his servants, in that case he ^{BOOK II}
might hear of it, where he was unwilling, in that ^{CHAP 10.} case it was death¹

Though all peaceable applications for the redress of grievances were thus precluded, any violence offered to the person of the magistrate, was punished in a manner which none but the most savage people ever endured. "If a magistrate has committed a crime, and any person, upon discovery of that crime, should beat and ill-use the magistrate, in that case, whatever be the crime of murdering one hundred Brahmins, such crime shall be accounted to that person, and the magistrate shall thrust an iron spit through him, and roast him at the fire."²

The notices afforded us of particular sovereigns are exceedingly few. But, such as they are, most of them declare the misgovernment and cruelty of the individuals to whom they relate. "According to Plutarch, in his life of Alexander, Chandra-Gupta, (I use the words of Mr Wilford) had been in that prince's camp, and had been heard to say afterwards, that Alexander would have found no difficulty in the conquest of Prachi, or the country of the Prasians, had he attempted it, as the King was despised and hated too, on account of his cruelty."³

¹ The self-abasement of the Hindus, before their kings, is decisive proof of a merciless government "The sovereign, although but a child, is not to be despised, but to be respected as a man, or as a mighty divinity who presideth in human form" Wilkins' Hetopadesa, p 117 "They performed prostration to their princes, *falling down with eight members*, as they expressed their abject and grovelling mode of approach" Ibid note 137 "Plus un gouvernement est despotique, plus les ames y sont avilis et degradées, plus l'on s'y vante d'aimer son tyran. Les esclaves bénissent à Maroc leur sort et leur Prince, lorsqu'il daigne lui-même leur couper le cou" Helvetius de l'Homme, i 318

² Halhed's Gentoo Code, ch xvi sect 1

³ Wilford, on the Chronology of the Hindus, Asiat Res v 284 There is a passage in Quintus Curtius which would lead us to conclude that India was not thickly inhabited in the times of Alexander Speak-

BOOK II As the Hindu manners and character are invincible, according to their admirers these admirers cannot consistently reject their present, as proof of their ancient, behaviour and all men will allow that it affords strong ground of inference. "It is a remark," says one of the best informed observers of Hindustan "warranted by constant experience, that wherever the government is administered by Gentoos, the people are subject to more and severer oppressions than when ruled by the Moors. I have imputed this to intelligent Gentoos, who have confessed the justice of the accusation, and have not scrupled to give their opinions concerning it." The opinions of these Gentoos are as favourable to themselves as, suiting the occasion, they could possibly make them. "A Gentoo," say they, "is not only born with a spirit of more subtle invention but by his temperance and education becomes more capable of attention to affairs, than a Moor who no sooner obtains power than he is lost in voluptuousness. He becomes vain and lordly, and cannot dispense with satiating the impulses of his sensual appetites whereas a Gentoo Prince retains in his Durbar the same spirit which would actuate him if keeping a shop." Mr Orme adds 'Avarice is his predominant passion and all the wiles, address, cunning and perseverance, of which he is so exquiate a master are exerted to the utmost in fulfilling the dictates of this vice and his religion instead of inspiring, frees him from the remorse of his crimes for whilst he is harassing and plundering the people by the most cruel op-

ing of Alexander's march into the interior of India after the overthrow of Darius he says, Ad magnam dande ut in ea regione urbem petrem; (Curt. lib. ix. cap. 2.) Not a syllable escapes from his mouth or indiscrrete of a populous country. He rules the inhabitants —Barbari—operum nullus nam ratus. Ibid. cap. ii. The names of the separate nations which Alexander found in India are numerous.

pressions, he is making peace with the gods by denying nothing to their priests." Mr. Orme exhibits an impressive example. "The present King of Travancore (an Hindu prince whose dominions had never been subject to a foreign government) has conquered or carried war into all the countries which lay round his dominions, and lives in the continual exercise of his arms. To atone for the blood which he has spilt, the Brachmans persuaded him that it was necessary he should be born anew. This ceremony consisted in putting the prince into the body of a golden cow of immense value, where, after he had laid the time prescribed, he came out regenerated and freed from all the crimes of his former life. The cow was afterwards cut up and divided amongst the SEERS who had invented this extraordinary method for the remission of his sins."¹ No testimony can be stronger

¹ Ofine, on the Government and People of Hindustan, p 484, 435, 436. "Quelques missionnaires, tels que le P de Magistris, le Danois F Schwartz, le P Jean de Brito, dans une relation manuscrite que j'ai entre les mains, accusent les rois payens d'exercer des oppressions intolérables envers leurs sujets M Anquetil du Perron tâche de justifier les souverains * * * Je pourrais démontrer avec une historique évidence que M Anquetil ne connaît pas l'Inde * * * Il est certain qu'il se commettait de grands abus dans l'exercice de l'autorité royale, et je pense que ce fut là la principale cause de la chute des rois de Maduré, de Maïssour, de Tanjaur, et de Marava Quoique ces rois fussent tous payens, de la première noblesse, et indigènes, sans cesse ils se faisaient la guerre reciprocement, et presque tous vexaient le peuple" Voyage aux Indes Orientales par le P Paulin, de S Bartelemy, 187 M Anquetil Duperron, in a note, (*Ibid* iii¹ 365) falls into a curious coincidence with, and confirmation of, the above passage of Paulin, at the same time that he is controverting it — "Le missionnaire n'a pas lu l'histoire de l'Inde, n'est pas même au fait de ce qui se passe tous les jours Quoique le caractère propre de l'Indien soit la douceur, l'humanité, on voit encore dans cette contrée, comme ailleurs, des querelles entre les princes naturels Indiens, des querelles dans les familles, les chefs Marattes sont presque toujours divisés, et en guerres Le Tanjaur, le Maduré, le Maïssour, le Samorin, Narsingue, le Canara, offraient la même spectacle lorsque la puissance des Rajahs étoit dans sa vigueur, il en est de même de ceux de Bengale, du reste de l'Indoustan" Bernier, who had no theory on Indian affairs, but who displays more

BOOK II to the natural tendency of the Hindu religion and to
CHAP. 10 the effects which their institutions are calculated to produce.¹

personal knowledge of the country than almost any other European thus describes the Rajahs: "Ces sortes de rois barbares n'ont aucun véritable générosité, et ne sont guère retenus par la foi qu'ils ont promise, ne regardant qu'à leurs intérêts présents, sans soucier même aux malheurs qui leur peuvent arriver de leur perfidie et de leur brutalité." *Révol des Etats Mogol*, p. 174. "The ryots have every reason to dread the prevalence of the Mahratta power; of that power which yields them up to the tyranny and oppression of their chiefs; which affords no protection to its subjects; which is perpetually at war with its neighbours; and which has, in effect, laid waste the greatest part of Hindostan." Sir H. Strachey Report as Judge of Circuit Fifth Report of the Committee on India Affairs 1810 p. 568 sect. 17. "La politique de leurs princes doit tenir de leur gouvernement.—D'une main on les voit signer une traité et de l'autre ils jurent la perte de celui avec lequel ils sont alliance. Anquetil D'Opperon Zendavesta,卷之二。" The annals of Persia" says Mr. Scott Waring, "contain little more than a uniform tale of wretchedness and misery of murder and treachery; and the mind wearied and disgusted with this uniformity of vice is hurried away to a contemplation of similar causes and events." *Tour to Sheeraz*, p. 67.

¹ There can be no rational doubt that what by European eyes has been seen to be the detail of government, in the hands of the Hindus though under Mogul principals, was a fair picture of what had been the detail of government under Hindu principals; administration in the hands of Mogul magistrates being, according to all testimony less oppressive than administration in the hands of Hindus. The same intelligent and unexceptionable witness Mr. Orme goes on to say:

"Inflation has conveyed the unhappy system of oppression which prevails in the government of Indostan throughout all ranks of the people, from the highest even to the lowest subject of the empire. Every head of a village calls his habitation the Darbar, and plunders of their meal and roots the wretches of his peasants from him the Zamindar extorts the amall pittoresque of silver which his penitous tyranny has scraped together; the Phoudar seizes upon the greatest share of the Zamindar's collections and then secures the favour of the Nabob by voluntary contributions which less a hum not possessed of the half of his rapines and exactions; the Nabob fixes his rapacious eye on every portion of wealth which appears to his pretender and never fails to carry off part of it; by large deductions from their revenue upon the purchase security from his superiors or maintains his retainers them at the expense of a war—Subject to such oppression property in Indostan is seldom seen to descend to the third generation." Orme on the Government and people of Indostan p. 450 &c. The following is another stroke in the narration of the same person. "The Zamindar plunders the village, and is himself fleeced by the Zamindar; the Zamindar by the

Among other expedients for saving the favourite system, it has been maintained that the petty states and princes in Hindustan were but subordinate parts of one great monarchy, whose sceptre they acknowledged, and mandates they obeyed. There is no definable limit to gratuitous suppositions. If we are to be satisfied with opinions not only void of proof, but opposed by every thing of the nature of proof, attainable upon the subject, we may conjure up one opinion after another; and nothing, except physical impossibility or a defect of ingenuity, can set bounds to our affirmations. In the loose mode of thinking, or rather of talking without thinking, which has prevailed concerning Indian affairs,

BOOK II.
CHAP. 10.

Phousdar, the Phousdar by the Nabob or his Duan. The Duan is the Nabob's head slave and the Nabob compounds on the best terms he can make, with his Subah, or the throne—Wherever this gradation is interrupted, bloodshed ensues" Ibid p 402 "In every city, and in every considerable town, is appointed a guard, directed by proper officers, whose duty it is to coerce and punish all such crimes and misdemeanours as affect the policy of that district, and are at the same time of too infamous or of too insignificant a nature to be admitted before the more solemn tribunal of the Durbar These ministers of justice are called the Catwall, and a building bearing the same name is allotted for their constant resort At this place are perpetually heard the clamours of the populace some demanding redress for the injury of a blow or a bad name, others for a fraud in the commerce of farthings one wants assistance to take, another has taken a thief, some offering themselves as bondsmen, others called upon for witnesses The cries of wretches under the scourge, and the groans of expiring criminals, complete a scene of perfect misery and confusion After these employments of the day, parties are sent from the Catwall to patrol and watch through the town by night In such governments, where the superiors are lost to all sense of humanity, the most execrable of villainies are perpetrated by this institution, designed to prevent them The Catwall enters into treaty with a band of robbers, who receive from hence the intelligence necessary to direct their exploits, and in return pay to it a stipulated portion of their acquisitions besides the concessions necessary to secure impunity when detected, one part of the band is appointed to break into houses, another assaults the traveller upon the road, a third the merchant upon the rivers I have seen these regulated villains commit murders in the face of day, with such desperate audacity as nothing but the confidence of protection could inspire" Ibid. p 452, 453

BOOK II. the existence of feudal institutions in modern Europe
CHAP. 10. has constituted a sufficient basis for the belief of feu-
dal institutions in India though it would have been
just as rational to conclude that, because the Saxon
language forms the basis of most of the languages
of Europe, therefore the Saxon language forms the
basis of the language in India

There are two modes in which the subordination
of a number of petty princes to a great one may
take place. The inferior states may exist merely as
conquered, enslaved countries, paying tribute to a
foreign government, obeying its mandates, and crouching
under its lash. A second mode would be, where
the inferior states were connected together by confed-
eracy, and acknowledged a common head for the
sake of unity, but possessed the right of deliberating
in common upon common concerns. It may with
confidence be pronounced that in neither mode is the
supposed effect compatible with the state of civiliza-
tion in Hindustan.

To retain any considerable number of countries in
subjection, preserving their own government and
their own sovereigns, would be really arduous even
where the science of government were the best under-
stood. To suppose it possible in a country where the
science of government is in the state indicated by the
laws and institutions of the Hindus, would be in the
highest degree extravagant. Even the Romans them-
selves, with all the skill which they possessed,
retained their provinces in subjection only by sending
thither their own governors and their own armies
and superseding entirely the ancient authorities of
the country. The moderation of conquering without
seizing, is a phenomenon so rarely exemplified in
the most civilized times, that to suppose it universal
in India, is to make a supposition in contradiction to

the known laws of human affairs, and even to particular experience. Wherever an Indian sovereign is able to take possession, he hastens to take it. Wherever he can make a plundering incursion, though unable to retain, he ravages and destroys. Now it sometimes happens that a neighbouring prince, too weak to prevent or chastise these injuries, endeavours to purchase exemption from them by a composition. This, in the language of the Mahrattas, who, in modern times, have been almost the only people in India in a situation to exact it, is called *Chout*, of which the standard is a fourth part of the revenues of the district liable to be over-run. It has in several instances, and these abundantly recent ones, been payed for certain districts by the British government itself, without the most distant idea of any lordship paramount in the Mahrattas. It is abundantly evident that this species of subordination, if subordination it can be called, never could have extended far; never could reach beyond the countries immediately contiguous to that from which the chance of mischief arose.

A confederation of princes, similar to that which was exemplified in Germany, and which no combination of circumstances has elsewhere produced, is a supposition, still more opposed to experience. Of all the results of civilization, that of forming a combination of different states, and directing their powers to one common object, seems to be one of the least consistent with the mental habits and attainments of the Hindus.¹ It is the want of this power of combina-

¹ They have always allowed themselves to be conquered in detail, just as the tribes of Gauls and Germans, by the Romans. Gaul, however, cost Julius Cæsar himself five years to subdue, and it several times carried fire and sword to the gates of Rome. The Gauls must have known much more of the art of war than the Hindus. See the fine generalship of Vercingetorix described by the conqueror himself.

BOOK II. tion which has rendered India so easy a conquest to all invaders and enables us to retain, so easily, that dominion over it which we have acquired. Where is there any vestige in India of that deliberative assembly of princes, which in Germany was known by the name of the Diet? Where is there any memorial of that curious constitution by which the union of the German princes was preserved or of those elections by which they chose among themselves him who should be at their head? That nominal homage which the Mahratta chiefs paid to the throne of Seringhee was a temporary circumstance entirely of a different nature. These chiefs were not subordinate princes, but revolted subjects, in a dismembered empire. There was among them no confederacy. When at war with Scindia the British were at peace with the Peshwa and Holkar when they were at war with Holkar they were at peace with the rest. They acknowledged a subordination to the primary seat of government, only because their subjects had been accustomed to look to it and because they were not yet secure of their obedience¹.

Those who affirm the high state of civilization among the Hindus previous to their subjugation to

In the 7th book of his commentaries; and analysed by Gosschaerts *Mémoires Militaires sur les Grecs et les Romains* ch. xxi.— The most remarkable of these new states were the Polygars of Chittenden, Radroog, Harpanelly, Tarkkers with many others of inferior note whose united efforts might have opposed a respectable barrier to Mohammedan encroachment, if united effort could be expected from so less savage perpetually occupied by intestine quarrels." (Wills' II. i. Sketches, p. 63.) Wills says (p. 23) that the Hindu character exhibits but few shades of distinction wheresoever found. It follows that no where is it far removed from the savage state.

¹ To some persons it may be of use to hear that the sober grave sense of Major Renouf makes him reject the theory of union. "It does not give us the most positive assurances that India was divided into a number of kingdoms or states from the time of Haldiman down to that of Asoka" (Renouf's Mem. Inde I. p. xxxii.)

foreigners, are so directly in opposition to evidence, that wherever the Hindus have been always exempt from the dominion of foreigners, there they are uniformly found in a state of civilization inferior to those who have long been the subjects of a Mahomedan throne.¹

It is in no quarter pretended, that the Hindu superstition was ever less gross than it now appears. It is remarkable, that in any quarter it should not be recollect, that superstition necessarily gives way, as civilization advances. Powerful, at an early age, among the Greeks and Romans, it finally ceased to have almost any influence ;² and Goguet had long ago declared, with philosophical truth, that “ we wanted no evidence to prove the ignorance and rudeness of the Greeks in the heroic times, their credulity and their respect for oracles are proofs, more than sufficient. This species of superstition has no force or dominion, but in proportion to the gross ignorance

¹ Witness, Nepaul, and the strong districts along the Malabar coast, where the reign of the Hindu princes had been not at all or very little disturbed. For an account of Nepaul, see the history of Col Kirkpatrick's embassy, and of the Malabar coast, among other works, Voyage de P. Paulin, Sonnerat, and Anquetil Duperron, above all, the Journey of Dr Buchanan, through Mysore, Canara, and Malabar —“ Mr Wilford states, in the ninth volume of the Asiatic Researches, that the kings of Behar or Megadha were for many ages the sovereigns or lords-paramount of India. If such was the case, their descendants must have degenerated exceedingly, for at the period of the Mohammedan invasion, the Raja, instead of heading his army, in defence of his country and religion, shamefully absconded, leaving his capital, then a celebrated seat of Hindu learning (whence its name of Behar) so destitute, that it was taken by a detachment of 200 men, who put a number of the unopposing Brahmens to the sword, and plundered all the inhabitants ” (Hist. of Bengal, by Charles Stewart, Esq p 40) Mr Stewart speaks with judgment. Every thing in the state of India, as it was originally found by the Mahomedans, bears testimony against the fiction of a great monarchy, great prosperity, and great civilization

² “ Quæ anus,” says Cicero, “ tam excors inveniri potest, quæ illa quæ quondam credebantur apud inferos portenta extimescat ?” (De Nat. Deor lib ii cap 2)

BOOK II. tion which has rendered India so easy a conquest to
CHAP 10 all invaders and enables us to retain, so easily, that
 dominion over it which we have acquired. Where is
 there any vestige in India of that deliberative assembly
 of princes, which in Germany was known by the
 name of the Diet? Where is there any memorial of
 that curious constitution by which the union of the
 German princes was preserved or of those elections
 by which they chose among themselves him who
 should be at their head? That nominal homage which
 the Mahratta chiefs paid to the throne of Sevagee
 was a temporary circumstance, entirely of a different
 nature. These chiefs were not subordinate princes,
 but revolted subjects in a dismembered empire.
 There was among them no confederacy. When at
 war with Scindia the British were at peace with the
 Peshwa and Holkar when they were at war with
 Holkar they were at peace with the rest. They
 acknowledged a subordination to the primary seat of
 government, only because their subjects had been
 decustomised to look to it and because they were not
 yet secure of their obedience¹.

Those who affirm the high state of civilization
 among the Hindus previous to their subjugation to

foreigners, are so directly in opposition to evidence, that wherever the Hindus have been always exempt from the dominion of foreigners, there they are uniformly found in a state of civilization inferior to those who have long been the subjects of a Mahomedan thione.¹

It is in no quarter pretended, that the Hindu superstition was ever less gross than it now appears. It is remarkable, that in any quarter it should not be recollect, that superstition necessarily gives way, as civilization advances. Powerful, at an early age, among the Greeks and Romans, it finally ceased to have almost any influence;² and Goguet had long ago declared, with philosophical truth, that “ we wanted no evidence to prove the ignorance and rudeness of the Greeks in the heroic times, their credulity and their respect for oracles are proofs, more than sufficient. This species of superstition has no force or dominion, but in proportion to the gross ignorance

¹ Witness, Nepaul, and the strong districts along the Malabar coast, where the reign of the Hindu princes had been not at all or very little disturbed. For an account of Nepaul, see the history of Col Kirkpatrick's embassy, and of the Malabar coast, among other works, Voyage de P. Paulin, Sonnerat, and Anquetil Duperron, above all, the Journey of Dr Buchanan, through Mysore, Canara, and Malabar — “ Mr Wilford states, in the ninth volume of the Asiatic Researches, that the kings of Behar or Megadha were for many ages the sovereigns or lords-paramount of India. If such was the case, their descendants must have degenerated exceedingly, for at the period of the Mohammedan invasion, the Raja, instead of heading his army, in defence of his country and religion, shamefully absconded, leaving his capital, then a celebrated seat of Hindu learning (whence its name of Behar) so destitute, that it was taken by a detachment of 200 men, who put a number of the unopposing Brahmins to the sword, and plundered all the inhabitants” (Hist of Bengal, by Charles Stewart, Esq p 40) Mr Stewart speaks with judgment. Every thing in the state of India, as it was originally found by the Mahomedans, bears testimony against the fiction of a great monarchy, great prosperity, and great civilization

² “ Quæ anus,” says Cicero, “ tam execors inveniri potest, quæ illa quæ quondam credebantur apud inferos portenta extimescat?” (De Nat. Deor. lib ii cap 2)

BOOK II of the people witness the savages, who do not un-
CHAP 10 dertake any thing till they have previously consulted
 their divines and their oracles." ¹

So many regulations are found in the Hindu codes of law respecting seasons of calamity seasons when it is supposed that a great portion of the people are without the means of subsistence, that those dreadful visitations must be very frequent. From which soever of these two great causes, famine, or the ravages of war, the frequency of those calamities arose it equally bars the supposition of good government and high civilization ²

If we apply the reflection, which has been much admired, that if a man were to travel over the whole world he might take the state of the roads, that is, the means of internal communication in general as a measure of the civilization a very low estimate will be formed of the progress of the Hindus "In India," says Rennel "the roads are little better than paths, and the rivers without bridges" ³ "In Mollabar," says Dr Buchanan speaking of the wretched state of the roads "even cattle are little used for the transportation of goods, which are generally carried by porters." ⁴ The Emperor Shah Jahan constructed certain roads in Bengal which were celebrated as prodigies but the remains of them Dr Tennant

remarks, sufficiently manifest that they can never have been good, and the admiration they excited proves nothing except the wretched condition of every thing, under the name of road, which had been known in India before.¹ Another fact, of much importance, is, that a Mahomedan sovereign was the first who established Choultries; that is, Caravanseras, or houses of reception for travellers upon the road, of which, till that period, they had no experience. "This fact," says Mr. Forster, "also recorded in Dow's history, is well known amongst the natives."²

Among the pretensions received without examination, that of enormous riches found in India, by the first Mahomedan conquerors, requires particular attention. If those accounts had not far exceeded all reasonable bounds, it would have been a matter of difficulty, to prove the falsehood of them; except to those who were capable of estimating one circumstance, in any state of society, by its analogy with the rest. As the amount, however, stated by those authors whose testimony has been adopted, by Ferishta, for example, followed by Dow, far exceeds the bounds not of probability only, but of credibility, and affords decisive evidence of that Eastern exaggeration which in matters of history disdains to be guided by fact, the question is left free of any considerable difficulty.³ These accounts refute themselves. We have, therefore, no testimony on the subject; for all that is presented to us in the shape of testimony betrays itself to be merely fiction. We are left to our knowledge of circumstances, and to the inferences which they support. Now if the preceding induction, embracing the circumstances of Hindu society, is to be

¹ Tennant's Indian Recreations, II 13, 14, 323

² Forster's Travels, I 74 — Tennant's Indian Recreations, II 69

³ See some observations on Dow, by Mr. Edward Scott Waring, *Tour to Sheeraz*, p. 15

BOOK II relied on, it will not be disputed, that a state of poverty
CHAP. 10 and wretchedness, as far as the great body of the people
 are concerned must have prevailed in India, not
 more in the times in which it has been witnessed by
 Europeans than the times which preceded. A gilded
 throne, or the display of gold, silver and precious
 stones, about the seat of a court does not invalidate
 this inference. Only there where gold and silver are
 scarce can the profuse display of them about the
 monarch's person either gratify the monarch's vanity,
 or dazzle by its rarity the eyes of the multitude.
 Perhaps there are few indications more decisive of a
 poor country and a barbarous age than the violent
 desire of exhibiting the precious metals and precious
 stones, as the characteristic marks and decorations of
 the chief magistrate¹.

The science of political economy places this conclusion on the ground of demonstration. For the people to have been rich in gold and silver, these commodities must have circulated among them in the shape of money. But of gold and silver in the shape of money no nation has more, than what is in proportion to its exchangeable commodities. Now that ever the people of Hindostan were profusely supplied with commodities, every thing in their manners habits government and history concur to disprove. There is besides a well established fact which certains the impossibility of their having abounded in gold and silver. Their commodities were not exchanged by the medium of the precious metals. The traffic of India as in the rudest part of the earth was chiefly a traffic of barter and its taxes as already seen were paid in kind. It was not till the time

¹ See one of the Mohammedan governments in the Persian Gol Waliyeh. "There prevail'd also at that time of a Kingdom in which sprung a hawkish tribe who carried the most profuse display." (Itame-i-Slet bei p. 63.)

of Akber that gold or silver was coined for circulation, in the principal part of India, antecedently to that period small pieces of copper were the only coin.¹ Up to the present hour, when the real signs of riches and civilization are but just beginning to be understood, nothing has been more common with rash and superficial travellers, than to set down lofty accounts of the riches of almost every new country to which they repaired.²

¹ See the Analysis of Tooril Mull's System of Finance, in British India Analysed, 1 191 These copper pieces were called pulsah or feloos, sixteen of which were reckoned equal to a Tunkah of base silver, a sort of coin, or rather medal, sometimes struck, at the pleasure of the king, not for use, but to make presents to foreign ambassadors, and others "Trade must, therefore," says the author, "have been carried on chiefly by barter, the rents for the most part paid in kind"—In the Deccan, a gold and silver coin was known earlier, which the same author thinks must have been introduced by the intercourse of the Persians and Arabians, to whom the use of coin had been known nearly a thousand years before (*Ibid* p 191) See an instructive dissertation on this point in "Researches on India," by Q. Craufurd, Esq 1 36—80 Yet this author, p 80—84, is a firm believer in the great riches of India

² Agatharchides gives the most magnificent description of the riches of the Sabians "Their expence of living rivals the magnificence of princes Their houses are decorated with pillars glistening with gold and silver Their doors are crowned with vases, and beset with jewels, the interior of their houses corresponds in the beauty of their outward appearance, and all the riches of other countries are here exhibited in a variety of profusion" (See the account extracted and translated, in Vincent's Periplus, part 1 p 33 See also Strabo, lib xvi p 778) In the barbarous state of the ancient Russian court at Moscow, there was the highest degree of magnificence and splendour The Earl of Carlisle, giving an account of his embassy says, that he could see nothing but gold and precious stones, in the robes of the Czar, and his courtiers — The treasure of Sardanapalus was a thousand myriads of talents of gold, at the lowest estimation, 44,174,999,760^l (Herodot lib ii cap 150, Athenæi Deipnosoph lib xii, Gibbon sur la Monarchie des Medes, Musæl Works, 8vo Ed m 68)—"What is said to be given by David (1 Chron xxii 14, 15, 16, and xxix 3, 4, 5,) and contributed by his princes xxix 6, 7, 8,) toward the building of the temple at Jerusalem, if valued by the Mosæl talents, exceeded the value of 800,000,000^l of our money" (Prideaux, Connexion of the History of the Old and New Testament, 1 5 Edit 5th) The Arcadian who was sent ambassador to the court of the king of Persia, in the days of Agesilaus, saw through

BOOK II As rude nations, still more than civilized, are incessantly harassed by the dangers, or following the gains of war, one of the first applications of knowledge is, to improve the military art. The Hindus have, at no period, been so far advanced in knowledge, as even to be aware of the advantage of discipline, of those regular and simultaneous movements, upon which, in skilled warfare almost every thing depends. "In the Hindu armies," says Franklin "no idea of discipline ever existed" ¹ "The rudeness of the military art in Indostan" says Mr Orme, "can scarce be imagined but by those who have seen it. The infantry consists of a multitude of people assembled together without regard to rank and file" ²

⁴ Franklin's Life of George Thomas p. 103

* Orme on the Government and People of Hindostan p. 420. The exquisite ignorance and stupidity of the Mysoreans in the art of war while yet a purely Hindu people is strongly remarked by Orme I 207 In the following description appears the simplicity of the fortification of Hindu towns : "A place that hath eight cms in length and breadth and on the skirts of which on all the four sides, is a ditch and above the ditch on all the four sides a wall or parapet, and on all the four sides of it are bamboo and on the east or north side thereof a hollow or covered way such place is called Nigher or a city; in the same manner if it hath four rows in length and breadth is is called Gherbut or a small city" Gentoo Code ch xiv See also Motte's Journey to Orissa, As. An Rec I 51 57.— The fortifications of places of the first order for merely mounted and in many places still consist, in one or two thick walls, flanked with round or triangular towers. A wide and deep ditch is on the out. but as the Hindus are unskillful in the construction of fortifications they also provide a causeway from the gate of the town over the ditch." The Able Dabw p. 41.—See a curious testimony to the imperfection of the military art among the Mahraozzi (Brooghton's Letters from a Mahraozzi Camp p. 107 180); and another still more remarkable is the stretched gun made of the stiffest three boated coopers; it is so ground as to shoot a ball 2200 ft with accuracy which according to Mr Brooghton satisfies their title even to p. 17

Even medicine and surgery, to the cultivation of BOOK II.
which so obvious and powerful an interest invites, had CHAP. 10.
scarcely, beyond the degree of the most uncultivated tribes, attracted the rude understanding of the Hindus. Though the leisure of the Brahmens has multiplied books, on astrology, on the exploits of the gods, and other worthless subjects, to such a multitude, "that human life," says Sir W Jones, "would not be sufficient to make oneself acquainted with any considerable part of Hindu literature,"¹ he yet confesses, there is "no evidence that in any language of Asia, there exists one original treatise on medicine, considered as a science."² Surgery, says an author, who believes in the high civilization of the Hindus, is unknown among that people. In the case of gunshot, or sabre wounds, all they did was to wash the wound, and tie it up with fresh leaves; the patient, during the period of convalescence, eating nothing but the water gruel of rice.³

while "possessing so many advantages, they voluntarily bend their necks to one of the most galling yokes in the world" Ibid p 133

¹ *Asiat Res* i 354.

² Ibid iv 159

³ *Craufurd's Sketches* Sir William Jones says, "We may readily believe those who assure us, that some tribes of wandering Tartars had real skill in applying herbs and minerals to the purpose of medicine," the utmost pretended extent of the medical science of the Hindus. *As Res* ii 40 See Tennant's *Indian Recreations*, for some important details, i 357, Buchanan's *Journey through Mysore*, &c i 336 — "Medicine," says the last intelligent observer, "in this country has indeed fallen into the hands of charlatans equally impudent and ignorant" Ibid. "There are not indeed wanting several persons who prescribe in physic, play upon a variety of musical instruments, and are concerned in some actions and performances which seem at least to suppose some skill in nature or mathematics Yet all this is learned merely by practice, long habit, and custom, assisted for the most part with great strength of memory, and quickness of invention" (Shaw's *Travels*, speaking of the people of Barbary, p 263) The good sense of Colonel Wilks has made that instructive writer use the following terms "The golden age of India, like that of other regions, belongs exclusively to the poet In the sober investigation of facts, this imaginary era recedes still farther and farther at every stage of the inquiry,

BOOK II
CHAP. 10

In comparing them with other people, it cannot, in one word, be declared with which of the nations, more familiar to Europeans, the Hindus, in point of civilization may be regarded as on a level because in comparison with those whom they most nearly approach while inferior to them in some, they are superior, in other respects. Should we say that the civilization of the people of Hindustan and that of the people of Europe, during the feudal ages, is not far from equal, we shall find upon a close inspection, that the Europeans were superior, in the first place notwithstanding the vices of the papacy, in religion and notwithstanding the defects of the schoolmen, in philosophy. They were greatly superior notwithstanding the defects of the feudal system, in the institutions of government and in laws. Even their poetry if the observance of nature if the power of moving the affections, or even ingenuity of invention, be regarded as the marks of excellence is beyond all comparison preferable to the poetry of the Hindus. That, in war, the Hindus have always been greatly

inferior to the warlike nations of Europe, during the BOOK II.
middle ages, it seems hardly necessary to assert.¹ CHAP. 10
In some of the more delicate manufactures, however,
particularly in spinning, weaving, and dyeing, the
Hindus, as they rival all nations, so they no doubt
surpass all that was attained by the rude Europeans.
In the fabrication, too, of trinkets; in the art of po-
lishing and setting the precious stones, it is possible,
and even probable, that our impatient and rough
ancestors did not attain the same nicety which is dis-
played by the patient Hindus. In the arts of paint-
ing and sculpture, we have no reason to think that
the Europeans were excelled by the Hindus. In ar-
chitecture, the people who raised the imposing struc-
tures which yet excite veneration in many of the an-
cient cathedrals, were not left behind by the builders
of the Indian pagodas.² The agriculture of the Eu-

¹ The barbarians from Germany and Scythia quickly learned the discipline of the Roman armies, and turned their own arts against the legions. See Gibbon, vii 377. The Hindus have never been able, without European officers, to avail themselves of European discipline.

² The monastery of Bangor, demolished by Adelstrijd, the first king of Northumberland, was so extensive, that there was a mile's distance from one gate of it to another, and it contained two thousand one hundred monks who are said to have been there maintained by their own labour (Hume's England, i 41) "Les Etrusques, prédeesseurs des Romains, et les premiers peuples de l'Italie sur lesquels l'histoire jette quelque lueur paroissent avoir devancé les Grecs dans la carrière des sciences et des arts, bien qu'ils n'aient pas pu, comme leurs successeurs, la parcourir toute entière. Les poètes ont placé au milieu d'eux l'âge d'or sous le règne de Saturne, et leurs fictions n'ont voilé qu'à demi la vérité — Comme nous ne savons pas même le nom des écrivains Etrusques ou Tyrrheniens, et que ces peuples ne nous sont connus que par quelques fragments d'historiens Grecs et Latins, ils resteront toujours enveloppés d'une grande obscurité. Cependant nous avons une indication de leur puissance, dans les murailles colossales de Volterra, de leur goût, dans les vases qui nous sont restés d'eux, de leur savoir, dans le culte de Jupiter Elicius, auquel ils attribuaient l'art qu'ils connaissent et que nous avons retrouvé, d'éviter et de diriger la foudre." Simonde de Sismondi, Hist des Rep Ital Intro 2 p iii These Tuscans cannot have been advanced beyond the stage of semi-

BOOK II ropeans, imperfect as it was, surpassed exceedingly
CHAP 10. that of the Hindus for with the climate and soil of most of the countries of Europe, agriculture, so imperfect as that of India, could not have maintained the population. In point of manners and character, the manliness and courage of our ancestors, compared with the slavish and dastardly spirit of the Hindus, place them in an elevated rank. But they were inferior to that effeminate people in gentleness, and the winning arts of address. Our ancestors however, though rough, were sincere but, under the glosing exterior of the Hindu, lies a general disposition to deceit and perfidy. In fine, it cannot be doubted that, upon the whole the gothic nations, as soon as they became a settled people, exhibit the marks of a superior character and civilization to those of the Hindus.¹

barbarous; and yet here are proofs of a progress in the arts, with which the Hindus have nothing to compare.—The Afghauns use a water mill for grinding their corn. "It is also used in the north of India, under the Sreenugger hills; but, in general no water-mills are known in India where all grain is ground with the hand." Jephinstone's Caubul p. 207

¹ The Hindus are often found to be orderly and good servants at Calcutta Madras &c. This is but a fallacious proof of civilization. Hear Lord Macartney in his account of Russia. "All the inhabitants of Siberia, Cauc, and the eastern provinces of Russia to the sea of Kamtschatka who are not Christians, are confounded under the general name of Tartars. Many of these come to the capital in order to procure employment, either as workmen or domestics and are exceedingly sober acute dexterous and faithful." Burton's Life of Lord Macartney i. 26. "Calmuck servants are greatly esteemed all over Russia for their intelligence and fidelity." Mr Heber's Journal in Clarke's Travels in Russia, p. 31. "I recollect" adds Dr Clarke "seeing some of them in that capacity among English servants in Petersburg. The most remarkable instance ever known of an ex-patriated Calmuck was that of an one employed by the Earl of Darnum whom I saw (a second Anachor) from the plains of Scythia executing most beautif. Ides gno among the ruins of Athens. Some Italian family had previously sent him to finish his studies in Rome where he acquired the highest perfections in drawing. He had the peculiar features and many of the manners of the native Calmucks." Ibid. The negroes, when pro-

No one can take an accurate survey of the different BOOK II.
nations of Asia, and of their different ages, without ^{CHAP 10.} remarking the near approaches they make to the same stage of civilization. This gives a peculiar interest and importance to the inquiry respecting the Hindus. There can be no doubt that they are in a state of civilization very nearly the same with that of the Chinese, the Persians, and the Arabians ; who, together, compose the great branches of the Asiatic population; and of which the subordinate nations, the Japanese, Cochin-chinese, Siamese, Burmans, and even Malays and Tibetans, are a number of corresponding and resembling offsets.

With regard to former ages, it is true, that the religion and several circumstances in the outward forms of society, have been altered in Persia, since the days of Darius ; but the arts, the sciences, the literature, the manners, the government, concur to prove, in a remarkable manner, the near approach of the two periods to the same points of civilization. The ancient Persians, too, there is reason to believe, were placed in

perly treated, make faithful, affectionate, and good servants —But it is more than doubtful whether the Hindus do in reality make those good servants we have heard them called Dr Gilchrist says (Preface to his Hindostanee Dictionary, printed at Calcutta, 1787, p 27)—and Lord Teignmouth repeats, (Considerations, &c on communicating to the Natives of India the knowledge of Christianity, p 82) “that he cannot hesitate about believing the fact—that among a thousand servants of all descriptions whom he had trusted and employed, he had the luck to meet with one only whom he knew to be upright in his conduct” By the author of that interesting little book, entitled, Sketches of India, or Observations descriptive of the Scenery, &c in Bengal, written in India, in the years 1811, 1812, 1813, 1814, p 13, we are told that when you are travelling in India, “An object of attention, which must excite peculiar attention in every honourable mind, is the thefts and depredations which are apt to be committed at every bazar or market, and indeed whenever opportunity offers, both by your own servants and the boatmen Astonishing as this may seem, it is an undoubted fact, that these people pillage every step they take, and, to escape the just indignation of the sufferers, shelter themselves under the name of their innocent master, to whom these poor wretches are often afraid to refer ”

BOOK II nearly the same state of society with the people whom
CHAP. 10 they succeeded the Chaldeans Assyrians, and Babylonians. In contemplating therefore, the state of Hindustan curiosity is very extensively gratified As the manners, institutions, and attainments of the Hindus, have been stationary for many ages in beholding the Hindus of the present day we are beholding the Hindus of many ages past and are carried back as it were into the deepest recesses of antiquity Of some of the oldest nations, about which our curiosity is the most alive and information the most defective we acquire a practical, and what may be almost delineated a personal knowledge by our acquaintance with a living people, who have continued on the same soil from the very times of those ancient nations partake largely of the same manners and are placed at nearly the same stage in the progress of society By conversing with the Hindus of the present day we in some measure converse with the Chaldeans and Babylonians of the time of Cyrus with the Persians and Egyptians of the time of Alexander

A judicious observer of Asiatic manners declares that "The leading customs of the various nations of Asia are similar or but weakly diversified When they sit the legs are crossed or bent under them they perform topical ablutions before and after meals in which no knife or spoon is used unless the diet be wholly liquid they invariably adopt the like modes of performing natural evacuations"

The account which Cibber presents us from Herodian and Ammianus Marcellinus of the art of war among the Persians, in the time of the Roman emperors is an exact description of the art as practised by the Persians and Hindus, and by most of the other nations of Asia at the present day "The science of

war, that constituted the more rational force of Greece BOOK II
and Rome, as it now does of Europe, never made any ^{CHAR 10}
considerable progress in the East Those disciplined
evolutions which harmonize and animate a confused
multitude, were unknown to the Persians They
were equally unskilled in the arts of constructing, be-
sieging, or defending regular fortifications They
trusted more to their numbers than to their courage ;
more to their courage than to their discipline The
infantry was a half-armed, spiritless crowd of pe-
asants, levied in haste by the allurements of plunder.
and as easily dispersed by a victory as by a defeat.
The monarch and his nobles transported into the
camp the pride and luxury of the seraglio Their
military operations were impeded by a useless train of
women, eunuchs, horses, and camels ; and in the
midst of a successful campaign, the Persian host was
often separated or destroyed by an unexpected fa-
mine ”¹

In the system of Zoroaster, and in that of the Brahmens, we find the same lofty expressions concerning the invisible powers of nature, the same absurdity in the notions respecting the creation the same infinite and absurd ritual, the same justness in many ideas respecting the common affairs of life and common morality, the same gross misunderstanding in others ; but a striking resemblance between the two systems, both in their absurdities and perfections The same turn of imagination seems to have belonged to the authors of both , and the same aspect of nature to have continually presented itself , the deformities however of the Hindu system being always the greatest

The Persians, in the time of Cambyses, had judges,

BOOK II select sages, who were appointed for life and whose business it was, according to pre-established laws, to terminate all disputes, and punish crimes. This, like similar circumstances in the state of the Hindus, presents part of the forms of a legal government. These judges, however, when consulted by the king if he might perform an act, on which for fear of popular odium he hesitated to venture, gave a solemn opinion *that for the king of the Persians it was law, to do whatsoever he pleased*¹. "This constitutional maxim" says Gibbon archly, "was not neglected as an useless and barren theory"².

"Like Brimha, the To of the Chinese has various times become incarnate among men and beasts. Hence he is represented in his temples as riding upon dragons, rhinoceroses, elephoots, mules, and asses, dogs, rats, cats, crocodiles, and other amiable creatures, whose figures he fancied and assumed. There are in some of these pagodas, a thousand of these monstrous statues, all most horribly ugly, and ill represented and unlike any thing in heaven or earth or the waters under the earth"³.

Under the reign of credulity, it is instructive to BOOK II.
mark the inconsiderateness of a reflecting writer. ^{CHAP 10.}
After many praises of the Chinese husbandry, such as
those which we have often heard of the agriculture of
the Hindus, Lord Macartney adds, "The plough is
the simplest in the world, has but one handle, is
drawn by a single buffalo, and managed by a single
person without any assistance."¹ And Mr. Barrow
says, "Two thirds of the small quantity of land un-
der tillage is cultivated with the spade or the hoe,
without the aid of draught cattle"²

Even of the principle route from Pekin to Canton,
Lord Macartney remarks; "For horse and foot the
road is excellent, but admits of no wheel carriages."³
Mr. Barrow more explicitly declares, that except near
the capital, and in some few places where the junc-
tion of the grand canal with navigable rivers is inter-
rupted by mountainous ground, there is scarcely a
road in the whole country that can be ranked beyond
a foot path⁴ Even the grand canal itself was opened
by the Tartar conqueror Gingis Khan, in the thir-
teenth century; and that solely with a view to con-
vey the taxes, paid in kind, from the southern part of
the empire to the capital, a great part of them hav-
ing been always lost by the unskilfulness of Chinese
navigation, when conveyed by sea "⁵

Like the Hindus, before the improvements intro-
duced among them by the Moguls, the Chinese have
no coin, above a small one of copper, and the taxes of
that immense empire are paid in kind.⁶

¹ Lord Macartney's Journal, Barrow's Life of Lord Macartney, II 357.

² Barrow's China, p 585 A large portion of the country, wet,
swampy ground, the rich alluvion of rivers, which might be easily
gained, if the Chinese had but the skill Ibid p 70, 83, 208, 533

³ Barrow's Life of Lord Macartney, II 357

⁴ Barrow's China, p 513

⁵ Ibid. p 43

⁶ Ibid p. 561, 499

BOOK II Lord Macartney remarks that the Chinese have no
CHAP. 10 natural philosophy no medical or chirurgical skill
 that a fractured leg is usually attended by death.¹

In the sciences and arts of the Hindus and Chinese there is manifested a near approximation to the same point of advancement. In respect to government and laws the Chinese have to a considerable degree the advantage. As they are a busy people however and have no idle class, whose influence depends upon the wonder they can excite by pretended learning they have multiplied far less than the Hindus those false refinements which a barbarous mind mistakes for science.² Both have made greater progress in the refinement of the useful arts, than in the advancement of science. But in these too the Chinese appear to have the superiority for though it may be doubted whether the Chinese manufacture of silk rivals in delicacy the cotton manufacture of the Hindus, the latter people have nothing to set in competition with the porcelain of the Chinese and in the common works in wood and iron, the Chinese are conspicuously preferable. In the contrivance and use of machinery both are equally simple and rude.³

In the state of the fine arts there is a striking re-

¹ Barrow's *Life of Lord Macartney* p. 363.

² Lord Macartney remarks that the Chinese had a very limited knowledge of mathematics and astronomy "although from some of the printed accounts of China one might be led to imagine that they were well versed in them." Their application of the science of astronomy or astrology (for they have but one word in their language to express both,) induced them at a very remote period to establish a mathematical college or tribunal the date of which is to furnish to the nation an annual calendar somewhat like our *Les Mots d'Amour* with lists of all the lucky and unlucky days of the year predictions of the weather direction for sowing and reaping &c. This branch entirely belongs to the Chinese doctors who are chosen for the purpose from among the most celebrated physicians of the nation. Ibid. p. 421. See too Barrow's *China* p. 221 291 272 25 271

³ Barrow's *China* p. 311 312

semblance between the two nations. "The architecture of the Chinese," says Mr. Barrow, "is void of taste, grandeur, beauty, solidity, or convenience; their houses are merely tents, and there is nothing magnificent in the palace of the emperor."¹ Both nations were good at imitation.² Both were extremely defective in invention. In painting and sculpture they were ignorant of perspective, of attitude, and proportion

Even in manners, and in the leading parts of the moral character, the lines of resemblance are strong. Both nations are to nearly an equal degree tainted with the vices of insincerity; dissembling, treacherous, mendacious, to an excess which surpasses even the usual measure of uncultivated society. Both are disposed to excessive exaggeration with regard to every thing relating to themselves. Both are cowardly and unfeeling. Both are in the highest degree conceited of themselves, and full of affected contempt for others. Both are, in the physical sense, disgustingly unclean in their persons and houses.³

¹ Barrow's China, p 101—330

² Ibid p 306, 323

³ Similar traces are found in the following character of the Persians, drawn by a recent observer, Mr Scott Waring, Tour to Sheeraz "Mean and obsequious to their superiors and to their equals, if they have a prospect of advantage, but invariably arrogant and brutal in their behaviour towards their inferiors, always boasting of some action they never performed, and delighted with flattery, though they are aware of the imposition I have repeatedly heard them compliment a person in his hearing, or in the presence of some one who would convey this adulation to his ears, and the instant that he has departed, their praises have turned into abuse" p 101 "Not the least reliance is to be placed on their words or most solemn protestations" "They conceive it their duty to please, and to effect this, they forget all sentiments of honour and good faith" "The Persians have but a faint notion of gratitude, for they cannot conceive that any one should be guilty of an act of generosity, without some sinister motive" p 103 "Philosophers have held it for a maxim, that the most notorious liar utters a hundred truths for every falsehood This is not the case in Persia; they are unacquainted with the *beauty of truth*, and only think

With respect to the inhabitants of another quarter of Asia Turner, in his account of the embassy to Tibet, informs us, that the deportment of the Rajah of Bootan was exceedingly urbane, and his sentiments breathed that sort of humanity which seems to flow from the belief of the metempsychosis. "My food, said he, consists of the simplest articles grain, roots of the earth and fruits. I never eat of any thing which has had breath, for so I should be the indirect cause of putting an end to the existence of animal life, which by our religion is strictly forbidden."¹

Though frequent ablutions are performed for religious purposes, the same author informs us that the people in their persons are extremely unclean².

"Bootan presents to the view nothing but the most mishapen irregularities mountains covered with eternal verdure, and rich with abundant forests of large and lofty trees. Almost every favourable aspect of them, coated with the smallest quantity of soil is cleared and adapted to cultivation by being shelved into horizontal beds not a slope or narrow slip of

of it when it is likely to advance their interests." "The generality of Persons are sunk in the lowest state of profligacy and infamy; and they seldom hesitate alluding to crimes which are at hoist and detested in every civilized country in the universe." The following is an important observation. (*Voyage dans l'Empire Ottoman l'Egypte et la Terre sainte C. A. Ol. ier r. 1790.*) "En Europe il y a un espace immense entre les habitans des grandes villes et ceux des campagnes entre l'homme bien élevé et celui qui ne l'est pas. En Terre sainte nous n'avons pas trouvé que cet espace fut le en grand; la classe pauvre des villes differe tres-peu pour lespens, les connaissances et les mœurs de l'habitant des campagnes, et il n'y a pas non plus un grande difference dans les villes entre les riches et les pauvres. Ce qui presque partout le malice conduise la même all. La même main est de se captiver; ce sont les mêmes idées et j'osais presque dire le même à instruction. Les habitants des campagnes celiouls-mêmes qu'il se trouve toute l'année sous la terre et qui conduisent ces troupeaux d'enfumage à un autre endroit a peu près d'le plus rau plus pr. et je n'aurai que le culte attendre à tout un peu elev et a grande culture."

¹ Turner's *Lectures on Tibet* book 1, ch. 1

Land between the ridges lies unimproved. There is BOOK II.
scarcely a mountain whose base is not washed by ^{CHAP. 10.}
some rapid torrent, and many of the loftiest bear
populous villages, amidst orchards, and other planta-
tions on their summits and on their sides. It com-
bines in its extent the most extravagant tracts of
rude nature and laborious art."¹

Yet they have no discipline in their armies. In
their mode of warfare, stratagem is more practised
than open assault.²

The appearance of the capital Teshoo Loomboo
was in a high degree magnificent, and together with
the palace afforded proofs of a progress in the arts
which vied with that of Hindustan and China.³

The inhabitants of the great Peninsula, to the
eastward of the Ganges, discover, as far as known,
the uniform marks of a similar state of society and
manners. The Cochin-Chinese, for example, who
are merely a separate community of the Chinese
race, appear by no means in civilization behind the
Chinese and Hindus. A traveller from whom we
have obtained a sensible though short account of
some of the more striking phenomena of the country,
both physical and moral, informs us, that it is "one
of the most fruitful in the world. In many parts,"
he says, "the land produces three crops of grain in
the year. All the fruits of India are found here in
the greatest perfection, with many of those of China.
No country in the East produces richer or a greater
variety of articles proper for carrying on an advan-
tageous commerce, cinnamon, pepper, cardamoms,

¹ Turner's Embassy to Tibet, book II ch II. The agriculture is
promoted by artificial irrigation, the water being conveyed to the fields
through hollow cylinders, formed of the trunks of trees. Ibid. book I,
ch VI.

² Ibid.

³ Ibid. book II. ch II.

BOOK II silk, cotton, sugar, Agula wood, Japan wood, no-
CnAP 10 ry, &c."¹

The following paragraph describes an important article of accommodation to which no parallel can be found in all China and Hindustan "In this valley we passed through three or four pretty villages pleasantly situated in which as well as on other parts of the road were public houses where tea fruits, and other refreshments are sold to travellers. At noon we alighted at one of them, and partook of a dinner which consisted of fowls cut into small pieces, dressed up with a little greens and salt some fish &c."²

The appearance of the king's court was not only splendid but decorous and even the little of the country which the travellers saw discovered to them large cities with streets, laid out on a regular plan,

¹ Narrative of a Voyage in Cochinchina in 1778 by Mr Chapman in the Asiatic Annual Register for 1801 Miscellaneous Tracts, p 83

² Ibid. p. 70 Of China Mr Barrow says: There are no inns in any part of this vast empire or to speak more correctly (for there are resting-places) no inhabited and furnished houses where, in consideration of paying a sum of money a traveller may purchase the refreshments of comfortable rest and of allaying the calls of hunger. The state of society admits of no such accommodation. What they call inns are mean hotels consisting of bare walls where perhaps a traveller may procure his cup of tea for a piece of copper money and permission to pass the night; but this is the extent of the comfort which such places hold out" Barrow's China p. 421 Such is the description of the Indian chootries; empty buildings into which the traveller may retire but into which he must carry with him every accommodation of which he stands in need "The hans or Caravansers" says Volney speaking of another Asiatic country Syria, afford only cells for the accommodation of travellers with bare walls, dust and sometimes scorpions. The keeper gives the lodger a key and a mat and he must find every thing else himself" Travels in Egypt, &c. ii 420 In the inland towns and villages of India there is, for the most part a house set apart for the reception of strangers with a proper officer (the Vish vik I think they call him) & servant. Here persons are lodged and entertained for one night in the best manner the place will afford at the expense of the community *Chaw's Travels* Pref. p. ii

paved with flat stones, and having well-built brick houses on each side.¹

BOOK II-

CHAP. 10

The people on the western side of that Peninsula, whether known by the name of Burmans, Peguans, Assamese, or Siamese, partake strongly of the Hindu character, and exhibit only a variation of the religion, laws, institutions, and manners which prevail on the other side of the Ganges. The great difference consists in their having adopted the heresy, or retained the primitive faith of Buddha; and rejected the distinction of castes. But nothing appears among them which would lead to an inference of any inferiority in their progress towards the attainments of civilized life.

The Birmans, we are told by Symes, call their code generally Derma Sath or Sastra; it is one among the many commentaries on Menu. "The Birman system of jurisprudence," he adds, "is replete with sound morality, and in my opinion is distinguished above every other Hindoo commentary for perspicuity and good sense. It provides specifically for almost every species of crime that can be committed, and adds a copious chapter of precedents and decisions, to guide the inexperienced in cases where there is doubt

¹ Chapman's Voyage, ubi supra, p 73, 76 Sir George Staunton says, Embassy of Lord Macartney, i. 389 "The Cochin-Chinese seemed sufficiently dexterous and attentive, though with scarcely any principles of science, to make, on any substances which promised to be of use or comfort to them in private life, such trials and experiments, as were likely to produce beneficial results In the culture of their lands, and in the few manufactures exercised amongst them, they were not behind nations where the sciences flourish" "Though these people possessed not scientifically the art of reducing the metallic ore into the metal, they had attained the practice, for example, of making very good iron, as well as of manufacturing it afterwards, into match-locks, spears, and other weapons Their earthenware was very neat Their dexterity appeared in every operation they undertook." p 387

BOOK II and difficulty Trial by ordeal and imprecation are
CHAP. 10 the only absurd passages in the book "¹"

"There is no country of the East, says the same author, 'in which the royal establishment is arranged with more minute attention than in the Birmon court it is splendid without being wasteful, and numerous without confusion'"²

Their literature appears to be as extensive and curious, as that of the Hindus They have numerous, and copious libraries the books, says Colonel Sykes, are "upon divers subjects more on divinity than on any other but history, music, medicine, painting, and romance, had their separate treatises"³

Of the kingdom of Assam we possess not many accounts but what we have yield evidence to the same effect In the Alcinegeernamch of Mohammed Cazim, is a description of Assam, which has been translated by Henry Vansittart, Esq and presented to us in several publications We are there told that the country, at least in many places is "well inhabited and in an excellent state of tillage that it presents on every side charming prospects of ploughed fields harvests gardens, and groves."⁴

"As the country is overflowed in the rainy season, a high and broad causeway has been raised for the convenience of travellers from Salagerh to Ghergong

¹ Sykes' Embassy to A. & B. 3rd—The following 100, are abundantly similar to our journal of stores in the character of the Hind The Burmans in some points of their disposition do play the serenity of barbarians and in others all the humanity and tend to a kind of hell fire They kill at the moment are sentance on the moment As in a madabal on marks them by for they spare neither sex nor age But at home they assume a different character It d

² It I.

³ It I. p. 96

⁴ See Domes; one of the King em of Assam the Awal An Reg. for 8^t 1800 Mac Bruce's Travels p. 47

which is the only uncultivated ground to be seen . BOOK II.
 each side of this road is planted with shady bamboos,^{CHAP. 10}
 the tops of which meet and are entwined "¹ And
 this is more than seems to have been known in Hin-
 dustan, before the improvements introduced by the
 Mohammedan conquerors

" The silks are excellent, and resemble those of
 China They are successful in embroidering with
 flowers, and in weaving velvet, and tautband, which
 is a species of silk of which they make tents and
 kennels "² .

The bigotted and intolerant Mussulman, however; who finds no excellence where he finds not his faith; discovers no qualities but evil in the minds of the Assamese. " They do not adopt," lie says, " any mode of worship practised either by heathens or Mahomedans , nor do they concur in any of the known sects, which prevail amongst mankind They are a base and unprincipled nation, and have no fixed religion ; they follow no rule but that of their own inclinations, and make the approbation of their own vicious minds the test of the propriety of their actions."³ Such are the distorted views presented to an ignorant mind, through the medium of a dark and malignant religion, respecting a people cultivating the ground to great perfection, and forming a dense population. Among other particulars of the vileness which he beheld in them, is the following " The base inhabitants, from a congenial impulse, are fond of seeing and keeping asses, and buy and sell them at a high price."⁴ Yet he speaks in lofty terms of the royal magnificence of the court " The Rajahs of this country have always raised the crest of pride and vain

¹ See Description of the Kingdom of Assam, &c Asiat An Register for 1800, Miscellaneous Tracts, p 43

² Ibid.

³ Ibid p 45

⁴ Ibid

BOOK II glory, and displayed an ostentatious appearance of **CHAR 10.** grandeur, and a numerous train of attendants and servants." And he expresses himself with mingled horror and admiration of the prowess and superiority of the Assamese in war "They have not bowed the head of submission and obedience, nor have they paid tribute or submission to the most powerful monarch but they have curbed the ambition, and checked the conquests, of the most victorious princes of Hindustan" Several armies from Bengal, which had been sent to conquer them, having been cut off of some of which scarce even tidings had ever been received, "the natives of Hindustan consider them wizards and magicians, and pronounce the name of that country in all their incantations and counter charms they say, that every person who sets his foot there is under the influence of witchcraft and cannot find the road to return"¹

The admiration which the Greeks, no very accurate observers of foreign manners, expressed of the Egyptians, and which other nations have so implicitly borrowed at their hands, not a little resembles the admiration among Europeans which has so long prevailed with regard to the Hindus. The penetrating force of modern intelligence has pierced the cloud and while it has displayed to us the state of Egyptian civilization in its true colours exhibits a people who, standing on a level with so many celebrated nations of antiquity Assyrians, Babylonians, Persians, Arabians, correspond in all the distinctive marks of a particular state of society, with the people of Hindustan. The evidence has been weighed by a cool and dispassionate judge in the following manner "I see

¹ See Description of the Kingdom of Assam &c. A. M. de la Motte
et al. *Histoire des Thibetans*, p. 47. 49

nothing," says the President Goguet, "in the Egyptians that can serve to distinguish them in a manner very advantageous; I even think myself authorized to refuse them the greatest part of the eulogies that have been always so liberally bestowed upon them. The Egyptians did invent some arts and some sciences, but they never had the ingenuity to bring any of their discoveries to perfection. I have exposed their want of taste, and I venture to say, of talent, in architecture, in sculpture, and in painting. Their manner of practising physic was absurd and ridiculous. The knowledge they had of geometry and astronomy was but very imperfect. Their discoveries are far enough from entering into any comparison with those which the Greeks made afterwards in those two sciences. In fine, the Egyptians have had neither genius, ardour, nor talent, for commerce, or for the marine and military art."

"As to civil laws, and political constitutions, the Egyptians had indeed some very good ones, but otherwise there reigned in their government a multitude of abuses and essential defects, authorized by the laws and by their fundamental principles of government.

"As to the manners and customs of this people, we have seen to what a height indecency and debauchery were carried in their religious feasts and public ceremonies. The public cult which a nation fixes to honour the Deity, bears the stamp of that nation's character. Neither was the morality of the Egyptians extremely pure; we may even affirm, that it offended against the first rules of rectitude and probity. We see that the Egyptians bore the highest blame of covetousness, of ill faith, of cunning, and of roguery.

"It appears to me to result from all these facts,

BOOK II.
CHAP. 10

BOOK II that the Egyptians were a people industrious enough,
Chap. 10 but, as to the rest, without taste, without genius without discernment a people who had only ideas of grandeur ill understood and whose progress in all the different parts of human knowledge never rose beyond a flat mediocrity, knavish into the bargain, and crafty, soft, lazy, cowardly, and submissive and who, having performed some exploits to boast of in distant times, were ever after subjected by whoever would undertake to subdue them a people again, vain and foolish enough to despise other nations without knowing them Superstitious to excess, singularly addicted to judicial astrology, extravagantly besotted with an absurd and monstrous theology Does not this representation sufficiently authorize us to say that all that science that wisdom, and that philosophy so boasted of in the Egyptian priests was but imposture and juggling capable of imposing only on people so little enlightened or so strongly prejudiced as were anciently the Greeks in favour of the Egyptians "¹"

¹ Goguet *Origin of Laws* part II book vi. ch. 6. He adds "I should be greatly tempted to compare this nation with the Chinese I think a good deal of resemblance and conformity to be perceived between our people and the others" Ibid Had the Hindus been then as fully desirous as they are now he would have found a much more remarkable similarity between them and the Egyptians—Exaggeration was lost in quantity it had in Egypt At the time of the Arabian conquest in the seventh century "We may read" (says C. Bœm ix. 446) "in the best authors that Egypt was crowded with 70 000 cities or 300 000 houses of the Greeks and Arabs the Capital alone contained 40 millions of tributary subjects or twenty millions of citizens and of every ages that is to say hundred millions of people or there were annually paid to the treasury of the Caliph" He is in a note "And this great sum is swallowed without scruple by different Authors not I De Gobineau They might allow the most tenacious and I believe of appear in his time of the Ptolemies an annual income of 183 or near 200 millions of pounds sterlings—agreed as we reckon by the Egyptian or the Arabic 'run talent' If it be wonderful what it is to be said of the lamps swallowed by the

The sagacity of Adam Smith induced him, at an early period of his life, to deny the supposed proof of any high attainments among those ancient nations, and to declare, though with hesitancy, his inclination to the opposite opinion.

“ It was in Greece, and in the Grecian colonies, that the first philosophers of whose doctrine we have any distinct account, appeared. Law and order seem indeed to have been established in the great monarchies of Asia and Egypt, long before they had any footing in Greece : Yet after all that has been said concerning the learning of the Chaldeans and Egyptians, whether there ever was in those nations any thing which deserved the name of science, or whether that despotism which is more destructive of leisure and security than anarchy itself, and which prevailed over all the East, prevented the growth of philosophy, is a question which, for want of monuments, cannot be determined with any degree of precision ”² To leave the subject even in this state of doubt was but a compromise with popular opinion, and with his own imperfect views The circumstances handed down to us, compared with the circumstances of other nations, afforded materials for a very satisfactory determina-

admirers of the Hindus ? Voltaire remarks, “ Que les Egyptiens tant vantés pour leurs lois, leurs connaissances, et leurs pyramides, n’avaient presque jamais été qu’un peuple esclave, superstitieux et ignorant, dont tout le mérite avait consisté à élever des rangs inutiles de pierres les unes sur les autres par l’ordre de leurs tyrans, qu’en bâtiissant leurs palais superbes ils n’avaient jamais su seulement former une voûte, qu’ils ignoraient la coupe de pierres, que toute leur architecture consistait à poser de longues pierres plates sur des piliers sans proportion, que l’ancienne Egypte n’a jamais eu une statue tolerable que de la main des Grecs, que ni les Grecs ni les Romains n’ont jamais daigné traduire un seul livre des Egyptiens, que les elemens de geometrie composés dans Alexandrie le furent par un Grec, etc etc on n’aperçoit dans les lois de l’Egypte que celles d’un peuple très borné ” Voltaire, *Supplement à l’Essai sur les Mœurs, &c Remarque Premier*

¹ *Essay on the History of Astronomy*, p 27

BOOK II tion The opinion by which he supports his disbelief
C H A P 10. of the ancient civilization of Asia is at once brilliant
— tbrophic and profound That "despotism is more
destructive of leisure and security, and more adverse
to the progress of the human mind, than anarchy
itself"

BOOK III.

THE MAHOMEDANS.

CHAP. I.

From the first Invasion of India by the Nations in the North, till the expulsion of the Gaznevide dynasty.

AT the time when the nations of Europe opened ^{BOOK III.} their communication with India, by the Cape of ^{CHAP. 1.} Good Hope, the people whom we have now described had for a number of ages been subject to a race of foreigners. That subjection, though it had not greatly altered the texture of native society, had introduced new forms into some of the principal departments of state; had given the military command to foreigners, and had mixed with the population a proportion of a people differing from them considerably, in manners, character, and religion. The political state of India, at this time, consisted of a Mahomedan government, supported by a Mahomedan force, over a Hindu population

It appears that the people of Hindustan have at all times been subject to incursions and conquest, by the nations contiguous to them on the north-west. The Scythians, that is, the rude nations on the east of Persia, conquered, we are told by Justin, a great part of Asia, and even penetrated as far as Egypt, about

BOOK III 1,500 years before Ninus, the founder of the Assyrian
CHAP. I monarchy And we know that in the vast empire of Darius Hystaspes as much of India was included as constituted one and that the most valuable of his twenty satrapies. The exact limits of the Indian satrapy are unknown But from the account which Herodotus gives of its tribute, far exceeding that of any of the rest, the extent of it cannot have been small Major Rennel supposes that it may have reached as far as Delhi and have included the whole of the Punjab, or country watered by the five branches of the Indus, together with Cabul Canda har, and the tract of country which lies along the Indus to the sea¹

The conquests of Alexander the Great, which succeeded to those of the Persian monarchs seem not to have extended so far in India, as the previous possessions of Darius since his career was stopped on the banks of the Hyphasis, or modern Beynih, the last of the five branches of the Indus whence returning to the Hydaspe, he passed down the Indus to the sea Seleucus the successor of Alexander in Upper Asia, not only received but endeavoured to augment, the acquisitions made by that conqueror in India He gained victories over Sandracottos the sovereign

of a people living on the Ganges. But, as he was BOOK III.
CHAP. 1 recalled to the defence of another part of his dominions against Antigonus, he made peace with the Indian and the limits established between them are not ascertained¹

Among the kingdoms, formed out of the vast empire of Alexander, by the dissensions of his followers, was Bactria. This district was part of that great range of country, on the eastern side of Media and Persia, extending from the lake Aral to the mouths of the Indus, which the power of the Persian monarchs had added to their extensive dominions. The people of this intermediate region seem to have possessed an intermediate stage of civilization between the Tartar or Scythian tribes which bordered with them on the east, and the people of the Assyrian or Persian empire which was contiguous to them on the west. Among these people there is some reason for believing that the Bactrians were distinguished, and at an early period, by superior progress in the knowledge, and other acquirements of civilized men. Among the numerous Zoroasters, with whom Persian story abounds, one is said to have been king of Bactria, contemporary with Ninus, and to have invented magic; that is, to have been the object of admiration on account of his knowledge. Of the eastern nations added to the subjects of the Persian kings, the Bactrians were the nearest to India, and were only separated from it by that range of mountains, in which the Indus and the Oxus find their respective sources. Bactria as well as India were among the parts of the dominions of Alexander

¹ The notices relating to the conquests of Alexander and his successors in India are collected in Robertson's Disquisition concerning Ancient India, and Gillies' History of the World. Strabo and Arrian are the authorities from whom almost every thing we know of the transactions of the Greeks in India, is borrowed.

BOOK III which fell to the share of Seleucus. In the reign,
CHAP 1 however, of his son or grandson the governor of the
 Bactrian province threw off his dependence upon the
 Seleucidae and a separate Greek kingdom was erected
 in that country, about sixty nine years after the
 death of Alexander. The Persian dominions in In-
 dia seem to have shared the fate of Bactria, and to
 have fallen into the hands of the same usurper. The
 Greek sovereigns of Bactria became masters of an
 extensive empire and assumed the proud title of
King of Kings, the distinctive appellation of the
 Persian monarchs in the zenith of their power. They
 carried on various wars with India and extended
 their conquests into the interior of the country. The
 limits of their dominions in that direction we have no
 means of ascertaining. One of those great move-
 ments in central or eastern Tartary, which precipi-
 tates the eastern barbarians upon the countries of the
 west, brought an irresistible torrent of that people
 across the Jaxartes, about 126 years before the
 Christian era, which pouring itself out upon Bactria
 overwhelmed the Greek monarchs after it had
 lasted nearly 130 years.¹

¹ A curious history of the Greek kingdom of Bactria has been com-
 piled by Bayet entitled *Histoire régale et géographique de Bactriane*. In this
 and in Strabo lib. al. II ad lib. xv and Justin lib. alii the only re-
 maining memorials of this kingdom are to be found. The progress of
 the barbarians by whom it was destroyed has been traced by De Guzman
Mémo de l'Acad. xxv. 17 and *Hist. de l'Hum. paup.* Herodotus says
 that those of the Indians whose mode of life most resembled that of the
 Bactrians were the most warlike of all the Indians (T. iii cap. 10)
 which would seem to indicate a nearer affinity between the Hindus
 and their Bactrian neighbours than is generally supposed. There is
 some confusion however in this part of Herodotus, nor is it easy to
 know whether he means the people called Indians on the Indus or
 those beyond the Indus when he says they were like the Bactrians.
 He d. 119 gives them from the Indian Britain, or rather as by us, they
 were contiguous to the city Caesarpolis and the Paetian territory
 and lying near the sea (lib. lii c. p. 102) but (cap. 93 of the same

About the same period that the successors of ^{BOOK III.} Alexander lost the kingdom of Bactria, the misconduct of a governor in the distant provinces bordering on the Caspian Sea, raised up a military chief who excited the rude and turbulent inhabitants to revolt, and laid the foundation of the Parthian kingdom; a power which soon possessed itself of Media, and finally stripped the descendants of Seleucus of almost all that they possessed from the Tigris eastwards. The rebellion of the Parthians is placed about the year 256 before Christ, and the kings of Syria maintained from that time a struggling and declining existence, till they finally yielded to the power of the Romans, and Syria was erected into a province sixty-four years before the commencement of the Christian era.¹

The descendants of the Parthian rebel, known under the title of the Arsacides, held the sceptre of Persia till the year of Christ 226. The possession of empire produced among them, as it usually produces among the princes of the East, a neglect of the duties of government, and subjugation to ease and pleasure; when a popular and enterprising subject, availing himself of the general dissatisfaction, turned the eyes of the nation upon himself, and having dethroned his master, substituted the dynasty of the Sassanides to the house of Arsaces. As usual, the first princes

book) he says that the Paetyan territory is contiguous to Armenia, and the countries on the Euxine Sea Yet in another place (lib iv cap 44) he says that Scylax setting out from the city Caspatyrus, and the Paetyan territory, sailed down the Indus eastward to the sea And Rennel places Caspatyrus and Paetya towards the sources of the Indus, about the regions of Cabul and Cashmere Rennel's Mem Introd p viii Rennel's Herodot sect 12

¹ What is known to us from the Greek and Roman authors, of the Parthian empire, is industriously collected in Gillies' History of the World, from the oriental writers by D'Herbelot, Biblioth Orient ad verla Arsehak, Arminiah See also Gibbon, i 316

BOOK III of this line were active and valiant and their empire
CHAP. 1 extended from the Euphrates to the Jaxartes, and the mountainous ridge which divided the kingdom of Bactria from the Scythians of the East. To what extent their power was carried over the ancient soil of the Indus, does not appear but it is more than probable that the territory west of the Indus, from the time when it was first established into a Persian satrapy, in the reign of Darius, owned no more the caste who sprung from the arm of the Creator. Bactria was numbered as one among the four provinces of the great Chosroes who reigned from the year 531 of the Christian era to the year 571, and was de-nominated King of Persia and of India. The grand son of Chosroes, who was deposed in 628 may be considered as closing the line of the Sasanides for, after a few years of tumult and distraction the irresistible arms of the successors of Mahomet were directed toward Persia and quickly reduced it under the power of the Caliphs.¹

In the year 632 Caled, the lieutenant of Abubeker entered Persia. In a few years the standards of the Faithful were carried to the furthest limits of Bactria, and pushing once more the shepherds of the East beyond the Jaxartes, rendered the empire of the Caliphs in that direction conterminous with the Persian monarchy in its proudest days.²

The possession of empire required as usual but a few generations to relax the minds of the successors of Mahomet, and render them as unfit as their prede-

¹ In Gibbon vol. vii. ii. i. the reader will find a slight sketch correctly but quaintly given of this portion of the Persian history. Gibbon's first object unfeignedly was to inspire admiration of the writers; to impart knowledge of his subject only the second. The results of the Persian records (such they may be called) are carefully collected in D'Herbelot, *Bibliothèque Orient.* under the several titles.

² This is at D'Herbelot, *Bibliothèque Orient.* ad 622.

cessors for any better use of power, than the unres- BOOK III.
trained indulgence of themselves in the pleasures CHAP. I.
which it commands

The tribes of Tartar, or Scythian shepherds, from the centre of Asia, unsettled, fierce, and warlike, had from the earliest ages proved dangerous and encroaching neighbours to the Eastern provinces of Persia. Pushed beyond the Jaxartes and Imaus, by Cyrus, and the more warlike of the successors of Cyrus, they were ever ready, as soon as the reign of a weak prince enfeebled the powers of government, to make formidable incursions, and generally held possession of the provinces which they over-run, till a renewal of vigour in the government made them retire within their ancient limits. We are informed by Polybius that a tribe of *Nomades*, or shepherds whom he calls Aspasians, forced their way across the Oxus, and took possession of Hyrcania, even in the reign of Antiochus. We have already seen that a body of Tartars overwhelmed Bactria about 120 years before Christ. And about 100 years subsequent to the Christian era, a portion of the great nation of the Huns, who had been forced by a victorious tribe from their native seat behind the wall of China, penetrated into Sogdiana, the country between the Oxus and the Jaxartes, towards the shores of the Caspian Sea; and there established themselves under the titles of the Euthalites, Nephthalites, and White Huns. After these irruptions, the more vigorous of the princes of the Sassanian dynasty reduced Sogdiana, as well as Bactria, to occasional obedience, but without expelling the new inhabitants, and without acquiring any permanent dominion. In the cultivated provinces in which they settled, the savage Tartars acquired a degree of civilization; and when obliged to yield to the followers of Mahomed, felt so little attachment to their

BOOK III ancient religion, as immediately to recommend them
CHAP. I selves to the favour, by adopting the faith, of their
 conquerors.¹

When the government of the Caliphs began to lose its vigour, a tribe of Tartars, originally situated in the Altai mountains, and known by the name of Turks, had acquired extraordinary power. They had in a series of wars, subdued the neighbouring tribes, and extended their sway, that species of sway which it is competent to a pasturing people to exercise or to sustain over a great portion of the Tartars of Asia.² When the military virtues of the Arabians sunk beneath the pleasures which flow from the possession of power, the Caliphs sought to infuse vigour into their effeminate armies, by a mixture of fierce and hardy Turks. Adventurers of that nation were raised to the command of armies and of provinces, and a guard of Turkish soldiers was appointed to surround the person of the monarch. When weakness was felt at the centre of the empire, the usurpation of dependence by the governors of the distant provinces was a natural result. The first by whom this usurpation was attempted, was Taher, Governor of Chorasan, the province extending from the Caspian Sea to the Oxus. He and his posterity, under the title of Taherites, enjoyed sovereignty in that province from the year 813 to the year 872. The son of a Brazier called in Arabian Soffur who rose (a common occurrence in the East) through the different stages of military adventure, to be the head and captain of an army, supplanted the Taherites, and substituted his own fa-

¹ Polyb. lib. 5b. x. 1 M. d. Cugnot. Hist. des Huns tom. ii. Cibon's Roman Empire p. 267.

² The rise and progress of the power of the Turkish race may be collected from Abulfazl, lib. 1 Cor. 1. 2. 3. 4. 5. Tuzuri D. C. et al. Hist. des Huns, and D'Herbelot. Hist. th. Orient. Mr. Cibon, iii. 258 throws a pluse at the leading facts.

smily, called from their origin Soffarides, in the government of Chorasan and Transoxiana. The Soffarides were displaced by a similar adventurer, who established the house of the Samanides, after a period, according to the varying accounts, of either 34 or 57 years, from the elevation of the Brazier. The Samanides are celebrated by the Persian historians for their love of justice and learning; they extended their sway over the eastern provinces of Persia, from the Jaxartes to the Indus, and reigned till after the year 1000 of the Christian era¹.

The Taherites, the Soffarides, and Samanides usurped only the eastern provinces of the empire of the Caliphs, the provinces which, being the nearest to the turbulent and warlike tribes of shepherds, and most exposed to their incursions, were of the least importance to the sovereigns of Persia. Three adventurers, brothers, called, from the name of their father, the Bowides, rose to power in the provinces extending westward from Chorasan, along the shores of the Caspian sea, about the year 315 of the Hegira, or 927 of Christ. This dynasty consisted of seventeen successive and powerful princes, who reigned till the year 1056. They conquered the provinces of Gilan, Mazenderan, Erak, Fars, Kerman, Khosistan, Ahvaz, Tabarestan, and Georgian; and rendered themselves masters of the Caliphs, to whom they left only a shadow of authority.²

About the year of Christ 967, Subuctagi, a servant of the Samanides, was appointed governor of the Indian province of Candahar, or Ghazna, as it is called by the Persian writers; from the name of the capital Ghizni. Having raised himself from the condition

¹ See D'Herbelot, *Biblioth Orient ad verb Thaler, Soffur, et Saman*, Gibbon, x. 80, De Guignes, *Hist des Huns*, i. 404—406

² D'Herbelot, *Biblioth Orient ad verb Buiah*,

BOOK III. of a Turkish slave to such a degree of power as made
CHAP. I. it dangerous to recall him from his government, he left it to his son Mahmood who asserted his independence and founded the dynasty of the Ghaznevides. Mahmood subverted the throne of the Samanides, reduced to a shadow the power of the Bowides and reigned from the Tigris to the Jaxartes. He also made extensive conquests towards the south and as he was the first who in that direction bore the crescent beyond the furthest limits of the Persian empire, and laid the foundation of the Mahomedan thrones in India, we are now arrived at the period when the Mahomedan history of India begins.¹

The northern provinces of India Kabul, Candahar, Multan, and the Punjab appear, from the days of Darius Hystaspes to have followed the destiny of Bactria, Chorasan and Transoxiana, the eastern appendages of Persia and, excepting some short intervals, to have been always subject to a foreign yoke. Even the White Huns, who established themselves in Sogdiana, on the river Oxus, and in Bactria about the end of the first century of the Christian era, advanced into India, and in the second century were masters as far as Latice or Guzerat.² Mahmood was already master of the dominions of the Samanides and of all the eastern provinces that had occasionally owned allegiance to the Persian throne when he first, says the Persian historian, "turned his face to India." This expedition of which the year 1000 of the Christian era is assigned as the date seems to

¹ D'Herbelot's *Biblioth. Orient. et sacra Selectissima*, Mahmood Ghaznevi; I en his by Dr. L. A. Dill in 4to.

² The origin and progress of the Indo-Scythian are traced in D'Anville's *Histoire* p. 18-45 and in the It's authorities are drawn from D'Anville, Ptolemy, 10th with the Commentary of Eusebius and Constantine's *Towergraph. Christ. lib. ix.*

have been solely intended to confirm or restore the ^{BOOK III.} _{CHAP 1} obedience of the governors who had submitted to his father, or been accustomed to obey the masters of eastern Persia; and few of its particulars have been thought worthy of record. He renewed his invasion the succeeding year; and proceeded so far as to alarm a prince who reigned at Lahore; a city, on one of the most eastern branches of the Indus, which gave its name to a small kingdom. This prince, called by the Persian historians Jeipal, or Gepal, met him, with his whole army, and was defeated. It was, according to the same historians, a custom or law of the Hindus, that a prince, twice defeated by Mahomedan arms, was unworthy to reign, and as this misfortune had happened to Jeipal, who had formerly yielded to Subuctagi, he resigned the throne to his son Anundpaul, and burnt himself alive in solemn state¹

In the year 1004 Mah mood again marched into India to chastise, for defect of duty, a tributary prince on the Indus. His presence was still more urgently required the following year, when the king of Multan revolted, and was joined by Anundpaul. Mah mood was met by Anundpaul as he was descending through the pass in the intervening mountains. Anundpaul was conquered and obliged to fly into Cashmere when the king of Multan endeavoured, by submission, to save what he could. As Mah mood had received intelligence that a body of Tatars had invaded his northern provinces, he was the more easily softened, and leaving Zab Sais, a Hindu who had embraced the Mahomedan religion, his lieutenant, or governor in India, marched to repel the invaders.²

¹ Ferishta, (*apud* Dow, *Hist. of Hindost* 1 40—42,) D'Herbelot, *Bibl. Orient ad verb.* Mahmoud

² Ferishta, *ut supra*, p 42—44, D'Herbelot, *ut supra*.

BOOK III During this expedition against the Tartars, Zab Sais
CHAP. I revolted resumed the Brahminical faith and was on the point of being joined by a confederacy of Rajah or Hindu sovereigns, when Mahmood hastened back to India, took Zab Sais unprepared and made him prisoner for life after which the season being far advanced, he returned to Ghizni. Early, however, in the following spring some movements of Anund-paul recalled him to India, when the princes of Oogeen Gualior Callinger, Kanoge, Delhi, Ajmere, the Guickwars and others, joined their forces to oppose him. A general battle was fought, in which the Ghiznian monarch prevailed. He then reduced the fort of Nagracote or Nngarcote and having plundered the temple of its riches, very great, as we are told, returned to his capital. As the king of Multan still continued refractory Mahmood returned to that province in the following year, and having taken the Rajah prisoner carried him to Ghizni, where he confined him for life¹.

"In the year 402,² the passion of war," says the historian "fermenting in the mind of Mahmood," he resolved upon the conquest of Tannasur or Sahne sir, a city about thirty eoss north west from Delhi the seat of a considerable government famous for its sanctity and subservience to the Brahminical religion. Having taken Tannasur and demolished the idols, he marched to Delhi which he quickly reduced and thence returned with vast riches."³

Two years afterwards he drove from his dominions the king of Lahore and overran Cashmere compelling the inhabitants to acknowledge the prophet.

In the beginning of the year 1018, the Sultan

¹ *Ferishta*, vol. supra p. 47—51; *D'Herbelot* vii supra.

² *Vit. of the Hg* ca 1011 A.D.

³ *Ferishta*, vol. supra p. 51—53; *D'Herbelot* vi supra.

(Mahmood was the first on whom that title was bestowed) with a large army, raised chiefly among the tribes who possessed, or bordered upon, the northern provinces of his empire, marched against Kanoge, the capital of a kingdom, situated on the Ganges, about 100 miles south-east from Delhi¹ "From the time of Gustasp, the father of Darab, to this period, this city (says the Persian historian) had not been visited by any foreign enemy; three months were necessary to complete the march between this kingdom and the capital of Mahmood; and seven mighty streams rushed across the intervening space." The conqueror having with much difficulty forced a passage through the mountains, by the way of Cashmere, arrived at Kanoge, before the Rajah was prepared for resistance Placing his only hopes in submission, he threw himself upon the mercy of the invader. The magnitude and grandeur of the city is celebrated in poetic strains by the Persian historians. Mahmood, remaining but three days, proceeded against a neighbouring prince, inhabiting a city called Merat; thence to another city, on the Jumna, named Mavin, and next to Muttra, which is still a city of considerable extent, at a small distance from Agra. This last city was full of temples and idols, which Mahmood plundered and destroyed; and from which, according to the usual story, he obtained incredible treasure Several other forts and Rajahs being subdued, Mahmood returned from his eighth expedition into India, laden, we are told, with riches, and began to adorn and improve his capital He built a mosque, so beautiful and magnificent, that it was called the

¹ It may be necessary once for all to state, that in this sketch of Mahomedan history, the distances are given generally as in the native historians Their very inaccuracies (here they do not mislead) are sources of information

BOOK III CHAR 1 *Celestial Bride*, and "struck every beholder with astonishment and pleasure. In the neighbourhood of this mosque he founded an university, which he furnished with a vast collection of curious books, in various languages and with natural and artificial curiosities. He appropriated a sufficient fund for the maintenance of the students, and the learned men who were appointed to instruct the youth in the sciences."¹

Mahmood's ninth expedition in 1021, was for the purpose of protecting the Rajah of Konoge, who now held the rank of one of his dependents. The Rajah of Callinger, a city in the province of Bundelcund, situated on one of the rivers which fall into the Jumna, was the most guilty of the assailants. As the Rojoh avoided Mahmood in the field he plundered and laid waste the country, and, this done, returned to his capitol.

Here he had not reposed many days, when he was informed that two districts on the borders of Hindustan refused to acknowledge the true prophet, and continued the worship of lions.² The zeal of the religious sultan immediately took fire. Having speedily brought to reason the disrespectful provinces, he marched to Lahore, which he gave up to pillage. According to custom, it afforded enormous riches. Mahomedan governors were established in this and several other districts of Hindustan.

¹ D'Herbelot ut supra; Ferghana p. 6—60. Ferghana says that the taste of the sovereigns for architecture being followed by his nobles, Ghurriwan became the first city in the East. Ibid. p. 60. So that the grandeur and riches and beauty he so lavishly ascribes to some of the Hindu cities, get an object of comparison which enables us to reduce them to their true dimensions. The architecture of the Mahomedans was superior to that of the Hindus.

² This correct expression, which refers to the fourth avatar, shows the carelessness and ignorance of Ferghana and the Persian historians in regard to the Brahmanical fictions.

The twelfth expedition of the Ghiznian monarch was undertaken in the year 1024. He had heard not only of the great riches and supposed sanctity of the temple of Sumnaut, but of the presumption of its priests, who had boasted that other places had yielded to the power of Mahmood, by reason of their impiety, but if he dared to approach Sumnaut, he would assuredly meet the reward of his temerity. Mahmood, having arrived at Multan, gave orders to his army to provide themselves with water and other necessaries for crossing a desert of several days' march, which lay between this city and Ajmere. The Rajah and people of Ajmere abandoned the place at his approach. They were invited to return, and experience the clemency of the victor; but not complying, beheld their country desolated with fire and sword. Arrived at Sumnaut, which was a strong castle, situated on the promontory of Guzerat, near the city of Diu,¹ washed on three sides by the sea, Mahmood met with a more serious resistance than any which he had yet encountered in Hindustan. Not only did the priests and guardians of the temple defend it with all the obstinacy of enthusiasm and despair; but a large army collected in the surrounding kingdoms was brought to its defence. Having triumphed over all resistance, the religious sultan entered the temple. Filled with indignation at sight of the gigantic idol, he aimed a blow at its head, with his iron mace. The nose was struck from its face. In vehement trepidation the Brahmens crowded around, and offered millions,² to spare the god. The

¹ D'Herbelot, misled by some of the Persian historians, makes Sumnaut the same with the city of Visiapore in Deccan. *Biblioth. Orient ad verbum Soumenat*.

² Ferishta says "some crores of gold" Dow says in a note, at the bottom of the page, "ten millions," which is the explanation of the

BOOK III Omrahs dazzled with the ransom ventured to counsel acceptance Mahmood, crying out that he valued the title of breaker, not seller of idols, gave orders to proceed with the work of destruction. At the next blow, the belly of the idol burst open and forth issued a vast treasure of diamonds, rubies, and pearls rewarding the holy perseverance of Mahmood, and explaining the devout liberality of the Brahmins. After this Mahmood took vengeance on the rajahs who had confederated to defend the temple, and reduced all Guzerat to his obedience. It is said that he was so captivated with the beauty of the country, the richness of the soil, and the salubrity of the climate that he conceived the design of making it the place of his residence, and resigning Ghizni to one of his sons. Diverted from this design by the counsels of his friends, he placed a Hindu governor over the province, and after an absence of two years and six months returned to Ghizni. A people whom the translator of Ferishta calls the Jits, afterwards better known under the name of Jatts, who inhabited part of the country bordering on the Indus, southward from Multan either failed in respect or gave molestation, as he marched from Guzerat. Returning in the same year to chastise them he defeated 4,000 or 8,000 (so wide are the accounts) of their boats launched on the river to defend an island to which as the place of greatest safety they had conveyed the most valuable of their effects, and the most cherished of their people.¹ This was the last of the exploits of Mahmood in India, who died at Ghizni in the year

wood cross Mr Gibbon says rashly and carelessly that the sum offered by the Brahmins was ten mil a day for Dec and Jan x 337

¹ Fenius apud Dow Mahmood I; D'Herbelot B.H. Orient ed cont Mahmood.

1028. Mahmood, the son of Subuctagi the Turkish slave, is one of the most celebrated of eastern princes. BOOK III.
CHAP 1 He was supposed to possess in the highest perfection almost every royal virtue. He patronized learning, and encouraged the resort of learned men. Ferdosi, the author of the Shah Namah, the most celebrated poem of the East, was entertained at his court.

After a short contest between Mahommed and Musaood, the sons of Mahmood, Musaood mounted the throne of Ghizni, and the eyes of Mahommed were put out. Musaood entered India three times, during the nine years of his reign, and left the boundaries of the Ghaznevide dominions there in the situation nearly in which he received them. His first incursion was in the year 1032, when he penetrated by the way of Cashmere ; and his only memorable exploit was the capture of the fort of Sursutti, which commanded the pass. In 1034, he sent an army which chastised a disobedient viceroy. And in 1035, he marched in person to reduce Sewalik, a kingdom or rajahship lying at the bottom of the mountains near the place where the Ganges descends upon the Indian plains. He assailed the capital, of great imputed strength, took it in six days, and found in it incredible riches. From this he proceeded against the fort of Sunput, a place about forty miles distant from Delhi on the road to Lahore, the governor of which abandoned it upon his approach, and fled into the woods. He proposed to march against another prince, called Ram, but Ram, understanding his intentions, endeavoured to divert the storm, by gifts and compliments, and had the good fortune to succeed. Musaood was recalled from India to oppose an enemy, destined to render short the splendour of the house of Ghizni.

BOOK III. During several centuries, the movements westward
CHAP 1 of the hordes of Turkmans had been accumulating
 that people upon the barriers of the Persian empire
 In the reign of Mahmood, three brothers, sons of
 Seljuk, solicited permission to pass the Oxus, with
 their flocks and herds, and to enjoy the unoccupied
 pastures of Chorasan. Mahmood disregarding the
 advice of his best counsellors, granted their re-
 quest. The example set, the number of Tartars in
 Transoxiana and Chorasan continually increased.
 During the vigilant and vigorous reign of Mahmood,
 the Turks behaved so much like peaceable subjects,
 that no complaint against them seems to have been
 raised. But in the days of his son and successor
 Musaood, the inhabitants of Chorasan and Transox-
 iana complained that they were oppressed by the
 strangers, and Musaood at last resolved to drive
 them back from his dominions. Togrul Beg how-
 ever the son of Michael the son of Seljuk offered
 himself as a leader and a bond of union to the Turks
 opposed Musaood triumphed over him in the field
 rendered himself master of the northern provinces of
 his empire, and established the dynasty of the Selju-
 kides. Having baffled the power of the Sultan of
 Ghuzni Togrul found nothing remaining to oppose
 to him any serious resistance from the Oxus
 to the Euphrates. He extinguished the remaining
 sparks of the power of the Bowides and took the
 Caliph under his protection. Togrul was succeeded
 by his nephew Alp Arlan, and the latter by his son
 Malek Shah both celebrated warriors who pushed
 the limits of their empire beyond the Euphrate and
 the Jaxartes, and made deep incursions upon the Roman
 provinces and the Tartar plains. The provinces of
 Zabulistan or Candahar of Segistan or Seistan and

Cabul, with the provinces in India beyond the Hydaspes, were all that at last remained to the Ghaznevides. BOOK III
CHAP. I
1049.

Musaood returning from the defeat which he, deserted by his troops, had sustained at the hand of the Turkmans, and hastening to India to recruit his forces, was deposed by a mutiny in the army, and his brother Mahommed, whose eyes he had put out, was placed upon the throne Modood, the son of Musaood, who had been left by his father with an army at Balke marched against Mahommed, whom he dethroned. Modood made some efforts against the Seljukians, and for a time recovered Transoxiana. But the feebleness and distraction now apparent in the empire of the Ghaznevides encouraged the Rajah of Delhi, in concert with some other rajahs, to hazard an insurrection. They reduced Tannasar, Hassi the capital of Sewalik, and even the fort of Nagracote. The Rajahs of the Punjab endeavoured to recover their independence; and the Mahomedan dominion was threatened with destruction.

In the year 1049 Modood died, and a rapid change of princes succeeded, violently raised to the throne, and violently thrown down from it. His son Musaood, a child of four years old, was set up by one general; and, after a nominal reign of six days, gave place to Ali, the brother of Modood, who was supported by another. Ali reigned about two years, when he was dethroned by Abdul Reshid, his uncle, son of the great Mahmood. Tugril, governor of Segistan, rebelled against Reshid, and slew him; after reigning one year Tugril himself was assassinated after he had enjoyed his usurpation but forty days. Ferioch-Zaad, a yet surviving son of Musaood, was then raised to the throne, who, dying after a peaceable

BOOK III reign of six years, was succeeded by his brother
 CHAP. I Ibrahim

1080 Ibrahim reigned a period of no less than forty two years. After he had terminated his disputes with the dangerous Seljukians, by resigning to them all the provinces they had usurped of the Gharnevide empire, he directed his ambition towards India. An army which he dispatched into that country is said to have reduced to his obedience many places which had not yet yielded to the Moslem arms. In the year 1080 he marched in person and by the successful attack of several places of strength, added the territory they protected to his dominions¹. Against the house of Seljuk, now reigning over Persia, Chorasan, and Bucharia, the latter comprehending the ancient provinces or kingdoms of Bactria, Sogdiana, and Transoxiana, he found protection chiefly by intermarriages and alliance.

Ibrahim was succeeded by his son Musaood who enjoyed a peaceable reign of sixteen years. With the exception of one expedition, under one of his generals, who penetrated beyond the Ganges, India remained unmolested by his arms. But as the Indian provinces now formed the chief portion of his dominions, Lahore became the principal seat of his government.

His son Shere says the Persian historian "placed his foot on the imperial throne, but within a year was assassinated by his brother Arsilla. Byram one of the brothers of Arsilla made his escape, and fled to the governor of Chorasan, who was

¹ Firishta mentions a city to which he came (the place not intelligibly marked) the inhabitants of which were originally from Chorasan having been banished thither with their families for rebellion by an ancient Persian king. See Firishta, Dow, L. II

brother to the king of Persia, and to his own, and BOOK III.
Arsilla's mother. By the assistance of this prince,
^{CHAP. I.} his uncle, who marched with an army to his sup-
port, he dethroned Arsilla, and assumed the reins of
government, which had been held by the usurper for
three years

1100.

Byram, or Bahram, was twice called into India, by the disobedience of the governor of Lahore, who aspired to independence. But he had no sooner settled this disturbance, than he was called to oppose the governor of another of his provinces, whose rebellion was attended with more fatal consequences. A range of mountainous country, known by the name of the mountains of Gaur, occupies the space between the province of Chorasan and Bactria on the west and north, and the provinces of Segistan, Candahar, and Cabul on the south. The mountaineers of this district, a wild and warlike race, had hardly ever paid more than a nominal obedience to the sovereigns of Persia. The district, however, had been included in the dominions of the Sultans of Ghizni; and had not yet been detached by the Seljukian encroachments. In the days of Byram, a descendant of the ancient princes of the country, Souri by name, was governor of the province. Finding himself possessed of power to aim at independence, he raised an army of Afghauns, such is the name (famous in the history of India) by which the mountaineers of Gaur are distinguished, and chased Byram from his capital of Ghizni. Byram, however, having collected and recruited his army, marched against his enemy, and aided by his subjects of Ghizni, who deceived and betrayed their new master, gained a complete victory, and put the Gaurian to a cruel death. The power which he gained was but of short duration. Alla, the brother of Souri, who succeeded him in

BOOK III. his usurped dominion, hastened to repair his loss.

CHAP. I Byram was defeated in a decisive battle, and fled 1184 towards India but sunk under his misfortunes, and expired after a languid, but gentle reign of thirty five years.

He was succeeded by his son Chusero, who withdrew to India, and made Lahore his capital. This prince cherished the hope of recovering the lost dominions of his house from the Gaurian usurper, by aid from his kinsman, the King of Persia and collected an army for that purpose, but at this moment a fresh horde of Turkman Tartars rushed upon the Persian provinces, and inundated even Cabul and Candahar, from which the Gaurians were obliged to retire. The Turks, after two years possession, were expelled by the Gaurians. The Gaurians were again defeated by the arms of Chusero and yielded up the temporary possession of Ghizni to its former masters. Chusero continued to reside at Lahore, and having died after a reign of seven years, was succeeded by his son Chusero the Second.

Mohammed brother to the Gaurian usurper, pursued the same ambitious career. He soon rendered himself master of the kingdom of Churn or Candahar and not satisfied with that success, penetrated even into India, over ran Multan with the provinces on both sides of the Indus and advanced as far as Lahore. After an uninteresting struggle of a few years Chusero was subdued and in the year 1184 the sceptre was transferred from the house of Ghizni to the house of Gur. The same era which was marked by the fall of the Ghaznevides was distinguished by the reduction of the house of Seljuk. The weakness and effeminacy which after the vigour and ability of the founders of a new dynasty uniformly take place among the princes their suc-

cessors, having relaxed the springs of the Seljukian BOOK III government, the subordinate governors threw off CHAP. I their dependence, and a small portion of the domi- 1184. nions of Malek now owned the authority of Togril his descendant

CHAP II

*From the Commencement of the first Gaurian
Dynasty to that of the second Gaurian or
Afghaun Dynasty*

BOOK III. MAHOMED left the government of India, after the
 CHAP 2 defeat and death of Chusero in the hands of a vice
 1190 roy, and returned to Ghizni. After an absence of
 five years, he marched towards Ajmere and, having
 taken the city of Tiberhund, is said to have been on
 his way back when he heard that the Rajahs of
 Ajmere and Delhi, with others in confederacy, were
 advancing with a large army to relieve the city which
 he had just taken and left. He turned and met them
 a little beyond Tannasar. Having inadvertently al-
 lowed his army to be surrounded by superior numbers,
 he was defeated and, being severely wounded escaped
 with great difficulty from the field of battle. He
 took such measures as the moment allowed to secure
 his provinces and forts, and hastened to Caur-

After little more than a year he was prepared to
 return to India with a formidable army of Turks,
 Persians, and Afghauns. The combined Rajahs had
 consumed their time in the siege of Tiberhund, which
 had resisted them for one year and one month. No
 fewer, it is said than 150 kings with their armies,
 amounting by "the lowest and most moderate
 account, to 300 000 horse 3000 elephants and
 a great body of infantry," met him on the former
 field of battle. The Rajahs sent him an insulting
 proposal, that he might be permitted to march back

unmolested, if he had the prudence to decline the combat. Mahomed had learned wisdom from experience. Sending an humble answer; that he was only the servant of his brother, bound to execute his commands; and praying for time, to learn the will of his master; he filled the Rajahs, and their enormous camp, with an ill-grounded and intemperate presumption. While they were spending the night in revelling and joy, Mahomed crossed the river with his army, and fell upon them before the alarm was spread. The extent of the camp was so great, that a part of the army had time to form itself and advance to cover the flight. Mahomed immediately drew off his troops to meet them. Forming a strong reserve of his chosen horse, he ordered the rest of his army, drawn up in four lines, to receive the enemy calmly. The first line, having discharged its missile weapons, was made to withdraw to the rear; the next, coming in front, discharged in like manner its weapons, and in like manner gave place to another. By this stratagem were the enemy held in play, "till the sun was approaching the west," when Mahomed, placing himself at the head of his reserve, rushed upon the fatigued and now presumptuous multitude; who were immediately thrown into the greatest disorder, and "recoiled, like a troubled torrent, from the bloody plain."

Shortly after this event Mahomed returned to Ghizni, leaving the fruits of the victory to be gathered and secured by his favourite General Cuttub. The events of this man's life, though far from singular in the East, involved extraordinary changes of condition and fortune. In his childhood, he was brought from Turkestan to Nishapore, the capital of Chorasan, and there sold for a slave. It happened that the master by whom he was bought had the disposition to give him education, and that the quickness of his

BOOK III. parts enabled him to profit by this advantage. The
CHAR 2 death of his patron, however, exposed him once more
1202. to the chance of the market which fortunately as-
 signed him to Mahomed the Gaurian. His intel-
 ligence and assiduity attracted in time the notice of
 the Prince. He advanced by gradual accessions of
 favour, till he rose to be Master of the Horse. Even
 misfortune, though he lost a detachment of men, and
 was taken prisoner by the enemy, did not lose him
 the kindness of Mahomed or interrupt the career of
 his promotion.

Cuttub improved, with diligence and ability, the
 advantages which his master had gained in India.
 He reduced the surrounding districts took the fort
 of Merat and invested Delli. The garrison ven-
 tured to meet him in the field. He vanquished them,
 and surmounting all opposition, obtained possession
 of the city.

Mahomed returned to Indir in 1193. Cuttub was
 received with the highest marks of distinction and
 being honoured to command the van of the army he
 conquered the Rajah of Benares where Mahomed
 destroyed innumerable idols, and obtained, of course
 incalculable riches. The whole country submitted to
 the confines of Bengal.

Upon the return of Mahomed to Ghizni Cuttub
 was declared his adopted son, and confirmed in the
 government of Indir. By various expeditions, he
 chastised repeatedly the refractory Rajahs of Ajmire
 and Cuzerat took the cities of Calinger and Kalpy
 with their respective territories and at last made
 himself master of the forts of Binna and Cunhor.

In the year 1202 Mahomed was excited to try his
 fortune for a share in the dismemberment of the Sel-
 jukian empire. Among the provinces of which the
 governors had thrown off their dependance upon the

Seljukian princes, that of Karisme, on the eastern side of the Caspian Sea, had risen to the rank of an independent kingdom, under a race of princes known by the name of the Karismian dynasty. Against Tacash, the reigning sovereign of this kingdom, Mahomed led an army. But Osman, a Tartar chief, who had assumed the rank of sovereign, in another part of Transoxiana, and had Samarcand for his capital, marched to the assistance of Tacash; Mahomed sustained a total defeat; and was fain, by a great ransom, to purchase return to his own country. Intelligence of his defeat was to his servants the signal for revolt. His slave Ildecuz, having assumed supremacy in his capital of Ghizni, refused him admittance. He continued his route to Multan, where another of his servants took arms against him. Being joined by many of his friends, he gave the traitor battle, and obtained the victory. He next collected such of his troops as were in the contiguous provinces of India, and marched back to Ghizni, where the rebellious slave was delivered up by the inhabitants.

At the same time with the other rebellious attempts, to which his defeat by the Karismians had given birth, a tribe of Indians, inhabiting the country about the sources of the Indus from the Nilab or western branch of that river upwards to the Sewalic mountains; called, by the Persian historian, Gickers, and by him described as a people excessively rude and barbarous, putting their female children to death; attempted the recovery of their independence, and proceeded towards Lahore. Mahomed had no sooner recovered his capital than he marched against them; and Cuttub at the same time advancing from Delhi, they were attacked on both sides, and speedily subdued. Mahomed was returning to Ghizni, when he

BOOK III
CHAP. 2
1202.

BOOK III and put to death, after a reign of three years and six
CHAP. 2 months.

1235 Byram the Secood, nursed in pleasure, and a stranger to control was a weak, imprudent priace. The jealousies which he felt towards the great men in his court he sought to relieve by assassination. His vizir, having escaped an intended blow, found means to regaird his confidence and being placed at the head of an army against the Moguls, he matured the dissatisfaction of the Omrahs, and, turning the army of Byram against himself, dethroned and killed him, about two years after he had ascended the throne.

It was during this reign that the Moguls, destined to erect in India the greatest empire it had ever seen first penetrated into that country. Gingis, the chief of a tribe of Tartars, distinguished by the name of Moguls, who roamed with their flocks and herds on the northern side of the wall of China, formed, by talents and good fortune, one of those combinations among different tribes of Tartars, which more than once within the period of history had been witnessed before and never without extensive revolutions and conquests. Partly by force partly by intimidation, partly by hopes of sharing in the advantages of conquest Gingis about the year 1210 was acknowledged as Khan by all the shepherd hordes from the wall of China to the Volga. The presumption and pride of two such elevated neighbours as the emperor of China and the new sovereign of Tnrtary, could not fail to kindle the flames of war. Innumerable squadrons of Tartars surmounted the unavailing rampart which the Chinese had in former ages raised to exclude them. Pekin was taken and the northern provinces of China were added to the empire of Gingis.

About the same time a quarrel arose on the opposite side of his dominions. Mahomed was now

king of Karisme, which from a revolted province had grown into the seat of a great empire, extending from the borders of Arabia to those of Turkestan.

BOOK III.
CHAP. 2

1250.

The monarch of so many provinces, which prided themselves in their riches and the acquirements of civilized life, made light, it seems, of the power of him who ruled over multitudes, indeed, but of men who had no riches except their cattle, and no cities except their camps. An injury done to some of the subjects of Gingis, for which all reparation was haughtily refused, first drew upon western Asia the fury of his arms. Mahomed crossed the Jaxartes to meet his enemy in the plains of Turkestan, with no less, it is said, than four hundred thousand men. But these were encountered by seven hundred thousand Tartars, under Gingis and his sons, who in the first battle, which was suspended by the night, laid one hundred and sixty thousand Karismians dead upon the field.

After this fatal blow, Mahomed expected to arrest the progress of the victor, by throwing his troops into the frontier towns. But the arms of Gingis were irresistible, the places of greatest strength were obliged to surrender, and Karisme, Transoxiana, and Chorasan, soon acknowledged the sovereignty of the Mogul. He was withdrawn by the wishes of his troops from the further prosecution of his conquests in the West, and died in the year 1227; but left sons and grandsons to copy the deeds of their progenitor. In the year 1258, the conquest of Persia was consummated; and the last remains of the power of the Caliphs and Selukians, trampled in the dust.

It was but an incision which, in the year 1242, the Moguls, during the reign of Byam II, made into India. They plundered the country as far as Lahore, and then retreated to Ghizni.

BOOK III. infantry, two thousand elephants of war, and three thousand carriages of fireworks. With this magnificent escort, the ambassador was conducted to the royal presence all the officers, dignitaries, and dependants of the empire, in gorgeous attire surrounding the throne. Thus appears to have been a message of peace since nothing of importance occurred, till the death of the Shah, which happened in the year 1265

This prince carried to the throne that contempt of pleasure and show, and that simplicity of manners, which he had learned in his adversity. "Contrary" says Ferishta, "to the custom of princes, he kept no concubines. He had but one wife, whom he obliged to do every homely part of housewifery and when she complained one day that she had burned her fingers in baking his bread, desiring he would allow her a maid to assist her he rejected her request, with saying—that he was only a trustee for the state and that he was determined not to burthen it with needless expences. He therefore exhorted her to persevere in her duty with patience and God would reward her in the end. As the emperor of India never eats in public, his table was rather that of a hermit, than suitable to a great king. He also continued the whimsical notion of living by his pen. One day as an Omrah was inspecting a Coran of the emperor's writing before him he pointed out a word which he said was wrong. The king, looking at it smiled and drew a circle round it. But when the critic was gone he began to erise the circle and restore the word. This being observed by one of his old attendants he begged to know his Majesty's reason for so doing to which he replied "that he knew the word was originally right but he thought it better to erise from a paper than to touch the heart of a poor man by bringing him to shrift."

Mamood died without leaving any sons; and his vizir, Balin, who even in his life time engrossed the principal share of power, without opposition mounted the throne. Balin was originally a Turk, of Chitta, of the tribe of Alberi. He was taken, when very young, by the Moguls who over-ran his country, and sold to a slave-merchant who carried him to Bagdat. The master into whose hands he fell, learning that he was a relation of Altumsh, who then reigned at Delhi, proceeded with him to that city, and presented him to the monarch, who received him gladly, and liberally rewarded his conductor.

BOOK III.

CHAP. 2

1265

A brother of Balin had already made his way to the court of Delhi, and was considerably advanced in the road of favour and power. The young adventurer improved his advantages; and rapidly ascended the ladder of promotion. He took an active part in all the revolutions which placed so many successors on the throne. In the reign of Musaood he was raised to the dignity of lord of requests; and in that of Mahmood obtained the vizirat.

The reign of Balin was severe; but vigilant, clear-sighted, and consistent. He punished disobedience with rapidity and cruelty; but he distinguished talents with care, and rewarded services with discernment and generosity. The fame of his government made his alliance be courted, even by the Mogul sovereigns who reigned over Tartary and Persia.

“He expelled,” says Ferishta, “all flatterers, usurers, pimps, and players, from his court; and being one day told, that an Omrah, an old servant of the crown, who had acquired a vast fortune by usury and monopoly in the bazaar or market, would present him with some lacks of rupees, if he would honour him with one word from the throne, he rejected the proposal with great disdain. What, he said, must his subjects

BOOK III think of a king who should condescend to hold dis-
CHAR 2 course with a wretch so infamous." As freedom of
1270 bargain respecting interest on loans is exceptionable
 on principles of superstition alone, Balin was possibly
 mistaken in his instance, without being incorrect in
 his rule. The association of the king with persons
 infamous by their vices, sheds moral depravity among
 the people, except in that proportion exactly in which
 it sheds contempt upon the throne.

The generosity of Balin made his court the resort
 and asylum of the various princes, whom the arms of
 Gingis and his successors had rendered fugitives from
 their kingdoms. More than twenty of these unfor-
 tunate sovereigns, from Tartary, Transoxiana Cho-
 rasan Persia, Irac, Azarbijan, Persia proper, Roum,
 and Syria among whom were two princes of the race
 of the Caliphs, had allowances assigned them from
 the revenues of Balin, with palaces, which took their
 names from their possessors and admission on all pub-
 lic occasions to the presence and throne of their
 benefactor. The most learned men from all Asia,
 accompanying their respective princes or seeking the
 same asylum, were assembled at Delhi. "And the
 court of India," says the historian, "was in the days
 of Balin, reckoned the most polite and magnificent in
 the world. All the philosophers, poets and divines
 formed a society every night at the house of the
 prince Shichid the heir apparent to the empire. An-
 other society of musicians, dancers, numicks, players
 juggling and story tellers, was constantly convened at
 the house of the emperor's second son Kero who was
 given to pleasure and levity. The Omrahis followed
 the example of their superiors so that various societies
 and clubs were formed in every quarter of the city."

The hills to the south east of Delhi were infested
 by Hindus who acted the part of banditti and plun-

ders; and advanced, in numbers resembling an army, sometimes to the very walls of the capital. BOOK III.
CHAP. 2
1283. Balin ordered operations against them, and they were massacred without mercy. The soldiers, who carried hatchets for the purpose, cut down, to the distance of one hundred miles, the woods to which the robbers retired. The cleared space proved excellent land; and was speedily peopled, the inhabitants being protected from the mountaineers by a line of forts, erected at the bottom of the hills.

The Shah gave considerable employment to his army, in bridling the wild inhabitants of the mountains, near the centre of his dominions, but he rejected the advice of his counsellors, to regain the distant provinces of Malwa and Guzerat, which had asserted their independence from the time of Cuttub; wisely observing, that the cloud of Moguls, now gathered on his northern frontier, presented an object of more serious and anxious regard.

His accomplished and philosophical son, Mahomed Shehid, was appointed viceroy of the northern provinces, to hold in check those dangerous neighbours. And he assembled around him the men, most eminent for thought or action, whom the Asiatic world at that time contained.

Argunu, the grandson of Hallacu who subdued Persia, and the fourth in descent from Gingis, now filled the throne of Persia; and another descendant of that renowned conqueror, by name Timur, ruled over the eastern provinces from Chorasan to the Indus. In revenge for some former check, as well as by desire for extension of empire, Timur invaded India with a large army in 1283. They were met by the Indian prince, and battle was joined. Both leaders displayed the talents of great generals; but Mahomed at last prevailed, and the Moguls betook them-

BOOK III selves to flight. Mahomed joined in the pursuit. **CHAP. 2** He had just halted, in order to return when he was surprised with only five hundred attendants, by a party of the enemy and being overpowered by superior numbers, was slain, defending himself to the last. The army and the empire were filled with grief by his fall.

1285. While the son was engaged in his arduous defence of the empire against the Moguls, the father was employed in subduing a dangerous rebellion in Bengal. Tughril, governor of that rich and powerful province had executed an expedition against the rajahs of Jengagur, a province bounded on the north by Bengal and on the east by Orissa. Succeeding, and obtaining great treasure, he began to feel himself too great for a subject delayed remitting the Emperor's share of the plunder and, hearing that Balin was sick, and too ill to survive, raised the red umbrella and assumed the title of King. Balin ordered the Governor of Oude to assume the office of Subahdar of Bengal and with an army which he committed to his command, to march against the rebel. The new Subahdar was defeated and Balin was so enraged that he bit his own flesh and commanded the general to be hanged at the gate of Oude. Another of his generals whom he sent to wipe off this disgrace had no better success when Balin, deeply affected resolved to take the field in person. Tughril hearing of his approach thought proper to elude the storm by retreating. He intended to remain in Jengagur till the Shah retired and then to resume the command of the province. With some difficulty Balin procured intelligence of his route. An exploring party at last discovered and surprised his camp. Tughril fled and was killed when Balin inflicted sanguinary punishment on his adherents.

But the death of his great and hopeful son was a

blow to the heart of Balin, to which no such as could yield a remedy. Oppressed, at once, with grief, with business, and with old age (he was now in his eightieth year), he languished for a short time, and expired. He appointed his grandson, by the deceased Mahomed, his successor. Kera,¹ however, the second son of Balin, was governor of Bengal, the most affluent province of the empire; and the Omrahs, respecting his present power, more than the will of their deceased master, raised his son Kei Kobad to the throne.

Kei Kobad was in his eighteenth year, handsome in his person, of an affable and mild disposition, and not slightly tinctured with literature. His mother was a beautiful princess, daughter of the emperor Altumsh. "He delighted," says his historian, "in love, and in the soft society of silver-bodied damsels with musky tresses." He adds; "When it was publicly known that the king was a man of pleasure, it became immediately fashionable at court, and, in short, in a few days, luxury and vice so prevailed, that every shade was filled with ladies of pleasure, and every street rung with music and mirth. The king fitted up a palace at Kilogurry, upon the banks of the river Jumna; and retired thither to enjoy his pleasures undisturbed, admitting no company but singers, players, musicians, and buffoons."

The father of Kei Kobad remained contented with his government of Bengal. But Nizam ul Dien, who became the favourite minister of the young Shah, conceived hopes, from the negligence of his master, of paving for himself a way to the throne. He proceeded to remove the persons whose pretensions were likely to obstruct his career. The many acts of cruelty and perfidy, of which he was the

¹ Ferishta Mr Stewart says, that in his MSS. the name is Bagora

BOOK III cause, to discredit upon the government. The father
 Chap. 2 of Ker Kobad saw the danger, and forewarned his
 1285 son. But the prince could not attend to business,
 without sacrificing pleasure. He found it, therefore
 more agreeable to repose upon the minister and
 neglected the advice. Kera, alarmed for his own
 fate, as well as that of his son, thought it adviseable
 to second his advice with his presence, and his pre-
 sence with an army. This was construed an act of
 hostility, and the Shah marched out from Delhi, at
 the head of an army, to oppose his father. The
 father, either conscious of his inferiority in point of
 strength, or unwilling to proceed to the last extre-
 mity, requested an interview. This was dreaded by
 the minister who endeavoured to blow up the vanity
 and presumption of the young monarch to such a
 pitch that he might hear of nothing but a battle.
 Kera was not easy to be repulsed, and renewed his
 application by a letter, full of parental expostulation
 and tenderness. The heart of the young prince was
 corrupted but not yet thoroughly depraved. He could
 not resist the letter of his father, and Nizam no
 longer able to defeat the interview by direct en-
 deavoured to elude it by artificial means. He pre-
 vailed upon the prince as sovereign to insist upon
 the first interview in hopes, that Kera would refuse.
 Kera was not a slave to points of ceremony, and
 readily consented to repair to the imperial camp
 where the son was prepared to display his insolence
 at even his father's expense. The throne was set out
 with the greatest pomp and ceremony, and Ker
 Kobad ascending commanded that his father should
 three times kiss the ground. At the first door the
 aged prince was ordered to dismount, and when he
 came in sight of the throne to perform the abject
 obeisance of the east the mate bearer at the same

time calling out, according to custom, "The noble BOOK III
Kera to the king of the world sends health!" The ^{CHAP 2.} father, whose heart was full, was no longer able to ^{1285.} restrain his tears. Upon sight of his father in tears, the young prince forgot his insolence, and rushing from the throne, threw himself upon his face at his father's feet, and implored his forgiveness.¹

The presence and admonitions of Kera made an impression upon the mind of Kei Kobad, which it was too soft to retain "When he arrived at Delhi," says Ferishta, "the advice of his father, for a few days, seemed to take root in his mind. But his reformation was not the interest of the minister." He accordingly plied him with pleasure in all the shapes in which it was known to have the greatest influence on his mind. The most beautiful and accomplished women whom it was possible to procure were made to present themselves to him at all the most accessible moments, and invention was exhausted to find an endless variety of modes to surprise and captivate the prince with new combinations of charms. The most exquisite musicians, dancers, players, buffoons, were collected to fill up the intervals left vacant by love.

The hatred, however, which the success, the presumption, and insolence of the minister had engendered in his fellow courtiers; or the suspicions and fears which, at last, though tardily, were excited in the breast of the sovereign, cut short the days and the machinations of Nizam ul Dien. He was taken off by poison. The authority of the king did not long survive. His intemperance in the haram brought on a stroke of palsy; which disabled him in one side,

¹ Mr Stewart has greatly softened the account of the insolence of Kei Kobad

BOOK III. and distorted his countenance. All attention was
Chap. 2. then absorbed by the scramble for power. Every
 1289 Omrah of popularity set up his pretensions. The
 friends of the royal family brought out the son of
 Kei Kobad, a child of three years old, and set him
 on the throne. He was supported by the Tartars
 a body of whom, as mercenaries, were generally kept
 by the Indian sovereigns whom they became the
 common instruments of setting up and pulling
 down. On the present occasion, the Tartars had
 a formidable body of competitors. Of the Af-
 ghauns, or mountaineers of Gaur and Ghurgistan, on
 the frontiers of Persia, a tribe named Chilligi¹ made
 war and depredation their business and usually, in
 great numbers served, as mercenaries, any power
 which chose to employ them. An adventurer of
 this tribe, of the name of Mallek who subsisted by
 his sword, rose to distinction in the army of Balin
 and left his talents and his fortune to his son Feroze,
 who, at the time of the illness of Kei Kobad, was one
 of the chief Omrahs, and commanded a province. He
 was joined by the Chilligi mercenaries, who attacked,
 and cut to pieces the Tartars. There was no longer
 any obstruction. Kei Kobad was killed upon his bed
 after a reign of little more than three years. Such was
 the termination of the Gaurian, or rather of the first
 Gaurian dynasty and such the commencement of
 the Afghaun, or second Gaurian dynasty, in the
 year 1289. At the time of this revolution Qubla,
 the grandson of Gingis sat on the throne of Tartary
 and China another of his descendants on that of
 Persia and a third possessed a Kingdom in Iran
 sovanna and those provinces to the north west of the
 Indus which constituted the original dominions of
 the house of Ghizni

¹ It is written Khukhi by most writers.

CHAP. III.

From the Commencement of the second Gaurian or Afghaun Dynasty, to the Commencement of the Mogul Dynasty.

FEROZE was seventy years of age when he became the master of the kingdom. He was a man of intelligence; and though guilty of cruelty and injustice in acquiring or establishing his throne, he sought to distinguish himself by the justice, and also the popularity, of his administration. "For that purpose," says his historian, "he gave great encouragement to the learned of that age, who, in return, offered the incense of flattery at the altar of his fame."

Chidju, however, a prince of the royal blood, nephew of the late Balin, and a nabob or governor of a province, obtained the alliance of several chiefs, and marched with an army towards Delhi. Feroze placed himself at the head of his army, and sent forward his son with the Chilligi cavalry. The prince encountered the enemy, and obtaining an advantage, took several Omrahs prisoners, whom he mounted upon camels with branches hung round their necks. When Feroze beheld them in this state of humiliation, he ordered them to be unbound, gave a change of raiment to each, and set an entertainment before them; repeating the verse, "That evil for evil it was easy to return; but he only was great who could return good for evil." In a few days Chidju was taken prisoner, and sent to the king; but instead of death, which he expected, received a pardon, and

BOOK III.
CHAP. 8.

1289.

BOOK III. no inconsiderable resistance, but finally prevailed, and
Char. 3 exacted heavy contributions (exaggerated by the pen of
1298 Oriental history into incredible sums), as the price of his
return. He retreated many days through several
hostile and populous kingdoms the governments of
which were too weak or too stupid to offer any ob-
struction to his march.

Feroze was not without uneasiness upon intelli-
gence of the ambitious adventure of Alla, and of the
great addition to his power which the vastness of his
plunder implied. He rejected however, the advice
of his wisest counsellors to take previous measures for
the securing of his authority and power and resolved
to repose on the fidelity of his nephew. He was even
so weak as to permit Alla, on feigned pretences, to
entice him to Corah where he was barbarously as-
sassinated, having reigned only seven years and some
months.

Alla made haste to get into his power the family
of Feroze of whom all who were the objects of any
apprehension were unrelentingly murdered and the
rest confined. He had scarcely time however to
settle the affairs of his government when he learned
that the Mogul sovereign of Transoxiana had invaded
the Punjab with an army of 100,000 men. An ar-
my, commanded by his brother was sent to expel
them. A battle was fought, in the neighbourhood of
Lahore, in which the Indians were victorious, and the
Moguls retreated. The successful general was sent
into Guzerat, which he quickly reduced to the obe-
dience of the Shah.

The Moguls returned the following year with much
on pretence of a hunting party and passing through the territories of
many petty rajahs too feeble to oppose him he came upon
Slamden by surprise. Festus I 231. The process of the division and
subdivision of India into a great number of petty states met us at
every step in Indian history.

greater force; and marched even to the walls of Del- BOOK III.
hi, to which they laid siege. Alla at last collected ^{CHAP 3} his army, and gave them battle. Though his success was not decisive, the Moguls thought proper to retreat ^{1303.}

The king's arbitrary maxims of government, and the odious manner in which he arrived at the supreme command, engendered disaffection; and during the first years of his reign he was harassed by perpetual insurrections and rebellions. He applied himself, however, with industry and intelligence, to the business of government; and though his administration was severe and oppressive, it was regular and vigorous, securing justice and protection to the body of the people. His education had been so neglected that he could neither read nor write; but feeling the disadvantages under which his ignorance laid him, he had firmness of mind to set about the work of his own instruction even upon the throne, acquired the inestimable faculties of reading and writing; made himself acquainted with the best authors in the Persian language; invited learned men to his court, and delighted in their conversation.

In 1303, he projected another expedition into Deccan by the way of Bengal, but was recalled by a fresh invasion of the Moguls of Transoxiana, who advanced as far as Delhi, but retreated without sustaining a battle. After their departure, he resolved, by an augmentation of his army, to leave himself nothing to fear from that audacious enemy. But reflecting that his revenues were unequal to so great a burden, he resolved to reduce the soldiers' pay. Reflecting again, that this would be dangerous, while the price of articles continued the same, he ordered all prices to be reduced a half, by that means, says Ferishta, with an ignorance too often matched in

BOOK III more instructed countries, "just doubling his treasures and revenue" ^{Chap 3} The Moguls were not dis-
1305 couraged by frequency of repulse The armies of the king of Transoxiana twice invaded Hindustan in 1305 and were twice defeated by Tughbc, the general of Alla

In the following year the design against Deccan was renewed, and prosecuted with greater resources Cafoor, a slave and eunuch, his favourite, and, it was said, the instrument of his pleasures, was placed at the head of a grand army, and marched towards the south He first "subdued the country of the Maharrat" which he divided among his Omrahs," and then proceeded to the siege of Deogur Ramdeo endeavoured to make his peace by submission and having agreed to pay a visit to the emperor at Delhi and to hold his territories as a dependency, he was dismissed with magnificent presents, and his dominions were enlarged.

The division of Deccan known by the name of Telengana is supposed to have extended, along the eastern coast, from the neighbourhood of Cicacole on the north to that of Pulicat on the south and to have been separated on the west from the country known by the name of Maharashtra, or by contraction Maharratta by a line passing near Beder and at some distance east of Dowlutabad to the river Tapti.²

Alla was on his march against the Rajah of Warunkul one of the princes of this district in 1303, when he was recalled by another invasion of the

* This is the first mention which we find of any of the tribes to whom the term Mahratta or Mahratta is applied by the M. lem historians. From this circumstance we can only conjecture that some of them in Deccan inhabited by the descendants of Hindus to whom this name was given, and so it is and originally picked out by Cafoor.

Moguls. He made, indeed, a part of his army proceed in the expedition, for the purpose of reducing the fort of Warunkul, a place of great strength, and, by repute, of immense riches ; but the project failed. In 1307, Cafoor was ordered to march into Telengana by the way of Deoghur, and lay siege to Warunkul. Warunkul was taken by assault, after a siege of some months.¹ The Rajah made his peace, by sacrificing largely to the avarice of his conquerors, and accepting the condition of a tribute

The more Alla tasted of the plunder of Deccan, the more he thirsted for additional draughts. In 1310, Cafoor was sent on a more distant expedition. He marched by Deoghur, and penetrating as far as Carnatic, took the Rajah prisoner and ravaged his kingdom. According to the historians, he returned with such wealth as no country ever yielded to a predatory invader.² Nor did he remain long at Delhi before he persuaded the Shah to send him once more into Deccan ; where he ravaged several countries, and sent the plunder to Alla. This prince had ruined his constitution by intemperance in the seraglio, and felt his health in rapid decline. He sent for Cafoor from Deccan, and complained to him of the undutiful behaviour of his wife and his son Cafoor, whose eyes had already turned themselves with longing to the throne, contemplated the displeasure of the emperor against his family as a means for realizing his most extravagant hopes. He prevailed upon Alla to throw his two eldest sons, and their

¹ The neighbouring Rajahs, says Ferishta, hastened to the assistance of the Rajah of Warunkul, another proof of the division into petty sovereignties

² Besides several *chests*, of jewels, pearls, and other precious things, the gold alone amounted to about one hundred millions sterling. Col Dow thinks this not at all incredible Hist. of Hindost 1 276 and Col. Wilks (Hist. of Mysore, p 11) seems to have little objection

BOOK III
CHAP 3
1310.

BOOK III mother, into prison and to put to death several of
CHAP. 3 the chiefs by, whom his pretensions were most likely
1316. to be opposed When things were in this train Alla
expired in the year 1316, in the twenty first year of
his reign

The time was not yet come when Cafoor deemed it expedient to declare himself king He produced a testament, genuine or spurious, of the late prince, in which he appointed Omar, his youngest son, then seven years of age, his successor, and Cafoor regent The first act of Cafoor's administration was to put out the eyes of the two eldest of the sons of Alla But there was a third Mubarick, who escaped till a conspiracy of the foot guards put the regent to death only thirty five days after the decease of his master The reins of government were immediately put into the hands of Mubarick but he thought proper to act in the name of his young brother already upon the throne, for the space of two months, till he had gained the Omrahs He then claimed his birth right deposed his brother, according to the Asiatic custom, put out his eyes and sent him for life to the fort of Gualior

Mubarick was a man of vicious inclinations, and mean understanding He for a moment sought popularity, by remitting the more oppressive of the taxes, and relaxing the reins of government but the last so injudiciously, that disorder and depredation overran the country

The reduction of the revolted Cuzerat was one of the first measures of Mubarick. The enterprise being entrusted to an officer of abilities, was successfully performed

The Rajahs in the Deccan yielded a reluctant obedience which presuming on their distance thus imagined they insight now without much danger

espend Mubarick, in the second year of his reign, book III.
raised a great army, and marched to Deoghur; where ^{that} not finding much resistance, he did little more than 1321.
display his cruelty, in the punishment of those, who,
charged with enmity or disobedience, fell into his
hands.

Among the favourites of Mubarick was Hassen,
formerly a slave, and, according to Ferishta, the son
of a seller of rags in Guretal. This man was an
instrument of the pleasures of the Shah; and upon
his accession to the throne had been honoured with
the title of Chusero, and raised to the office of Vizir.
Finding nothing more to perform in the region of
Deoghur, Mubarick placed Chusero at the head of a
part of the army, and sent him on an expedition
against Malabar, while he himself returned with the
remainder to Delhi.

The vices of Mubarick, and of his government,
became daily more odious. He was the slave of every
species of intemperance, and void of every humane
or manly quality, which could procure the indulgence
of mankind to his faults. Conspiracy succeeded con-
spiracy, and one insurrection another, till Chusero,
beholding the contempt in which his master was held,
believed he might shed his blood with safety, and
place himself upon his throne. The reputation and
plunder, derived from the success of his expedition to
Malabar,¹ had added greatly to his power. He made
use of his influence over the mind of the emperor to
fill with his creatures the chief places both in the
army and the state. In the year 1321, he conceived
himself prepared for the blow; when in one night
Mubarick and his sons were destroyed.

¹ According to Wilks, what is here called Malabar was not the dis-
trict which is now called by that name, but the hilly belt along the
summit of the Ghauts, from Soonda to Coorg. *Hist. of Mysore*, p. 10.

BOOK III. On mounting the throne, Chusero assumed the title
CHAP. 3 of Nasir ul din or defender of religion a cause
 1323 which has seldom been associated with that of go-
 vernment, except for the purposes of fraud and
 Chusero, it seems, was aware that, for his govern-
 ment, such a covering was required.

He put to death, without remorse, a great multi-
 tude of persons in the service of Mubatik all those
 from whom he imagined that he had any thing to fear,
 and distributed the offices of government among his
 creatures "The army," says Ferishta, 'loved nothing
 better than a revolution for they had always, upon
 such an occasion, a donation of six months' pay im-
 mediately advanced from the treasury " so exactly
 does military despotism resemble itself, on the banks
 of the Tiber, and those of the Ganges.

But though Chusero met with no opposition in
 ascending the throne he did not long enjoy his
 kingdom in peace

Ghazi was governor of Lahore and though, for
 the sake of securing him to his interest, Chusero had
 bestowed high office and rank upon his son Jonah,
 Jonah made his escape from Delhi, and joined his
 father at Lahore

Ghazi dispatched circular letters to the Omrahs
 exerted himself to raise forces and was joined by
 several of the viceroys with their troops Chusero
 dispatched an army to subdue the rebellion but the
 soldiers of Ghazi were hardened by frequent wars
 with the Moguls; those of Chusero enervated
 by the debauchery of the city were broken at
 the first onset and the confederates marched with
 expedition to the capital Chusero was ready to
 receive them with another army Though betrayed
 and deserted in the action by a part of his troops he
 maintained the conflict till night when he made a

fruitless endeavour to fly with a few of his friends BOOK III.
Deserted by his attendants, and dragged from his CIIAP. 3.
lurking place, he met the fate which he would have 1323.
bestowed.

The Omrahs hastened to pay their respects to the victor, and the magistrates of Delhi presented to him the keys. Mounting his horse, he entered the city, and arriving at the gates of the palace, he addressed the people, "O ye subjects of this great empire! I am no more than one of you, who unsheathed my sword to deliver you from oppression, and rid the world of a monster. If, therefore, any of the royal line remains, let him be brought, that we, his servants, may prostrate ourselves before his throne. If not, let the most worthy of the illustrious order be elected among you, and I shall swear to abide by your choice." But the people cried out, with vehemence, that none of the royal family remained alive; and that he, who had protected the empire from the Moguls, and delivered it from the tyrant, was the most worthy to reign. He was then seized, and by a sort of violence placed upon the throne; the people hailing him "King of the World."

Tugluk is the name, by which the new emperor chose to be distinguished. It was the name of his father, who is understood to have been a slave in the service of Balin. His mother was of the tribe of the Jaats.

After appointing the instruments of his government, the first care of Tugluk was to secure his northern frontier against the formidable incursions of the Moguls; and so judiciously did he station his force, and erect his forts, that he was not once molested by those invaders during his reign.

This being accomplished, he sent his son Jonah into the Deccan to chastise the Rajah of Warunkul,

BOOK III who, during the late disorders, "had withdrawn his
CHAP. 3. neck from the yoke of obedience" Jonah, with the
 1323 usual ease, hardly meeting with any resistance, over-
 ran the Hindu kingdoms leaving every where behind
 him the cruel marks of imperial vengeance and avarice.
 After a few efforts in the field, the Rajah of Warunkul
 shut himself up in his strong hold, and was besieged.
 From the strength of the place the siege was a work
 of time during which sickness, and along with sick-
 ness, desire to return, and from that desire opposed
 disaffection, spread themselves in the Mohomedan army.
 Several of the Omrahs withdrew with their troops
 when the Prince no longer able to continue the siege
 retreated, first to Deoghur, and thence to Delhi. The
 army was recruited with great expedition, and he
 marched again in a few months towards Warunkul
 which soon yielded to his arms. Many thousands of
 the Hindus were put to the sword and the Rajah
 and his family were sent to Delhi. Appointing
 Omrahs to the government of Telengana, he marched
 against Cuttack, where he gained some advantages
 and then returned by the way of Warunkul to Delhi.

Tuglick receiving complaints of great oppression
 against his officers in Bengal appointed Jonah go-
 vernor of Delhi and marched toward that province
 with an army. Nazir the grandson of the emperor
 Balin had possessed the viceroyalty of Bengal since
 the death of his father. He advanced to meet the
 Emperor with submission and presents and was
 confirmed in his government. Jonah with the nobles
 of Delhi went out to meet his father with rejoicings
 upon his return. A wooden house was hastily erected
 to entertain him. When the entertainment was con-
 cluded and the emperor was about to retire, the
 Omrahs hurrying out to be in readiness to attend
 him, the roof suddenly fell in and crushed him with

several of his attendants ; whether by the contrivance BOOK III.
of Jonah, by the fault of the building, or a stroke of CHAP. S.
lightning, was variously conjectured and believed 1324-51.
He reigned but four years and some months, with
the reputation of a wise and excellent prince.

Jonah mounted the throne by the title of Mahomed III., and began his reign with acts of liberality and beneficence. He distributed profuse gifts, and made magnificent appointments. This prince was a compound of heterogeneous qualities. He was generous to profusion ; a lover of literature, in which he had made considerable acquirements, he was not only temperate but austere in his manner of life, and an attentive performer of acts of religion ; he had no regard, however to justice, or to humanity ; he was cruel and vindictive as a man ; oppressive and tyrannical as a ruler. His plans proceeded on the supposition, that the happiness or misery of his subjects was a matter of indifference ; and when their disaffection began to afford him uneasiness, their misery seemed to become an object of preference and a source of gratification. He displayed however no contemptible talents in supporting himself against the hatred and detestation of mankind.

Immediately upon his accession he directed his attention to the further subjugation of Deccan, but more, it would appear, with a view to plunder, than to permanent dominion. His generals appear to have over-run a large portion of its more accessible parts. He reduced the Carnatic ; and in the hyperbolical language of Ferishta, spread his conquests to the extremity of the Deccan, and from sea to sea.

He adopted frantic schemes of ambition. He raised an army for the conquest of the kingdom of Transoxiana and Chorasan, and another for the subjugation of China. Previous to the grand expedition

BOOK III against China, 100 000 horse were sent to explore
CHAP 3 the route through the mountains, and to establish
 1324-51 forts to the confines of China. The horse did we
 are told, penetrate to the frontiers of China, but were
 met with an army which they durst not oppose and
 the rains, covering with water the roads and the
 plains, obstructed their retreat. They perished
 through fatigue, famine, and disease and scarcely a
 man survived to describe the disaster. The inaccurate
 and uninstructive genius of Oriental history gives
 us no information respecting the track which this ill-
 fated army pursued.

The expense of Mahomed's government led him to oppress his subjects by increase of taxes. To this great cause of misery and discontent, he added others by injudicious schemes of finance. "The king," says Terishta, "unfortunately for his people, adopted his ideas upon currency from a Chinese custom of using paper upon the emperor's credit with the royal seal appended, for ready money. Mahomed instead of paper, struck a copper coin which, being issued at an imaginary value, he made current by a decree throughout Hindustan." This produced so much confusion and misery and so completely obstructed the collection of the revenue that Mahomed was obliged to recall his debased coin and individuals acquired immense fortunes by the ruin of many thousands. The general misery of the people and the impoverishment of the sovereign.

Being called into Deccan, to suppress an insurrection raised by his nephew, whom he ordered to be flled alive and in that condition carried in horrid spectacle round the city, he took a fancy to the situation of Deoghat, resolved to make it his capital by the ruin of Dowlatabad, and to remove thither the inhabitants of Delhi. This caprice he carried

into execution ; unmoved by the calamities that were to fall upon the individuals ; and unable to foresee the alienation in the minds of men to which the sight and the reports of so much unnecessary evil must of necessity expose him. “The emperor’s orders,” says the historian, “were strictly complied with, and the ancient capital left desolate.”

BOOK III.
CHAP. 3.
1324-51.

The provinces, one after another, began now to rebel. The Governor of Multan set the example. Scarcely was he subdued when Bengal broke into insurrection. This too the vigour of Mahomed quickly reduced. He was thence summoned by disturbances in Telingana, where he lost great part of his army, by a plague, then raging at Warunkul. But what, to the mind of Mahomed, was of more importance than the lives of half the inhabitants of Hindustan, he himself was afflicted with the tooth-ach. He even lost a tooth. This he commanded to be buried with solemn pomp, and a magnificent tomb to be erected over it.

Calamity in ever shape assailed the wretched subjects of Mahomed. Such was the excess of taxation, that in many parts, particularly in the fertile country between the Jumna and the Ganges, the cultivators fled from their fields and houses, and preferred a life of plunder and rapine in the woods. From this, and from unfavourable seasons, famine raged about Delhi, and the neighbouring provinces, and multitudes of people perished from want. A chief of the Afghauns came down from the mountains, and plundered the province of Multan. The fierce tribes of Hindus, called by Ferishta Gickers, were combined by a leader, and ravaged the Punjab and Lahore.

Mahomed, struck at last with the calamities of his reign, had recourse to religion for a cure. He sent a splendid embassy to Mēcca, that, his coronation being

BOOK III confirmed by the successor of the prophet, the blessing of Heaven might rest upon his throne

CHAP 3 **1324-51** The Rajahs of Telengana and the Carnatic formed a confederacy and within a few months expelled the Mahomedans from every place in the Deccan, except Dowlatabad

Even the Viceroy of Oude rebelled. But the Emperor, marching against him with expedition, brought him quickly to his feet. Contrary to his usual practice, Mahomed pardoned the offender, and even restored him to his government declaring, that he would not believe in his guilt, and ascribing his transgression to a temporary delusion, which the malice and falsehood of others had produced.

An effort was made to regain what had been lost in Deccan and governors and troops were dispatched to the different districts who in the way of plunder performed considerable feats. But in the mean time disturbances of a new description broke out in Guzerat. Of the mercenary troops, composed of Tartars, Afghauns, and other hardy races from the North, in which consisted a great proportion of the armies of the Mahomedan emperors of Hindustan in considerable number, during some ages, had been Moguls. Of these it would appear that a considerable body had been sent to keep in check the turbulent inhabitants of Guzerat. They began now to commit depredations and to set the power of Mahomed at defiance. Mahomed resolved to punish and extirpate them. The presence of the emperor and their fears made them withdraw from Guzerat but they retired into Deccan and took Dowlatabad by surprise. Mahomed allowed them little time to make an establishment. They ventured to meet him in battle when they were partly slain and partly dispersed. Before he could take the city fresh disturbances arose in Guzerat.

Leaving an Omiah to push the reduction of Dowla- BOOK III.
tabad he hastened to the new insurgents An army ^{CHAP 3} _{1351-57.}
of no inconsiderable magnitude opposed him. He carried on his operations with vigour, and once more prevailed. But in the mean time the Moguls in Deccan, gathering strength upon his departure, defeated his General, and pursued his troops toward Malwa. He resolved to march against them in person. But the settlement of Guzerat was an arduous and a tedious task: Before it was concluded, he fell sick, and died in the year 1351, after a reign of twenty-seven years.

His death was propitious to the Moguls in Deccan; and afforded time for laying the foundation of a Mahomedan empire, which rose to considerable power, and preserved its existence for several centuries. Upon seizing Dowlatabad, the rebel chiefs agreed to elect a sovereign, when their choice fell upon Ismael, an Afghaun, who had been commander of a thousand in the imperial army. Among the insurgents, was a military adventurer of the name of Hussun. Wonderful things are recorded of his predestination to power; as usually happens in the case of those who, from a degraded station, rise to great command over the hopes and fears of mankind. He was an Afghaun slave or dependent of a Brahmen, who professed astrology in Delhi. The Brahmen gave him a couple of oxen to cultivate a piece of waste ground near the city, as means of a livelihood, where his plough turned up a treasure. He informed the Brahmen, and the Brahmen, equally conscientious, or equally cautious, the emperor. The Emperor, struck with the honesty of Hussun, bestowed upon him the command of one hundred horse. The Brahmen told him, that he saw by the stars, he was destined to greatness, and stipulated that, when king of Deccan, he would make

BOOK III him his minister Hussun offered his services to the
Clear 3 first commander who was sent into Deccan, joined the

 1951 57 insurgents and when Ismael was chosen king, he
 was decorated with the title of Zufseir Khan and received a large jaghure for the maintenance of his
 troops

After Mahomed was summoned from Deccan, by the new disturbances in Gazerat, and after his general was obliged to raise the siege of Dowlatabad, Zufseir Khan marched with twenty thousand horse against Beder a city on the Godavery, nearly a hundred miles north west from Golconda, and about the same distance west from Warunkul. This had been the seat of a Hindu rajahship it was at this time a station of one of the imperial generals. Zufseir Khan, obtaining the assistance of the Rajah of Warunkul, who sent him fifteen thousand men and being reinforced with five thousand horse, detached to his assistance by the new king of Dowlatabad engaged and defeated the army of Mahomed. Returning, with glory and plunder, he was met, before reaching the capital, by the king who could not help observing, that more attention was paid to the general than to himself. Making a merit of what would soon be necessity and taking the pretext of his great age, he proposed to retire from the cares of government, and recommended Zufseir Khan as successor. The proposition was applauded and the slave or peasant Hussun, mounting the new throne by the style and title of Sultan Alla ad din Hussun Koagoh Blamee became the founder of the Blamenee dynasty Koollurga or Culberga, which had been the place of his residence he named Ahssunabad, and rendered it the capital of the Deccanee empire.

Sultan Alla was not unmindful of his ancient master from whose name he added the term Kongoh

and according to some authorities, that of Bahmenee, BOOK III. Brahmen being so pronounced, to his royal titles. CHAP 3
He invited Kongoh from Delhi; made him lord of the treasury; and in his edicts associated the name of the Brahmen with his own. Hussun lived, after the acquisition of royalty, eleven years, two months, and seven days, having in that time reduced to his obedience all the regions in Deccan which had ever acknowledged the sway of the emperors of Delhi. He governed with wisdom and moderation, and died at Koolbuiga, in the year 1357, and the sixty-seventh year of his age.¹

Upon the death of the emperor Mahomed, his nephew Feroze, whom he recommended for his successor, was in the imperial camp; and without difficulty mounted the throne. The nerves of the state were relaxed by mis-government; and it displayed but little vigour during the days of Feroze. The governor of Bengal aspired to independence; and the emperor, after several efforts, being unable to reduce him to obedience, was forced to content himself with a nominal subjection² Feroze, however, employed himself with laudable solicitude, in promoting agriculture, and the internal prosperity of his dominions. He lived till the age of ninety years; twenty-eight of

¹ A circumstantial history of the Bahmenee sovereigns was composed by Ferishta, and to Jonathan Scott we are indebted for an instructive translation of it. The above sketch of the origin of the Bahmenee dynasty is drawn partly from Ferishta's Deccan, translated by Scott, partly from his History of Delhi, translated by Dow. The facts are very shortly mentioned, or rather alluded to, by Lieut-Col Mark Wilks, (Historical Sketches of the South of India, ch 1,) where the reader will also find all that research has been able to procure of Hindu materials, and all that sagacious conjecture has been able to build upon a few imperfect fragments of the history of the ancient Hindu governments in the south of India.

² Such is the account of Ferishta. Mr Stewart, (Hist of Bengal, sect 11,) follows other authorities, who represent Bengal as now erected into a Mahomedan kingdom, perfectly independent.

BOOK III which he spent upon the throne. He is celebrated in
 history for having constructed fifty great aqueducts
 or reservoirs of water forty mosques thirty schools
 twenty caravanseras one hundred palaces five hospitals
 one hundred tombs ten baths ten spires,
 one hundred and fifty wells one hundred bridges,
 and pleasure gardens without number

CHAP 3 **1857 59** Mohomed, a son of Feroze, had received the reins
 of government from his father, when the weight of
 them began to press heavily upon his aged bonds. A
 conspiracy however, of the Omrahs, had, after a time,
 obliged him to fly from the throne and Feroze made
 Tuglak his grandson, successor. Tuglak was a
 friend to pleasure and slenderly provided with ta-
 lents. He made an effort to get into his power Mo-
 hamed his uncle, who had been chased from the
 throne but Mohamed threw himself into the fort of
 Nagracote which for the present it was deemed in
 expedient to attack. The emperor, meanwhile, in-
 spired so little respect, that Abu Becker, his cousin,
 in danger from his jealousy, found himself able to
 hurry him to his grave. By means of some Omrahs,
 he corrupted the imperial slaves who assassinated
 their master, after he had reigned but five months.

Abu Becker was hardly more fortunate. Some of
 the Mogul mercenaries, in the imperial service con-
 spired against him and invited Mohamed from Na-
 gracote to place himself at their head. Mohamed
 succeeded and Abu Becker resigned his life and his
 throne, one year and six months after the death of
 Tuglak.

In the reign of Mohamed, the Maharratras (Mah-
 rattas) again appear in the field. They were soon
 brought to submission and Narung their prince
 waited upon the emperor at Delhi. The six years
 of this emperor were chiefly employed in subduing or

anticipating the insurrections of the provincial Omrahs BOOK III.
or governors, from whom he enjoyed scarce an inter- CHAP 3
val of repose. His son Humaioon, who succeeded, 1389-96
was seized with a fatal disorder, and survived his fa-
ther not many days.

The Omrahs, after high dispute, at last raised Mahmood, an infant son of the late Mahomed, to the throne. The distractions in the empire increased

Three of the most powerful Omrahs of the court, Mubarick, Ekbal, and Sadit, fell into deadly feuds. The emperor having left the capital, with the army commanded by Sadit, Mubarick, fearing the resentment of Sadit, shut the gates of the city. The emperor was constrained to abandon Sadit, before he was allowed to re-enter his capital and palace. Joined by his sovereign, Mubarick, the next day, marched out and gave battle to Sadit, but was worsted and forced back into the city. As the rains had commenced, Sadit was obliged to lead his army into quarters. He immediately sent for Nuserit, a prince of the blood, and set him up in opposition to Mahmood, by the name of Nuserit Shah. A conspiracy soon threw Sadit into the hands of Mubarick, who put him to death. But a strong party adhered to Nuserit; and a most destructive contest ensued between the partisans of the rival kings. The balance continued nearly even for the space of three years, during which every species of calamity oppressed the wretched inhabitants. Some of the distant Subahdars looked on with satisfaction, contemplating their own elevation in the depression of the imperial power. But in the year 1396, Mahomed Jehangheer, the grandson of Timur, or Tamerlane, having constructed a bridge over the Indus, invaded Multan. The governor, who already regarded the province as his own, opposed him with

BOOK III. no contemptible force but was overcome, and re
Chap. 3 signed Multan to the conqueror. In the mean time

 1396. the Omrah Ekbal obtained and betrayed the confi-
 dence of Nusrat, whom he obliged to fly to Paniput.
 He opened a deceitful negotiation with the Emperor,
 under cover of which he surprised and slew Muba-
 rick. All power now centred in Ekbal, and the em-
 peror was converted into a cipher. In this situation
 were affairs at Delhi, when intelligence arrived that
 Timur himself had crossed the Indus.

The birth of Timur or Tamerlane, was cast at one of those recurring periods, in the history of the Asiatic sovereignties, when the enjoyment of power, for several generations, having extinguished all manly virtues in the degenerate descendants of some active usurper prepares the governors of the provinces for revolt, dissolves the power of the state and opens the way for the elevation of some new and daring adven-
 turer. At no preceding period perhaps had these causes enervated the powers of government over so great a part of Asia at once, as in the times of Tam-
 erlane. The descendants of Gingis had formed their immense conquests into three great kingdoms of which Persia was one the intermediate regions of Transoxiana, Chorasan Bactria and Zalulistan or Candahar, and Cabul lying between Persia and Tar-
 tary were the second, and Tartary itself or rather Tartary and China in conjunction the third. The dynasties of the race of Gingis, in all these several kingdoms, had been in possession of power so long as now to display the effects which possession of power in Asia invariably produces. The reigning sovereigns had every where given themselves up to the vices which are the natural growth of the throne the viceroys of the provinces despised their authority and weakness and distraction pervaded the empire.

About thirty years before the birth of Timur, the kingdom of Persia had undergone a species of disso-
lution; almost every province, under a rebel go-
vernor, had been erected into an independency, and
the whole divided into a number of petty states.
From nearly the same period, the kingdom of Zaga-
tai, (this was the intermediate sovereignty, so called
from that son of Gingis whose inheritance it became),
had been contended for by a succession of usurpers.
The Mogul throne of Tartary and China had been less
violently agitated, but was greatly reduced in power.
Into what confusion and weakness the Afghaun em-
pire of Delhi had fallen, we have seen in sufficient
detail.

Timur was born forty miles to the south of Samarcand, in the village of Sebzar, where his fathers, enjoying the rank or command of a toman of horse, had possessed a local authority for some generations. Timur had, from a tender age, been involved in the warfare of a distracted period; and by his courage, activity, and address, had at five and twenty fixed upon himself the hopes and esteem of a large proportion of his countrymen. Amid the other calamities which had fallen upon the kingdom of Zagatai or Samarcand, upon the breaking up of the government of the descendants of Gingis, the Tartars of Cashgar had been incited, by the apparent weakness of the state, to invade the country, where they now oppressed and massacred the wretched inhabitants. Timur stood forward as the deliverer of his country; but when the day for action arrived, the chiefs who had promised to support him betrayed their engagements, and he was constrained to fly to the desert with only sixty horsemen. Timur run every sort of danger, and endured every sort of hardship, for several months, during which he led the life of a fugitive.

BOOK III
CHAP. 3

1396

BOOK III or outlaw By degrees, however he collected a party
CHAP 3 of well tried adherents The soldiers of fortune, the
 most adventurous of the youth, gathered around him
 1396 He harassed the Tartars by daring yet cautious
 onsets whence he increased his reputation, and
 multiplied his followers. After a series of struggles,
 the invaders were finally driven from Transoxiana
 But it was not till the age of thirty four, and after a
 course of strenuous and fortunate activity, that he
 was raised by the general voice to the undivided
 sovereignty of his native country

Placed on the throne of Samarcand, the eye of
 Timur perceived the situation of the neighbouring
 countries. The provinces or kingdoms which had
 become detached from the house of Zagatai Karisme,
 and Chorasan first tempted his restless ambition
 and some years were spent in adding these important
 conquests to his dominion. The contiguous provinces
 of Persian Mazenderan and Segistana, to which was
 added Zululistan, the grand southern or Indian dis-
 trict of the kingdom of Zagatai next employed his
 conquering arms. These enterprises successfully ter-
 minated, he passed into Fars, the Persia proper into
 Persian Iraq, and Aderbijan, the conquest of which
 he completed in two years. The princes or usurpers
 of the provinces Shirvan and Gilan sent to make
 their submission and to promise obedience. At
 Shiraz, in the year 1386 he received intelligence
 that Taktamish Khan, a Tartar chief whose autho-
 rity was acknowledged throughout the region known
 to the Persians under the title of Desht Kapsik
 north of the Caspian had made incursion into Tran-
 soxiana. He flew to repel the invader and the
 desire of chastising Toktumish was the primary
 cause of the conquests of Timur in Turkestan. He
 followed his enemy into regions void of houses where

the men fled before him. When far driven to the north, they were at last constrained to fight; and the army of Timur, after severe suffering, repaid itself by a complete victory, which compelled Toktamish, with his remaining followers, to take shelter in the mountains on the western side of the Caspian Sea. From this enterprise, the victor returned to complete the conquest of Persia. He drove from the city of Bagdad, the last prince in Persia of the house of Gingis; he conquered the whole of Mesopotamia; pushed his way into Tartary through mount Caucasus, to chastise anew the insolence of Toktamish, who had passed Deibend and made an inroad in Shurvan; and, having settled these extensive acquisitions, was, in 1396, prepared to carry his army across the Indus.

Timur proceeded from Samarcand, by the city of Termed, and passing a little to the eastward of Balk, arrived at Andeob, a city on the borders of that stupendous ridge of mountains which separates Hindustan from the regions of the north. The difficulties of the passage were not easily surmounted; but every thing yielded to the power and perseverance of Timur. He descended to the city of Cabul, whence he marched towards Attock, the celebrated passage of the Indus, and in the year 1397, commenced his operations against Mubarick, who governed the frontier provinces of the empire of Delhi. Mubarick betook himself to a place of strength, and resisted the detachment sent to subdue him, but on the approach of the conqueror with his whole army, fled, with his family and treasure. The attention of Timur was now called to the situation of his grandson, who had invaded Hindustan the preceding year. The solstitial rains had forced him to draw his army into Multan, after it had suffered much from the season, and no sooner was he enclosed within the city, than

BOOK III.
CHAP 3
1397.

BOOK III the people of the country invested it, preventing supplies. **CHAP 3** Mahomed was reduced to the greatest distress, when his grandfather detached a body of horse to support him and soon after followed with his whole army. He ravaged Multan and Lahore, putting the inhabitants of several of the cities which presumed to offer any resistance indiscriminately to the sword. Without further delay, he directed his march towards Delhi, and encamped before the citadel.

1397

On the seventh day though unlucky, Ekbal, and his ostensible sovereign marched out to engage him. But the enervated troops of Delhi scarcely bore to commence the action with the fierce soldiers of the north and Timur pursued them with great slaughter to the walls of Delhi. Ekbal and Mahmood fled from the city in the night, the sovereign towards Guzerat, the minister towards Birren upon which the magistrates and omrahs of the city tendered their submissions and opened the gates. In levying the heavy contributions imposed upon the city, disputes arose between the Moguls of Timur and the inhabitants when blood began to flow. One act of violence led on to another till the city was involved in one atrocious scene of sack and massacre which Timur (authorities differ) was either careless to prevent, or pleased to behold.

Timur remained at Delhi fifteen days and arrested the progress of conquest in Hindustan. Having received the submissions of several omrahs the governors or subahdars of provinces and confirmed them in their commands he marched in a northern direction, over running the country on both sides of the Ganges till he reached the celebrated spot where it issues from the mountains. He then advanced along the bottom of the hills to Cabul and thence proceeded to Samarcand.

Delhi remained in a state of anarchy for two months after the departure of the Moguls. It was then entered by the pretended emperor Nuserit, with a small body of horse. Ekbal, however, by means of some Zemindars, was still able to dislodge him, and recovered the Dooab or country between the rivers, which, with a small district round the city, was all that now acknowledged the sovereign of Delhi. The governors or subahdars of the provinces all assumed independence, and adopted royal titles. Lahore, Dibalpore [Punjab], and Multan, were seized by Chizer; Canoge, Oude, Corah, and Jionpoor, by Shaja Jehan, then styled the king of the East; Guzerat, by Azim, Malwa, by Delawir, and the other departments, by those who happened in each to have in their hands the reins of government. Ekbal made some efforts, but attended with little success, to extend his limits. He received Mahmood, who fled from the disrespectful treatment bestowed on him by the governor or king of Guzerat, but compelled him to live on a pension, without claiming any share in the government. At last he came to blows with Chizer, the powerful usurper of Multan and Lahore; when he was defeated, and lost his life in the action. Mahmood then recovered a small remainder of the power which once belonged to the Shahs of Delhi, but knew not how to employ it either for his own or the public advantage. Nothing but the struggles and contests which prevailed among the usurpers of the provinces prevented some one of them from seizing his throne, and extinguishing his impotent reign in his blood; when dying of a fever, in the year 1413, "the empire fell," says Ferishta, "from the race of the Turks [or Tartars], who were adopted slaves of the empe-

BOOK III for Mahomed Gouri the second of the race of the
CHUR 3 sovereigns of India, called the dynasty of Gaur¹

1413

An Omrah, who happened to be in command at Delli, presumed to mount the vacant throne but Chizer, with the troops and resources of Multan and Lahore, found little difficulty in throwing him down from his rash elevation

Within a short period subsequent to the departure of Timur from Delli, that conqueror had settled the affairs of Persia reduced Syria, Egypt, and Asia Minor defeated Bajazet the Turkish emperor on the plains of Galatia and prepared a vast expedition against China, which he was conducting through the plains and across the mountains of Torky when he fell sick, and died, in the year 1405, leaving his vast empire to his son Shroochi

Chizer, it seems, was of the race of the prophet His father had been adopted as the son of a great Omrah, who was governor of Multan, in the reign of Ternze Upon the death of this Omrah and his son the father of Chizer succeeded as Subahdar of Multan, and from him the government descended to his son At the time when Timur arrived in India he was involved in difficulties, through the power of a neighbouring chief and had the prudence or good luck to obtain the protection of the conqueror who confirmed him in the government of Multan and added to it several other important provinces

Chizer affected to decline the title of sovereign pretending that he held the government of India

¹ The two dynasties of Gaur are what is spoken of occasionally by the Oriental historians under the title of the Afghau and Iau an government of India; Afghau and Iau are also Abd ul and several other brief names applied to the w^{ch} is a part of the people who inhabit the chain of mountains from Herat to the mouth of the Indus

only as deputy of the house of Timur, in whose name BOOK III
CHAP. 3
he ordered the coin to be struck, and the instruments of government to be expedited. By this expedient, we are told, he obviated the jealousies and competition of the Omrahs, many of whom would have regarded their claim to the throne as preferable to his own. Chizer governed with considerable abilities ; and the people again tasted the fruits of peace and protection under his reign. He made but little progress in reannexing the revolted provinces to the empire of Delhi. He reigned, however, from the furthest branch of the Indus, to the extremity of the Doab, and from the Cashmere and Himalah mountains to the latitude of Guahor.

After a reign of seven years and some months his death transferred the government to Mubarick his son. Mubarick was early involved in a contest with the Gickers, who, under a leader of the name of Jisserit, continued to molest the Punjab and Lahore during the whole of his reign. The Hindu tribes in the hill country of Mewat, to the south of Delhi ; those also in the hill country to the north of Budaoon or Rohilcund, gave him at various periods no little disturbance. A war was at one time kindled between him and the governor who had usurped the provinces lying eastward from Delhi, and was then known by the title of the King of the East. Coming however to a drawn battle, the two sovereigns were contented ever after to leave each other in peace. A rebellious slave, in the northern provinces, drew him into a contest with the Moguls of the empire of Samarcand, the rebel having invited the Viceroy of Shiroch who resided at Cabul, to come to his assistance. The Moguls were defeated in battle and repelled. Mubarick, however, in consequence of a conspiracy, headed by the Vizir, was shortly after assassinated, in

BOOK III the fourteenth year of a reign, during which he had
Chap 3 displayed considerable talents for government, and
1420-46 more than usual attention to justice and humanity

The Vizir placed Mahomed, a grandson of Mubarick upon the throne, expecting to govern the kingdom in his name, or in time to appropriate the shadow as well as the substance of command. But the Omrahs were disgusted with his pretensions and levied war which enabled or compelled the king to rid himself by assassination of his domineering minister. The Omrahs returned to obedience and the king after making a parade of his power in a progress through several of the provinces, returned to Delhi, and resigned himself to pleasure. The temper of the times was not such as to permit a negligent hand to hold the reins of government with impunity. The Omrahs in the distant governments began immediately to prepare for independence. Beloh Lodi the governor of Serhind, a town on the Sutledge or eastern branch of the Indus, made himself master of Lahore of the greater part of the Punjab, and the country eastwards as far as Paniput, within a few leagues of Delhi. Beloh retired before the imperial army, but preserved his own entire and re-occupied the country as soon as the troops of Mahomed returned. Another Victor who had become independent in Malwa, and assumed the title of its King marched against the feeble sovereign of Delhi who saw no hopes of safety but in calling the rebel Beloh to his aid. An indecisive action was fought and the monarchs of Delhi and Malwa, both suffering from their fears made haste to quiet their minds by huddling up an adjustment but Beloh attacked in its retreat the army of Malwa which he plundered and deprived of its baggage. He was dispatched by Mahomed against Jissoot the Gicker chief who still

harassed the northern provinces But Beloli made his own terms with the plunderer; and returned to besiege Delhi. It held out however so long, that for the present he abandoned the enterprise Mahomed shortly after died. his power reduced to a shadow, after a reign of twelve years and some months

BOOK III
CHAP 3
1446.

In the same year, viz 1446, died Shiroch, son of Timur, and Emperor of the Moguls Upon his death the vast empire of Timur, which had yet remained entire, underwent division. The eldest son of Shiroch, the famous Ulug Beg, inherited the imperial titles, and the dominion of Western Tartary or Transoxiana The eldest son of Basinker, another of the sons of Timur, possessed himself of Chorasan, Candahar, and Cabul The second son of Basinker held possession of the Western Persia. And Abul Kazem, the third of Timur's sons, became sovereign of Georgia, and Mazenderan.

Alla, the son of Mahomed, mounted the throne of Delhi, honoured now with the obedience of little more than a few of the contiguous districts. Alla shewed no talents for government, and after a few years, being attacked by Beloli, resigned to him the throne, upon condition of receiving the government of Budaoon, where he lived and died in peace.

Beloli was an Afghaun, of the tribe of Lodi, which subsisted chiefly by carrying on the traffic between Hindustan and Persia. Ibrahim, the grandfather of Beloli, a wealthy trader, repaired to the court of Feroze at Delhi, and acquired sufficient influence to be entrusted with the government of Multan. When Chizer succeeded to the same command, he made the son of Ibrahim master of his Afghaun troops; and afterwards bestowed upon him the government of Serhind. Beloli was not the son of the governor of

BOOK III. Serhind but of another of the sons of Ibrahim

Chap 3 Beloh, upon the death of his father repaired to his

1446

uncle at Serhind and so effectually cultivated his favour that he received his daughter in marriage, and his recommendation to succeed him in his government. But Ibrahim left a brother Teroze, and a son Cuttul, who disputed the pretensions of the son in law of the governor of Serhind. Beloh was the most powerful and adroit and of course the successful competitor. The rest, however, excited against him the Emperor of Delhi. His country was attacked and over-run. But Beloh kept his army together, and speedily recovered his territory, when the imperial troops were withdrawn. By activity, valour, and skill, something was daily added to the power of Beloh by indolence, effeminacy, and folly, something was daily detached from the power of the sovereign of Delhi, till Beloh was able to measure strength with him on more than equal terms, and finally to seat himself on his throne.

The mother of Beloh was smothered, while pregnant under the ruins of a falling house. Her husband, opening her body saved the infant, afterwards emperor of Hindustan. It is related that when Beloh was yet a youth, in the service of his uncle a famous Darvesh, whom he had gone to visit, suddenly cried out with enthusiasm Who will give two thou and rupees for the empire of Delhi? Beloh had but one thousand six hundred rupees in the world. But he sent his servant immediately to bring them. The Darvesh, receiving the money laid his hand upon the head of Beloh, and gave him salutation and blessing as the king of Delhi. Ridiculed by his companions as a dupe Beloh replied, that if he obtained the crown it was cheaply purchased. If not still the benediction of a holy man was not without its use.

Those Omrahs, who regarded their own pretensions to the throne as not inferior to those of Beloli, were disaffected. A party of them joined Mahmood, who held the usurped sovereignty of Bahar, and the country towards Orissa; and was called king of Jionpoor, the city, at which he resided, on the banks of the Goomty, about 40 miles from Benares. The victory which Beloli gained over their united forces established him firmly on his throne.

BOOK III.

CHAP 3

1480.

Beloli made a progress through his unsettled provinces, confirming or removing the several governors, as he supposed them affected to his interests. He was not long suffered to remain in peace. Between him and the rival sovereign of Jionpoor, or the East, an undecisive war was carried on during the whole of his reign. The advantage, partly through force, and partly through treachery, was, upon the whole, on the side of Beloli, who at last drove the king of the East from Jionpoor, and severed from his dominions the district to which it belonged. In his declining years Beloli divided the provinces of his empire among his sons, relations, and favourites; and died at an advanced age, in the thirty-ninth year of his reign. He was a modest sovereign; and when reproved by his friends for showing so little of the prince, "It was enough for him," he replied, "that the world knew he was king, without his making a vain parade of royalty."

The partition which Beloli made of his dominions had no tendency to prevent those disputes about the succession, which are so frequent in the East, but neither, perhaps, did it augment them. A strong party of the Omrahs declared for Secunder, one of the younger sons of Beloli; and after some struggle of no great importance he was seated firmly on the throne. The usual measures were pursued for placing

BOOK III. the provinces in a state of obedience and Secunder
Chap. 3. was stimulated to endeavour the restoration of some

 1525 of the districts which far several reigns had effected
 independence on the throne of Delhi. The tranquillity, however of an empire which had been so long
 distracted, was not easily preserved and Secunder
 was perpetually recalled from the frontiers of his
 kingdom, to anticipate or to quell insurrections within.
 He waged notwithstanding a successful war with the
 king of the East, who had been driven from Siaopoor
 by the father, and was now driven from Bahar by the
 son. But he found himself unequal to a war for the
 recovery of Bengal, to the confines of which he had
 once more extended the empire of Delhi and that
 important province still remained in the hands of the
 usurper. Secunder reigned with the reputation of
 abilities and of no inconsiderable virtue for twenty
 eight years and five months, and was succeeded by
 his son Ibrahim.

Ibrahim had personal courage and was not altogether
 destitute of talents but he was a violent,
 capricious unthinking prince and quickly lost the
 affections and respect of his subjects. One of his
 maxims was, "that kings had no relations for that
 all men equally were the slaves of the monarch." This
 though perfectly constitutional doctrine in the
 East was a language which had now become unusual
 to the proud Omrahs at the falling throne of Delhi.
 Ibrahim was involved in an uninterrupted struggle
 with rebellion against which however he maintained
 himself during a space of twenty years. His empire
 was then invaded by Baber, a descendant of the great
 Timur who in 1525 deposed him at once of his
 throne and his life.

CHAP. IV.

*From the Commencement to the Close of the Mogul
Dynasty.*

UPON the death of Shiroch, the son of Timur, and the division of the dominions of that conqueror among his descendants, quarrels and war ensued ; the weakness and vice, which are the usual attendants upon long inherited sovereignty, weakened the unsteady powers of Asiatic government ; and in a few years the great empire of Timur was in a state of dissolution. The Turks, who had penetrated into western Asia, and who, under Bajazet, received a dreadful overthrow by the arms of Timur, no sooner felt the weakness of government in the hands of his successors, than they pressed upon the nearest provinces, and at an early period were masters of Mesopotamia. Ismael was a disgraced servant of Jacob Beg, the eighth in the Turkish dynasty of the white sheep. Pursuing the career of a military adventurer, he collected around him a number of those daring characters, so numerous in the turbulent and unsettled countries of the East, whose business it is to seek a livelihood by their sword, and after a period, spent in subordinate plunder, he conceived himself sufficiently strong to attack, in the year 1500, the governor, or king (for he now affected independence) of the province of Shirvan. After the conquest of Shirvan, Ismael successively made himself master of Tauris, Media, Chaldea, Persia, and became the founder of the dynasty of the Sophis, who held the sceptre of Persia for a number of generations.

BOOK III.

^{CHAP. 4.}

1525.

BOOK III On the eastern side of the Caspian Shaïbek Khan
CHAPTER 4 a chief of the Usbecks or Tartars of Desht Kipshak,

 1525. entered Transoxiana, at the head of his horde, in the
 year 1494. In the course of four years, he rendered
 himself master of all Transoxiana and Chorasan the
 last of which was however wrested from the Usbecks
 by the arms of Ismael Sophi, in the year 1510.

Baber was the grandson of Abu Seid, the king of Zagatai and Abu Seid was the son of Mahomed the grandson of Timur, through Miran Shah. The dominions of Abu Seid were at his death divided among his sons. Ali became king of Cabul Ahmed, king of Samarcand Ahmer king of Indya and Fergana and Mahmood, king of Kundlz and Budue-shan. Baber was the son of Ahmer, king of Indya and Fergana a district surrounded by mountains, lying between Samarcand and Cashgar. He succeeded his father, while yet very young in the year 1493 and was immediately involved in a war with his uncles desirous to profit by his youth and inexperience. Baber maintained himself against them with varying fortune, sometimes reduced to the lowest ebb, at other times borne on a sloping tide till the arrival of Shaïbek, the Tartar. Shaïbek after a struggle which was strenuously supported by Baber swept the posterity of Timur from Transoxiana and Chorasan. Baber was compelled to retire towards Cabul where the son of his uncle Ali had been de-throned by his Omrahs and the greatest misery prevailed. The weak resistance offered to Baber in Cabul he had means to overcome and became master of that province in the year 1504. After spending some years in contending with the enemies who disputed with him the possession of Cabul and

resisted his efforts for obtaining Candahar, he was BOOK III
filled with the hopes of recovering his paternal do- CHAP. 4.
minions, Ismael Sophi having defeated and slain his
enemy, Shaibek In the year 1511 he marched
towards Bochara, of which, after some resistance, he
made himself master. His next object was Samarcand, which surrendered upon his arrival. His am-
bition was to make this celebrated capital of the
great founder of his house the place of his residence ;
and he appointed Nasir, his brother, governor of
Cabul. But he had not enjoyed above nine months,
this coveted thione, when the Usbecks, under the
successor of Shaibek, returned from the desert, and
Baber, after an unavailing struggle, was forced back
to Cabul

Baber had not spent one year in re-establishing
his authority in Cabul, when information received of
the weakness at Delhi inspired him with hopes of in-
demnifying himself in the south for the possessions
which he had been constrained to relinquish in the
north. In the year 1519 he took possession of all
the countries on the further side of the Blue River;
one of the branches of the Indus. He overran a part
of the Punjab, levying contributions , and after chas-
tising the Gickers, who had molested him in his pro-
gress, he returned to Cabul. Before the end of the
same year, he renewed his march into Hindustan,
and intended to reduce Lahore; but was interrupted
by news from the northern side of the mountains
which separate Bochara from Cabul, that a district
there, of which he still retained possession, had been
invaded by the Tartars of Cashgar. The following
year, the conqueror was recalled, after he had made
some progress in the invasion of Hindustan, by intel-
ligence that Cabul itself was assailed by the people of
Candahar. Baber resolved to complete the conquest

BOOK III of this neighbouring country, before he again led out
Chap. 4 his armies to regions more remote. The vigour of
1525 the king of Candahar who held out for three years,
procured, so long, a respite to the kings and Omrahs
of Hindustan or rather afforded three additional
years for the exercise of their mutual hostilities, and
the oppression of the wretched inhabitants. But in
the year 1523, Candahar being at last reduced Baber
rendered himself master of Lahore and the Punjab.
The next year beginning to feel the seducements of
luxury and ease he contented himself with directing
his troops in Hindustan to march against Delhi.
But they were attacked and overthrown. In 1525
Baber resolved to repair this misfortune by his pre-
sence. Ibrahim marched out to defend his capital
with an army as much inferior in bravery, as it was
superior in numbers. It was speedily routed. Ibra-
him was slain in battle, Baber entered Delhi and,
mounting the throne of the Afghauns or Patans, be-
gan the Mogul dynasty in Hindustan.

Great efforts were still demanded for the reduction
of the provinces, the Omrahs of which being Af-
ghauns and expecting little favour under a Mogul
monarch held out, and even formed themselves into
an extensive and formidable confederacy setting a
son of the late Secunder as sovereign at their head.
Baber's principal officer, alarmed by the resistance
which it seemed necessary to overcome combined in
offering him advice to return. The king declaring
that he would relinquish such a conquest only with his
life displayed so formidable a spirit of resolution and
perseverance, that in a short time the confederacy
began to dissolve. Many of the Omrahs who were
the weakest, or whose territories were the most ex-
posed came over to Baber, and entered into his ser-
vice. At last a great battle was fought, which Ba-

ber with difficulty won, but which gave him so decided a superiority, that his enemies were no longer able to meet him in the field. Having reduced the provinces which latterly paid obedience to the throne of Delhi, he advanced against the Omrahs of the East, who for a length of time had affected independence. He had scarcely, however, conquered Bahar, when he fell sick and died, in the year 1530.

BOOK III.
CHAP. 4.

1530.

Humaioon succeeded to the throne of his father, but was not long suffered to enjoy it in peace. His brother Camuan, in the government of Cabul, formed a resolution of seizing upon the Punjab; and Humaioon was fain to confer upon him the government of all the country from the Indus to Persia, on condition of his holding it as a dependency. Mahmood, too, the son of the Emperor Secunder, whom the confederated Omrahs had placed at their head, was again joined by some chiefs, and kindled the flames of war in the eastern provinces. A victory gained by the Emperor extinguished all immediate danger in that quarter. But Shere Khan, the regent of Bahar, refused to give up the fortress of Chunar. A conspiracy was formed in favour of Mahomed, a prince of the race of Timur, and Bahadur, king of Guzerat, was excited to hostilities by the protection which Humaioon afforded to the Rana of Chitoie. Bahadur was unequal to his enterprise; the war against him was pushed with activity and vigour, and he lost entirely the kingdom of Guzerat. Humaioon was now in favour with fortune, from Guzerat he marched to the eastern provinces, and reduced Chunar. Having gained the passes, he then entered Bengal; the government of which had recently been usurped, and its sovereign expelled, by the enterprising Shere. He took possession of Gour, then the capital of the province; and there resided for several months; but, his

BOOK III troops suffering from the humidity of the climate, and
Char 4 his two brothers now aspiring openly to his throne,
1530-40 he was compelled to proceed towards Agra, which he
and his father had made the seat of government. In
the mean time Shere, though he had been defeated
was not subdued. He made himself master of the
strong fortress of Rhotas, after he had been obliged
to retire from Gour, and he now threw himself in
the way of Humaioon, whose presence was urgently
required in another part of his empire. Humaioon
threatened with detention if nothing worse, desired
accommodation. After a negotiation, it was agreed
that the government of Bahar and Bengal should be
conferred upon Shere, paying a slight tribute, in ac-
knowledgment of dependence. The chance of find-
ing the camp of the Emperor unguarded, under the
negligence inspired by the prospect of peace was one
among the motives which led Shere to open the ne-
gotiation. The perfidy succeeded, and Humaioon,
having lost his army, was constrained to fly.

He repaired to Agra, and was joined by his bro-
thers, whose united strength was no more than suffi-
cient to defend them against Shere the Afghani.
But their conflicting interests and passions defeated
every scheme of co-operation. The army with which
Humaioon marched out to meet the assailant was
overthrown, the capital no longer afforded him a
place of refuge; he fled from one place to another,
subject at times to the greatest hardships, and was
at last obliged to quit the kingdom, and seek an asy-
lum in Persia where he was hospitably and honour-
ably entertained.

The grandfather of Shere the new sovereign of
Hindustan came from the district of Roh^t in the

mountains of Afghaunistan, in quest of military em- BOOK III
ployment, in the reign of Beloli, and entered into the CHAP. 4
service of an Omrah of the court. His son Hussun 1536-54.
followed the Subahdar, who acquired the title of King of the East; and rose to considerable rank in his service. Ferid, the son of Hussun, received the name of Shere, which signifies lion, from killing with his own hand, in the presence of the King or Governor of Bahar, an enormous tiger which rushed from a thicket. When this monarch died, and his son, a minor, succeeded him, the government of Bahar rested chiefly in the hand of Shere; and a short time elapsed, when the young prince, having made his escape, left the name as well as the power of sovereign to the usurper. He had just accomplished the conquest of Bengal, when Humaioon, returning from Guzerat, invaded his dominions.¹

Immediately after his victory, Sheré assumed the imperial title of Shah, and exerted himself with great activity in reducing the provinces to his obedience. His mandates ran from the furthest branch of the Indus, to the Bay of Bengal; a more extensive dominion than for some ages had belonged to any sovereign of Hindustan. Besieging one of the strongly situated forts, which abound in India, he was killed by an accidental explosion of gunpowder, when he had reigned five years in Hindustan. What can be said of few sovereigns, even in still more enlight-

siderable in the history of British India, is said by Major Stewart, on his Persian authorities, to have been the original seat of the Afghauns, whose mountainous country (Roh signifies a mountainous country, and Rohillas, mountaineers or highlanders) extended, according to the same authorities, in length from Sewad and Bijore to the town of Sia, in Bukharest, and in breadth from Hussin to Rabul Stewart's Bengal, p 127

¹ What relates to Bengal, in these transactions, is extracted minutely by Mr Stewart, (Hist Bengal, sect 5)

BOOK III ended ages, he left various monuments of publick bene
Char 4 **1596-54** cience to prolong the memory, and the love, of his
 short administration. He built caravanseras at every
 stage, from the Nilab or furthest branch of the In-
 dus, to the shores of Bengal he dug a well for the
 refreshment of the traveller at every two miles he
 ordered that all travellers without distinction of coun-
 try or religion should at every stage be entertained,
 according to their quality at the publick expense he
 had trees planted along the roads to shelter the tra-
 vellers against the violence of the sun he established
 post horses, the first in India, for the more rapid con-
 veying of intelligence to government,¹ and for the ac-
 commodation of trade and correspondence even the
 religious comfort of the traveller was not neglected,
 a number of magnificent mosques were erected along
 the road, and priests appointed for the performance of
 devotional services.

Shere left two sons, of whom the youngest, being
 with the army, was proclaimed King. A struggle,
 as usual, ensued, for the possession of the throne a
 signed accommodation was made up between the
 brothers war again quickly broke out the eldest
 lost a battle, from which he fled and disappearing
 was never heard of more. The youngest remained
 emperor, by the name of Selim. The Omralis, how-
 ever, or Subahdars of the provinces who never neg-
 lected an opportunity that promised a chance of in-
 dependence rebelled in several quarters. In some in-
 stances they were not without difficulty subdued.
 After several years spent in reducing his dominions
 to order and obedience Selim was roused from his
 dreams of future tranquillity by intelligence that the
 exiled emperor Humaoon was on his way from Per-

¹ This is a sign of civilization to which the Hindus had not arrived.

sia with an army, for the recovery of Hindustan. Selim prepared for action with vigour. But Humaioon, instead of advancing, retired. Selim, shortly after, was seized with a violent distemper; and died suddenly, in the tenth year of his reign.

BOOK III
CHAP 4
1536-54.

He left a son to succeed him, but only twelve years of age. There was a nephew to the late emperor Shere, by name Mubarick, whose sister was mother of the young prince. Mubarick assassinated the boy in the arms of his mother, three days after he had been proclaimed as king.

Mahomed was the name which Mubarick thought proper to use upon the throne. Vice, profusion, and folly, the attributes of his character and administration, lost him speedily the respect of his people, and the obedience of his Omrahs. His brother Ibrahim raised an army, from which Mahomed fled to the eastern provinces, leaving Ibrahim to assume the style of royalty at Delhi. This was not all. Ahmed, another nephew of the emperor Shere, laid claim to the sovereignty in Punjab, assumed the name of Secunder Shah, and marched towards Agra. Ibrahim met him, and was defeated. Ibrahim was attacked on the other side, by the vizir of Mahomed, and after several turns of fortune, fled to Orissa. Secunder took possession of Agra and Delhi, while Mahomed was engaged in a war with the governor of Bengal; in which at first he was prosperous, but finally stript of his dominions and life.

In the mean time, Secunder was summoned to oppose the exiled emperor Humaioon, who had now a second time returned for the recovery of his throne.

When Humaioon made his escape into Persia, Tamasp the son of Ismael, second of the Sophis, ruled from beyond the Euphrates, to the furthest boundary of Transoxiana. The governor of the

BOOK III province which first afforded shelter to Humaioon
CHAP 4 received him with distinction and he was conveyed,
1536-51 with the respect which seemed due to his rank and misfortunes, to the Presence at Ispahan. He was treated by Tamasp as a sovereign and his misfortunes excited the compassion of a favourite sister of the king, and of several of his counsellors. At their instigation an army of ten thousand horse was entrusted to Humaioon with which he advanced towards Candahar still governed together with Cabul by one of his rebellious brothers. After an obstinate resistance, the city of Candahar fell into his hands, and the rest of the province submitted. Jealousy and dissatisfaction soon sprung up between him and the Persian commanders. But various Omrahs of the country now joined him with their troops and marching to Cabul, he was joined by the second of his rebellious brothers, and several other chiefs. Cabul was in no situation to resist and his hostile brother fled to Bicker, a wild and desert province toward the mouth of the Indus, governed by a relation. When Cabul was subdued Humaioon crossed the mountains to the north, for the purpose of reducing Budueshan, that district of the Mogul kingdom of Transoxiana which had remained united to the dominions of Baber. In the mean time his brother returned from Bicker and in the absence of Humaioon and his army obtained possession of Cabul. Humaioon hastened from Budueshan gave battle to his brother's army, routed it and laid siege to Cabul. His brother seeing no hopes of success fled from the city by night and made his way to Balk where he received assistance from the governor marched against Humaioon & new conquest of Budueshan and expelled his governor. Humaioon left him not to enjoy his acquisition in peace he marched against him and

forcing him to submit, treated him with lenity and respect. Humaioon next involved himself in hostilities with the Usbeks of Balk, over whom at first he gained advantages, but at last was routed, and obliged to retreat to Cabul. In this retreat he was deserted by his perfidious brother, whom he had recently spared. Some of the chiefs of his army wrote to that deserter, that if he could attack the army of Humaioon, they would betray him in the action. Humaioon was accordingly defeated; and obliged to fly towards Buducshan, leaving Cabul a third time to his foe. Being joined, however, by the second of his brothers, who now repaid by great services his former demerits, and by several other chiefs, he was speedily in a condition to march again to Cabul with a force which his brother was by no means able to withstand. After some resistance the brother was obliged to fly, and though he continued for several years to raise up disturbance, he was no longer able to endanger the sovereignty of Humaioon.

That prince, though now in possession of part of his ancient dominions, though aware of the distractions which prevailed in the rest, and invited by the inhabitants of Agra and Delhi, paused at the thought of invading Hindustan. At first he was able to raise an army of only fifteen thousand horse. With that he began to advance towards the Indus, where he was joined by his veterans from Candahar. The governors of Punjab and Lahore fled before him; and those countries were regained without a contest. Secunder detached an army, which advanced towards the Sutledge. But the general of the advanced division of the army of Humaioon surprised the camp of Secunder in the night, and entirely dispersed the troops. This disaster made Secunder hasten with his main army to meet the enemy; a great battle was fought under

BOOK III
CHAP 4

1536-54.

BOOK III the walls of Serhind, in which the young Akbar, son
CHAR 4 of Humaiooa showed remarkable spirit and resolution
1555 Secunder, being routed fled to the mountains of Sc
 wabc.

Humaioon re-entered Delhi in the year 1554 but was not destined to a long enjoyment of the power which he had regained. As he was supporting himself by his staff, on the marble stairs of his palace the staff slipped, and the emperor fell from the top to the bottom. He was taken up insensible and expired in a few days, in the year 1555, the fifty first of his age.

Tamasp still reigned in Persia. But the Uzebecks had now possessed themselves of Bochara and of the greater part of Transoxiana.

Akbar, the son of Humaiooa though not quite fourteen years of age, was placed on his father's throne. He had been nursed in difficulty and misfortune and young as he was those powerful teachers had done much in forming his mind.

When Humaioon with the few friends who adhered to him first fled from India, they nearly perished in the sandy desert which lies between Ajmere and the Indus. With the utmost difficulty, and after the loss of many lives they arrived at Amercot the seat of a Hindu Rajah about two hundred miles from Tatta. It was here that Akbar was born. Humaioon proceeding to Candahar where he still hoped for support was attacked by the governor of Candahar and obliged to fly leaving his infant son and his mother behind him. Akbar was kept at Candahar by the governor till Humaioon was on his march from Persia when he sent him to his uncle at Kabul. When Humaioon after Kabul was taken again he held his son and his wife he took the child in his arms then four years of age and exclaimed "Joseph by

his envious brethren was cast into a well; but he was exalted by Providence to the summit of glory." Akbar once more fell into the hands of his uncle, when that rebellious prince regained possession of Cabul. When Humaoon returned to besiege him, Akbar was bound to a stake, and exposed upon the battlements. Humaoon made proclamation, that if injury happened to Akbar, every human being in Cabul should be put to the sword. The wretched uncle was deterred, or forcibly restrained, from exposing it to such a disaster.

Byram, the chief of the Omrahs in the service of Humaoon, a man of talents, but of a severe, or rather of a cruel disposition, was appointed regent during the minority; which, in so unsettled and turbulent an empire, was not likely to be attended with general submission and peace.

The first object of the new government was to extirminate the party of the late pretended emperor Secunder, and for this purpose an army, with the young sovereign at its head, marched toward the mountains. Secunder fled, the Rajah of Nagracote made his submission, and the rainy season coming on, the army retired into quarters.

In the mean time, the Governor who had been left by Humaoon in the command of Buducshan assumed independence; and presumed so far upon the weakness of the new government, as to march against Cabul. The city stood a siege of four months; but at last submitted, and acknowledged the authority of the invader.

This calamity arrived not alone. Himu, the vizir of Mahomed, the usurper who retained a part of the eastern provinces, marched to the centre of the empire with a formidable army. He took Agra. He took Delhi. The young Shah still remained in his quarters. A council of war was held, in which Byram advised

BOOK III to march against the enemy The principal part of
 CHAP 4 the Omrahs, as the hostile army amounted to 100,000
 1557-60 horse, that of the King to scarcely 20 000 held it ad-
 visable to retreat. But the young Shah supported
 the opinion of Byram with so much ardour that he
 kindled the enthusiasm of the Omrahs, who declared
 their resolution to devote their lives and fortunes to
 his service

While the army was on its march, the governor of
 Delhi, he by whom the city had just been surren-
 dered, joined the King Waiting for a time when
 the presence of the Prince offered no interruption,
 Byram called this governor into his tent, and
 beheaded him It was to anticipate, he told the
 King, the clemency of the Royal mind, that he had
 taken upon him, without consultation, to make this
 example necessary to let the neglectful Omrahs know,
 that want of vigour was hardly less criminal
 than want of loyalty and that, as meritorious ser-
 vices would be amply rewarded, so no failure in duty
 should pass with impunity The Prince whatever
 were his thoughts, thanked the regent for the care he
 bestowed upon his person and government

The brave Himu made the necessary dispositions
 for encountering the imperial army The contending
 parties arrived in presence of one another in the
 neighbourhood of Paniput The Moguls who had
 been reinforced on the march, fought with great con-
 stancy and the enemy were thrown into disorder
 Himu advanced conspicuous on a towering elephant,
 and endeavoured by his example to reanimate his
 troops He was shot with an arrow through the eye
 and his followers, believing him killed endeavoured
 to save themselves by retreat Himu drew the eye
 out of the socket with the arrow and continued the
 fight with unabated constancy But the driver of his

elephant seeing a mortal blow aimed at himself offered to direct the animal wherever he should be desired. Upon this, Himu was surrounded and taken.

BOOK III
CHAP. 4.

1557-60.

When the battle ended, he was brought into the presence of Akbar, almost expiring with his wounds. Byram, addressing the King, told him it would be a merititious action to kill that dangerous infidel with his own hands. Akbar, in compliance with the advice of his minister, drew his sword, but only touching with it gently the head of his gallant captive, burst into tears. This movement of generous compassion was answered by the minister with a look of stern disapprobation, and with one blow of his sabre he struck the head of the prisoner to the ground.

This important victory restored tranquillity to the principal part of Akbar's dominions. It is true that in the same year the invasion of a Persian army, under the nephew of Tamasp, rendered that prince for a time master of Candahar. And the late pretended emperor Secunder advanced into the western provinces, and made the governor fly to Lahore. But the imperial standards were carried with expedition towards the Indus; Secunder was cooped up in a fort; when, offering to surrender the place and all his pretensions, he was permitted to retire into Bengal, and Akbar returned to Lahore.

The overbearing pretensions of an impious, though useful servant, and the spirit of a high-minded, though generous sovereign, could not long be reconciled. Mutual jealousies and discontents arose; the minister used his power with cruelty to deliver himself from those who stood in his way, he increased by that means the disgust of his master; yet he contrived for a time to preserve himself in power, by occupying the mind of the King with military preparation and action. An expedition, which ended successfully,

BOOK III was planned against Gualior, at that time a place of
CHAP 4 the highest importance. In the same year, one of
1557-60 Akbar's generals subdued all the country about Jion
 poor and Benares, hitherto retained by the Omrahs
 who had derived their power from the gift or the
 weakness of the late princes of the Asghaun or Patan
 dynasty. Operations were commenced against Malwa,
 possessed by another of those Omrahs. But all this
 business and success served only to retard not pre-
 vent, the fall of the minister. When the royal ear
 was found open to accusations against the harsh and
 domineering Byram courtiers were not wanting to
 fill it. He was secretly charged with designs hostile
 to the person and government of the Shahi and the
 mind of Akbar, though firm was not unmoved by
 imputations against the man he disliked, however
 destitute of facts to support them. After some
 irresolution and apprehension a proclamation was
 issued to announce that Akbar had taken upon him-
 self the government and that henceforth no mandates
 but his were to be obeyed. Byram, who had shown
 so much resolution when serving his master, was full
 of indecision when called upon to act for himself.
 The sovereign advised him to make a voyage to
 Mecca. At one time Byram proceeded to obey; at
 another time he resolved to render himself indepen-
 dent in some of the provinces which Akbar had not
 yet subdued and at another time conceived the
 design of seizing and governing the Punjab itself.
 He attempted this, but met with no support and
 driven to his last resource implored the clemency of
 his master. Akbar listened to a sure him of for-
 giveness and invited him to his presence. When the
 unfortunate Byram presented himself with all the
 marks of humiliation and bursting into tears threw
 himself on his face at the foot of the throne, Akbar

lifted him up with his own hand, and setting him in his former place at the head of the Omrahs, " If the noble Byram," said he, " loves a military life, he shall obtain the government of a province in which his glory may appear ; if he chooses rather to remain at court, the benefactor of our family shall be distinguished by our favours, but should devotion engage the soul of Byram to make a voyage to the holy city, he shall be provided and escorted in a manner suitable to his dignity." Byram, desiring leave to repair to Mecca, received a splendid retinue and allowance ; but in his passage through Guzerat, an Afghaun Chief, whose father he had formerly slain in battle, pretending salutation, stabbed him with a dagger, and killed him on the spot

BOOK III
ЧИАР 4
1560.

In the year 1560, a son of the late Shah Mahomed, who had found means to raise 40,000 horse, advanced with a design to recover the province of Jionpoor. The generals of Akbar, who had the province in charge, vanquished him with the forces under their command. Presuming, however, on their services or strength, they delayed remitting the plunder. Akbar went towards them without a moment's delay, upon which they made haste to meet him with the spoils. He accepted their obedience ; praised their valour, and bestowed on them magnificent gifts. This is a specimen of the behaviour of Akbar to his Omrahs. Their proneness to seize every opportunity of disobedience he restrained by prompt and vigorous interference ; seldom punished their backwardness ; but always bestowed on their services honour and reward.

Hussun, the governor of Ajmeie, made some progress in subduing several forts in that hilly country, yet held by Hindu Rajahs. The general, sent to reduce Malwa, had carried on the war in that province

BOOK III with so much success as to drive the pretended king
CHAP 4 out of his dominions He fled, however to the sove-
1560-80 reigns of Candesh and Berar from whom he receiv-
ed such effectual support as to be able to defeat the
army of the imperial general, which he pursued to
the vicinity of Agra Akbar gave commission to
Abdalla the Usbeck, governor of Kalpy, a city and
province on the Jumna, to prosecute the war and by
him was Malwa annexed to the Mogul dominions
About the same time the Gickers, those restless tribes
of Hindus who so often from their mountains dis-
turbed the obedience of the upper provinces, were
united under a warlike chief, and assumed the appear-
ance of a formidable enemy They were attacked
with the usual vigour of Akbars government and
compelled to receive, though of their own nation, a
sovereign named for them by the Moguls

Notwithstanding the virtues of Akbars adminis-
tration the spirit of rebellion inherent in the prin-
ciples of Indian despotism left him hardly a moment's
tranquillity, during the whole course of a long and
prosperous reign Hussun revolted in Ajmere and
gained a victory over the imperial troops who were
sent to oppose him Hakim brother of Akbar, a
weak man the governor of Cabul, began to act as an
independent prince A slave of his approaching the
King while marching with his troops let fly an ar-
row which wounded him in the shoulder Abdalla,
the Usbeck, master of Malwa, believed himself so
strong and the King pressed by rebellion in various
quarters so weak that he might erect a throne for
himself He contrived artfully to spread a rumour
that the Shah had contracted a general hatred of the
Usbecks in his service and meditated their destruc-
tion This gained over Secunder and Ibrahim the
governors of two of the eastern provinces Asaph

who held the government of Corah, had obtained great wealth by subduing and plundering a rajahship or Hindu kingdom, between Belar and Bengal, which till this time had escaped the ravage of a Mahomedan conqueror. Not wishing to part with any of this wealth and influence, he joined with the rebels, in hopes of being able to defy the imperial power. Even Zemaun, the captain-general of the empire, and his brother Bahadur, two chiefs of great power and renown, joined the enemies of Akbar, and hoped to raise themselves on the ruins of the king.

Akbar, whom neither exertion nor danger dismayed, opposed himself to his enemies with an activity, which often repaired the deficiencies of prudence. It would be tedious to follow minutely a series of expeditions, so much the same, to subdue one rebellious chieftain after another. Akbar had made considerable progress in reducing the eastern provinces to obedience, when he learned that Hakim, governor of Cabul, in hopes of advantage from his absence, had advanced towards Lahore. The tranquillity of the northern provinces, whose inhabitants were hardy and warlike, was always regarded by Akbar as worthy of more watchful solicitude than that of the east, where the people were effeminate and more easily subdued. Leaving therefore the reduction of the Usbeck rebels still incomplete, he hastened towards Lahore; and, surprising his brother by the celerity of his appearance, he rendered opposition hopeless, and crushed this rebellion in its bud. In the mean time the Usbecks increased their army, and extended their conquests. The expeditious movements of Akbar left them little time to enjoy their advantages. Having returned with a recruited army, he came to an action with the combined forces of the insurgents, and gained

BOOK III.
CHAP 4.

BOOK III a great victory, which effectually quashed the rebel
CHAR 4 hon in the east.

1560-50 The unsettled state of the province of Malwa soon required the royal presence. Among other measures, for the secure possession of that important district, he advanced to the attack of Chitore, a fort of great natural strength situated in a mountainous and difficult part of the province, inhabited by Hindus who had been frequently subdued, by the more powerful of the Mohomedan princes, but had as often revolted when the reins of government were held by a feeble hand. After an obstinate resistance Chitore was taken. Rontampore, in the Arrabarree hills, in the province of Ajmere, was also a hill fort, of great strength which had often been taken from the Hindus, and as often recovered. Having reduced Rontompore, as well as Callinger, another strong hold of similar description and importance in the same range of mountains, he directed his attention to Guzerat.

This was one of the provinces, the governor of which during the decline of the Patan or Afghaun dynasty had assumed independence and it had been governed as a separate kingdom for a number of years. After a time it had fallen into the same confusion which seems the common fate of Asiatic sovereignties, whether great or small. The Omrahs became too powerful for the sovereign the different districts or governments assumed independence and the royal power was reduced to a shadow. In this situation the province offered but little resistance to Akbar the different leaders who felt their inferiority, courting favour by hastening submission. Ilunsun, in Ajmere was able to take the field with an army but as the King was now at leisure to push the war against him, he was driven from the province, and

with the remains of his army, fled to Punjab. At BOOK III:
 tackled by a warlike tribe of the inhabitants, he was ^{CHAP 4.}
there taken prisoner, delivered up to the governor of 1560-80.
 Multan, and by him put to death. No sooner had the
 king turned his back on Guzerat, than some of the
 turbulent chiefs began to assemble armies, and pre-
 pare the means of resistance. The rainy season was
 now commenced, when the great camp was unable to
 move, but Akbar, selecting a small body of cavalry,
 pursued his way with the utmost expedition to Guze-
 rat, surprised the rebels in the midst of their prepara-
 tions, offered them battle notwithstanding the infe-
 riority of his force, and, contrary to all prudential
 calculation, gained a victory, which established his
 authority in Guzerat

The province of Bengal paid a nominal submission to the throne of Delhi, but during several reigns had been virtually independent. After the other provinces of the empire were reduced to more substantial obedience, it was not likely that grounds of quarrel would long fail to be laid between Akbar and the King of Bengal. The Governor or Subahdar of Oude being ordered, as contiguous, to begin operations against him, had gained some important advantages, and was besieging Patna, when he was joined by the Shah. The Bengal chief, seeing no chance of success, offered terms of accommodation. Akbar consented to engage for his life, but demanded that every thing else should be left to his clemency; to spare, however, the blood of their subjects, he offered to decide their disputes by personal combat. In the following night the Bengal chief went secretly down the river in a boat, and his troops immediately evacuated the city. Akbar returned to Agra, and the governor of Oude, to whose jurisdiction Patna was annexed, was ordered to complete the reduction of Bengal. The van-

BOOK III quished sovereign was allowed to retain Orissa. But,
CHAP 4 unfortunately for him the Zemindars of Bengal still
 1580 adhered to his interests and speedily assembled a considerable army for his restoration. Having put himself at the head of this ornameat, he was taken prisoner and in the absence of Akbar put to death in cold blood, upon the field.

For a short space Akbar now enjoyed tranquillity and obedience throughout his extensive empire and wisely made use of the interval to visit and inspect its several provinces. Soon was he recalled to his former troubles and exertions. The recently subdued Bengal furnished a variety of discontented spirits, who again appeared in arms and his brother in Cabul, marched against Lahore. Akbar never allowed disobedience in the upper provinces to gain strength by duration. He hastened to Lahore overcame his brother followed him close to Cabul and received a message from the vanquished prince, imploring forgiveness. Akbar, with his usual generosity, which was often inconsiderate, and cost him dear, replaced him in his government.

The peace of Bengal was in the mean time restored but a formidable rebellion broke out in Guzerat, which the son of Byram the late regent, was sent to subdue. He was opposed with great obstinacy and some power. But being a man of talents he restored the province in a little time to obedience and was rewarded with its government.

The governor of Cabul the king's brother died. The state of the upper provinces seemed upon that occasion to require the presence of Albar and he marched towards Punjab. Here he projected the conquest of Cashmere and dispatched an army for that purpose. The season being ill chosen and provisions failing that army found itself unequal to the

enterprise. Akbar, however, was not willing to be foiled: he dispatched a second army, and the conquest was made with little opposition. Soon after this, the Governor of Candahar, a province which hitherto had paid but a nominal submission to the Mogul throne, unable to defend himself against his rebellious brothers, and the Usbekhs, who had now rendered themselves masters of Transoxiana and Bactria, and were formidable neighbours to the northern provinces of Hindustan, offered to deliver up his government to Akbar, and received that of Multan in exchange.

Akbar, who now beheld himself master, from the mountains of Persia, and Tartary, to the confines of Deccan, began to cast the eyes of ambition on that contiguous land. He gave directions to his governors, in the provinces nearest Deccan, to prepare as numerous armies as possible, and to omit no opportunity of extending the empire. He dispatched ambassadors to the kingdoms of Deccan, more with a design to collect information, than to settle disputes. And at last a great army, under Mirza, the son of Byram, who had reduced Guzerat, marched in execution of this project of unprovoked aggression, and unprincipled ambition.

We have already observed the circumstances which attended the first establishment of a Mahomedan empire in Deccan, and it will now be necessary to recount shortly the events which intervened from the death of Alla Bhamenee, in the year 1357, to the invasion of Akbar in 1593¹. Alla was succeeded by his son Mahomed, who reigned seventeen years, and

¹ For the succeeding sketch of the history of the Mahomedan sovereignties in Deccan, Ferishta's History of Deccan, translated by Captain Jonathan Scott, and Wilks's Historical Sketches of the South of India, have been the principal guides

BOOK III carried on successful wars against the Rajahs of **Char 4** **Telingana** and Beejonuggur,¹ a city on the Tum-
1593 medra or Toombuddra, the most southern branch of the Kistna or Krishna, and at that time the capital of a considerable kingdom² He strip these sovereigns of part of their dominions, and rendered them tributary for the rest. A circumstance is recorded by the historian, which indicates but a thin population in that part of India. The number of lives which were destroyed by his wars was computed at near 500,000, among whom was the natural proportion of both sexes, and of all ages for Indian wars spare neither sex nor age. And by this loss, the regions of Carnatic, says the historian, were so laid waste, that they did not recover their natural population for several hundreds, or revolutions of ten years yet they had never before been more than slightly over run by a foreign invader and the virtues or vices of Hindu policy were here to be traced in their natural effects. Mujohid, the son of Mohomed, was assassinated by his uncle, after reigning three years. The murderer Daood placed himself on the throne but lost his own life by assassination, after a month and five days. Of Alla, the first of the Bahmenee sovereigns, the youngest son was still alive and had passed his life in confinement during the intermediate reigns. By the intrigues of the Harram, he was now acknowledged as king and spent a mild and

¹ Called Bisnagar in the common maps, and Vijayanugur by Col Wilks. Bijanugur was but a modern power in the south of India and had a seat upon the river of the Rajahship of Warankul. Historical Sketches by C. J. Wilks ch. 1.

Col Wilks informs that the whole of the south of India (i.e. India to the south of the hills) had for a considerable space of time been encompassed in the empire of Vijayanugur. Ibid. p. 6. After the ruin of the Rajahship of Warankul when was the time for such an aggression?

prudent reign of nineteen years, in almost uninterrupted tranquillity. His eldest son Gheause succeeded him; but having affronted one of his Turkish Omrahs, who disguised his resentment the more effectually to secure his revenge, he lost his throne and his eyes, after a reign of little more than a month; and his brother Shumse was made to occupy it in his stead.

BOOK III
CHAP 4.
1593.

Shumse was but fifteen years of age; and was a passive instrument in the hands of the Turk Of Daood, however, the usurper, who had enjoyed royalty a month, several sons remained, who, under the odium attending the present state of the government, conceived hopes of profiting by the usurpation of their father. By an alternation of force and artifice, they secured the persons of the king and his minister, after a reign of only five months and seven days, and one of the brothers, by name Firoze, took possession of the throne. He reigned upwards of five and twenty years; and is the most celebrated of all the sovereigns of Deccan. He was engaged in a variety of wars with the Hindu rajahs; but his acquisitions in point of territory were inconsiderable. His endeavours to secure the succession to his son, by the destruction of a brother of his own, whose power and talents excited his fears, involved the last months of his reign in trouble. But finding his efforts ineffectual, he submitted to necessity, and appointing his brother successor, died in a few days.

The new sovereign, Ahmed, was a man of talents; governed with moderation and prudence; and enjoyed a prosperous reign of twelve years and two months. He overthrew the Rajah of Warunkul, and added the city of Telingana to his dominions. The governors who, during the decline of the Afghau or Patan dynasty of Delhi, had assumed independence in the

BOOK III. provinces of Malwa, Candesh, and Guzerat, were now
CHAP 4 sovereigns, whose contiguity failed not to produce
 1593 occasions of discord. At different times Ahmed was engaged in war with all these princes, but without any memorable result. He enlarged and beautified the city of Beder, which he called Ahmedabad, and removed to it the seat of government from Calburga. Toward the conclusion of his reign, he projected a partition of his kingdom among his sons. His acquisitions in Berar, with some contiguous districts he assigned to Mahmood; he gave Telengana to Daood and sent these princes to take possession of their shares. His two remaining sons, Alla and Mahomed, were destined to succeed him as colleagues on the throne of Calburga.

They ascended the throne without opposition but Mahomed, dissatisfied with the share of power which his brother allowed him, was soon excited to rebel. He was defeated, and treated with generosity by Alla. Their brother Daood having just died in Telengana, Mahomed was appointed governor of that kingdom where he devoted himself to his pleasures, and lived in peace. Alla was at various times attacked by the Rajah of Beejonuggur in the south and the kings of Guzerat, Candesh, and Malwa in the north but defended himself with success. He sent an army to invade Malabar which at first gained advantages but being artfully drawn into the difficult recesses of that mountainous and woody country was almost totally destroyed. After a reign of nearly twenty four years he was succeeded by his son Humainoos who meeting with opposition and rebellion gave reins to the ferocity of a violent mind but died or was assassinated, it is uncertain which after a reign of little more than three years. His eldest son Nizam was only eight years of age at his accession.

but the reins of government were directed by the queen-mother, a woman of talents ; and though the surrounding sovereigns endeavoured to avail themselves of the weakness of a minority, and the king of Malwa penetrated to the very capital, he was repulsed, and the Bahmenee empire remained entire. Nizam died in little more than two years after his father, when the crown devolved upon his second brother Mahomed, who was then in his ninth year. The abilities of the queen-mother, and of a faithful minister, conducted the state in safety through the difficulties and dangers of a second minority, and Mahomed, displaying, when he grew up, considerable talents for government, enjoyed prosperity for a number of years ; took part of Orissa, and the island of Goa, and thus extended his dominions from sea to sea. At last, however, the jealous rivals of the minister forged an accusation, which they presented to the king at an artful moment, and surprised him into a sudden order for his destruction. Mahomed soon discovered, and soon repented, his fatal mistake. The ambitious Omrahs, whom the vigilance and talents of the minister had restrained, began immediately to encroach on the royal authority. Mahomed died within a year of the execution of his minister, having languished both in mind and body, from the day of that unfortunate and criminal act.

His son Mahmood ascended the throne of Deccan in the twelfth year of his age. The contentions of the great Omrahs now filled the state with disorder. The sovereign himself displayed no talents for government, and was a slave to his indolence and pleasures. After plotting and struggling for several years, four of the great Omrahs declared themselves independent in their several governments ; and a fifth, who remained at the court, reduced the power of the sovereign to a

BOOK III shadow, and ruled in his name. Mahmood's nominal sovereignty lasted for thirty-seven years during which the Deccanee empire was divided into five several kingdoms that of Beejapore or Visiapore, founded by Esuff Adil Khan that of Ahmednuggur, founded by Ahmed Nizam Beherec that of Berar, founded by Ummad al Mulk - that of Golcoada, founded by Koottub al Mulk their respective governors and that of Ahmedabad Beder, founded by Ameer Bereed who readered himself master of the person and throne of his master, and retained the provinces which had not been grasped by the other usurpers. This revolution, after being several years in progress, was consummated about the year 1526 These sovereigns were engaged in almost perpetual wars with one another, with the Rajah of Beejanuggur and with the Sultan of Guzerat, who was so powerful as to hold in a species of subjection the Sultans of both Malwa and Candesh A temporary union of the Shahs of Beejapore, Golconda, and Ahmednuggur, in 1564, enabled them to subvert the empire of Beejnuggur, and reduce the power of its chief to that of a petty Rajah The Kingdom of Beder, which had fallen to the share of Ameer Bereed, was conquered during the reign of his grandson and its territories, which were not large were divided among the other usurpers of the Bahimenee dominions. A similar fate awnted the portion of Ummad which consisted of the southern part of Berar it subsisted as a kingdom only four generations and was annexed to his dominions by the King of Ahmednuggur in the year 1571 Deccan was therefore at the time when its invasion was projected by the Moguls, divided among the sovereigns of Beejapore, Ahmednuggur and Colonda At the time when the Bahimenee empire of Deccan was first divided into separate

kingdoms, the Portuguese began their conquests BOOK II
on the coast of Malabar, and took possession of the CHAP 4
island of Goa.

1598

In addition to the army which Akbar had dispatched under Mirza towards Deccan, he sent orders to his son Morad, to whom he had committed the government of Guzerat, to join him with all his forces: Mirza had already been reinforced with the troops of Malwa, governed by another son of the Emperor, and by six thousand horse belonging to the king of Candesh, who had endeavoured, by submission, to avert the ruin which resistance would ensure. . The combined army marched upon Ahmednuggur, to which they laid siege. The place was defended with great bravery, till provisions began to fail in the Mogul army, when the generals opened a negociation, and agreed, upon condition of receiving Berar, to raise the siege of Ahmednuggur, and evacuate the kingdom. The pain felt by the king at the loss of Berar soon prompted him to an effort for its recovery. His army fought a drawn battle with the Moguls. The resolution and ardour of Mirza led him to renew the engagement on the following day, when he defeated indeed the enemy, but was so weakened by his loss, as to be unable to pursue the fugitives, or to improve his victory. Mirza was soon after recalled. In his absence, the Ahmednuggur arms gained some advantages; and the Mogul interests declined. But in 1598 Mirza was restored to the army in Deccan, to which the Emperor proceeded in person. Ahmednuggur was again besieged, and at last compelled to open its gates. . The territory of Ahmednuggur was formed into a province of the Mogul empire; and its government conferred upon Dāmal, one of the sons of Akbar. The Emperor did not long survive these

BOOK III. new acquisitions. He returned to Agra, and died in
CHAP 4 the fifty second year of his reign

1605 At the time of the death of this successful prince his great empire was divided into fifteen vice-royalties, called Subahs each governed immediately by its own viceroy called Subahdar. The names of the Subahs were, Allahabad, Agra Oade Ajmere, Guzerat, Bahar, Bengal, Delhi Cabul, Lahore, Multan Malwa, Berar, Candesh and Ahmednuggur¹

Shah Tamasp, the second in the line of the Sophis, held the sceptre of Persia till the twentieth year of the reign of Akbar when there was a rapid succession of several princes, most of whom were cut off by violence. During these disorderly reigns, the Usbecks made dangerous inroads upon the eastern provinces of Persia and even threatened the security of the northern provinces of India. At the time of the death of Akbar, Shah Abbas the great was upon the throne a prince who made both his neighbours and his subjects tremble at his name.

Selim was the only surviving son of Akbar but even this fortunate circumstance did not save him from a rival. Selim's own son Chusero was destined to supersede his father by Azim Khan, whose daughter was the wife, and by Rajah Man Sing whose sister was the mother, of Chusero. Azim Khan was vizir. Man Sing had a powerful government as an Omrah of the empire and an army of twenty thousand Rajpoets his countrymen, in his service. The schemes of these powerful chiefs were rendered abortive by a decisive resolution of the commander of the City guards who ordered the gates to be shut and delivered the keys to Selim on his knock. Selim as

sumed the title of Mahomed Jehangire, or conqueror of the world, and dated his reign from October 21, 1605, being then in the thirty-seventh year of his age. *Jehangire*, for whom it would have been difficult, in the commencement of his reign, to contend with the power of Azim Khan, and Rajah Man Sing, contented himself with sending them to their respective governments; the vizir to his Subah of Malwa; the Rajah to that of Bengal, and Chusero was received into favour. A short time elapsed, when Chusero again rebelled, but, rejecting the advice of Azim Khan, and Rajah Man Sing, to assassinate his father, he taught those artful chiefs to despair of his cause, and they abstained from lending him any open support. So many followers crowded to his standards, as enabled him to seize and ravage some extensive districts. Unable to contend with the army which pressed him, he retired towards the Indus, when his followers dispersed, his principal friends were punished with all the ferocity of Oriental despotism, and he himself was placed in confinement.

One of the circumstances which had the greatest influence on the events and character of the reign of Jehangire was his marriage with the wife of one of the Omrahs of his empire, whose assassination, like that of Uriah, cleared the way for the gratification of the monarch. The history of this female is dressed in romantic colours by the writers of the East. Chaja Aiass her father, was a Tartar, who left poverty and his native country, to seek the gifts of fortune in Hindustan. The inadequate provision he could make for so great a journey failed him before its conclusion. To add to his trials, his wife, advanced in pregnancy, was seized with the pains of labour in the desert, and delivered of a daughter. All hope of conducting the child alive to any place of relief forsook the exhausted

BOOK III.
CHAP. 4.
1605

BOOK III parents and they agreed to leave her So long as
CHAP 4 the tree at the foot of which the infant had been
 1605 deposited, remained in view the mother supported
 her resolution but when the tree vanished from
 sight, she sunk upon the ground, and refused to pro-
 ceed without her The father returned but what he
 beheld was a huge black snake, convolved about the
 body of his child, and extending his dreadful jaws to
 devour her A shriek of anguish burst from the
 father's breast and the snake, being alarmed, hastily
 unwound himself from the body of the infant, and
 glided away to his retreat The miracle animated
 the parents to maintain the struggle, and before their
 strength entirely failed they were joined by other
 travellers, who relieved their necessities.

Ariss having arrived in Hindustan, was taken into
 the service of an Omrah of the court, attracted after
 a time the notice of Akbar himself and by his abili-
 ties and prudence rose to be treasurer of the empire
 The infant who had been so nearly lost in the desert
 was now grown a woman of exquisite beauty and,
 by the attention of Ariass to her education was accom-
 plished beyond the measure of female attainments In
 the East. She was seen by Sultan Selim and kindled
 in his bosom the fire of love But she was be-
 trothed to a Turkman Omrah and Akbar forbid the
 contract to be infringed When Selim mounted the
 throne justice and shame were a slight protection to
 the man whose life was a bar to the enjoyments of
 the King By some caprice however, not unnatural
 to minds pampered, and trained up as his he abstain-
 ed from seeing her for some years after she was
 placed in his seraglio and even refused an adequate
 appointment for her maintenance She turned her fa-
 culties to account employed herself in the exquisite
 works of the needle and painting in which she ex-

celled ; had her productions disposed of in the shops and markets, and thence procured the means of adorning her apartmeuts with all the elegancies which suited her condition and taste. The fame of her productions reached the ear, and excited the curiosity of the emperor. A visit was all that was wanting to rekindle the flame in his heart ; and Noor Mahl (such was the name she assumed) exercised from that moment an unbounded sway over the Prince and his empire.

BOOK III
CHAP 4.
1611.

Through the influence of the favourite Sultana, the vizarit was bestowed upon her father ; her two brothers were raised to the first rank of Omrahs, by the titles of Acticâd Khan, and Asiph Jah ; but their modeſty and virtues reconciled all men to their sudden elevation ; and though the emperor, naturally voluptuous, was now withdrawn from business by the charms of his wife, the affairs of the empire were conducted with vigilance, prudence, and success ; and the administration of Chaja Áiass was long remebered in India, as a period of justice and prosperity.

The Afghauns broke from their mountains into the province of Cabul, in the sixth year of the reign of Jehangire, but an army was collected with expedition, and drove them back to their fastnesses with great slaughter. About the same time, one insurrection was raised in the province of Bengal, and another in that of Bahar. But the springs of the government were strong ; and both were speedily suppressed.

More serious hostility began in Odipore, a mountainous district lying between Ajmeie and Malwa, the prince of which, though he had acknowledged ſubjection to the Mahomedans, yet, protected by his mountains, had never been actually subdued. Amar Sinka, the present Rana or prince of Odipore, attacked and defeated the imperial troops in Candesh.

BOOK III Purvez, the second son of the Emperor, at the head
CHAP 4 of 30,000 horse was sent to take the command of all
1611 the troops on the borders of Deccan, and oppose him
 But Amar Sinka was no contemptible foe, possessing
 great authority among his countrymen, and the obe-
 dience of a great proportion of the people called Mahi-
 ratta who inhabited the mountains on the south-
 west, adjoining those of Odipore. Dissensions pre-
 vailed among the Omrahs of the imperial army,
 which the youth and easy character of Purvez made
 him unable to repress. Encompassed with difficul-
 ties, and soon to retreat, he was pursued with loss to
 Ajmere. Purvez was recalled a temporary general
 was sent to take charge of the army the Emperor
 himself prepared to march to Ajmere, whence he dis-
 patched his third son Churrum, to prosecute the war.
 Churrum entered the mountains with a force which
 alarmed the Hindus and induced the Rana after a
 few losses to offer terms of accommodation. It suit-
 ed the views of Churrum to show liberality on this oc-
 casion, and to conclude the war with dispatch. Peace
 was effected, and Sultan Chirrum returned to his
 father, with a vast increase of reputation and favour
 at the expense of Purvez who was left, notwithstanding
 standing governor of Candeshi and lived in royal
 state at his capital Burrahapoore.¹

It was at the time of which we are now speaking, that Sir Thomas Roe arrived at Surat, ambassador to the Great Mogul. In his way to the imperial presence he repaired to Burrahapoore to pay his respects to the Prince, and solicit permission for his countrymen to establish a factory in his province. Purvez, whose good nature, liberality, and taste were better fitted for display, than his facility, inde-

¹ Written also Brampore and Boorhaapoore

lence, and diffidence, for the duties of government, received the European messenger with magnificence and distinction. From Burrahanpore, Sir Thomas repaired to Ajmerē, where the Emperor still remained. Jehangire was flattered by the compliments and solicitations of a distant monarch. But the rude court of India was not a place where the powers of an ambassador could be exerted with much effect.

BOOK III
CHAP 4
1615.

In the year 1615, disturbances arose both in Guzerat and Cabul. In the most inaccessible parts of Guzerat lived a race of men, known by the name of Coolies, who exercised perpetual depredations and cruelties upon the inhabitants of the open and cultivated districts. The enormities of this people had lately risen to an extraordinary height, when Jehangire issued a sanguinary order for the utter extirpation of the race. Many were slaughtered; the rest hunted to their mountains and deserts. Cabul was again over-run by the Afghauns, who issued from the mountains adjoining that province on the north. But the Subahdar, collecting an army, overcame them in battle, and drove them back to their own country.

The provinces of the south were still unquiet. Purvez was engaged in a war with the princes of Deccan, which, from the dissensions and treachery of his Omrahs, was not successful, and encouraged the Rana of Odipore "to draw his neck from the yoke of obedience." The hopes of the Emperor were again cast upon his younger son; and though his counsellors set before him the danger of sending the younger to supersede the elder, he made light of the menaced evil, bestowed upon Chirrum the title of Shah Jehan or King of the World, and vested him with the conduct of the war. The easy and unambitious Purvez contested not the royal appointment, fortune, rather than any merit of Shah Jehan, induced the opposing

BOOK III fortress in Malwn, from the time of his last rebellion,
Chap 4 he prevailed on his father before departing to permit
1615-28 him to relieve from his confinement, and carry along
 with him That prince was carried off by assassina-
 tion, and all men ascribed the murder to Shah Jehan
 The emperor loudly expressed his suspicions and re-
 sentment. Shah Jehan conceived the time for revolt to
 be now arrived assumed the royal titles, and marched
 to attack his father They came to action not far
 from Delhi and empire was staked on the turn of a
 die. After an obstinate struggle, the troops of the
 father prevailed and the son, who in his rage and
 grief had with difficulty been restrained from laying
 hands on himself, fled in great consternation toward
 the mountains of Mewnt He was pursued to Deccan
 one province was wrested from him after another
 and he lost a battle on the banks of the Nerbudda,
 which broke up his army, and obliged him to fly to
 Orissa. Here fortune seemed to dawn upon him
 anew The governor of Orissa retired at his approach
 He made himself master of Burdwan He next en-
 tered Bengal and defeated its Subaillur He then
 marched to Babar which also yielded to his arms
 and the impregnable fortress of Rotas, of which the
 governor came to deliver the keys into his hands,
 presented to him the inestimable advantage of a place
 of security for his family In the mean time, the
 imperial army advanced That of Shah Jehan was
 routed, in spite of all his exertions, and he again fled
 towards Deccan All men now deserted him After
 some time spent in eluding his pursuers his spirits
 sunk and he wrote a contrite letter to his father
 Pardon was obtained but with an order to deliver up
 the fort which were held in his name, and to repair
 with his family to Agra That part alone of the
 command which regarded his own person, he endeav-

voured to elude, alleging the shame he should feel to behold the face of an injured sovereign and father; and occupied himself under the guise of pleasure in travelling with a few attendants, through different parts of the empire. During this rebellion Abbas, the Persian Shah, attacked and conquered Candahar. The Usbecks also penetrated to Ghizni, but were successfully resisted, and compelled to retreat.

BOOK III.

CHAP 4

1615-28.

The general to whose valour and conduct, on the late extraordinary and critical occasions, the Emperor owed his success, was Mohâbet, from whom, also, on many former emergencies, he had reaped the most important services. The first movement in the breast of Jehangire was gratitude to his benefactor. But Mohâbet possessed a dangerous enemy in Noor Mahl. The slave, she said, who had power to keep the crown upon the head of the Emperor, had power to take it off. Fear is nearly allied to hatred in the breast of an emperor. The power of Mohâbet was curtailed, offensive mandates were addressed to him; a strong fort, which he held, was transferred to a creature of the Sultana. He was commanded to court. His friends represented the danger, but an angry and more peremptory order following his apology, Mohâbet resolved to obey. Five thousand Rajputs, who had served with him in the imperial army, offered themselves for his escort. When Mohâbet approached the imperial camp, he was ordered to stop, till he should account for the revenues of Bengal, and the plunder acquired in the recent battle. Mohâbet, deeply affected with this injurious treatment, sent his own son-in-law to the Emperor to represent his loyalty, and expose the injustice of his enemies. His son-in-law was seized in the royal square, stript of his clothes, bastinadoed, covered with rags, placed backwards on a horse, of the most miserable descrip-

BOOK III. **tion, and seat out of the camp amid the shouts and
CHAP 4 insults of the rabble.** **1615-28** **Mohfibet separated his retinac**

from the camp and resolved to watch his opportunity. Next morning the royal army began to cross the bridge which lay upon the river Julum or Behut, on the road between Lahore and Cabul. The greater part of the army had now passed and the royal tents were yet unstruck when Mohfibet, with two thousand of his Rajputs, galloped to the bridge, and set it on fire. Hastening thence with a few followers, to the royal quarters he secured the person of the Emperor, and conveyed him without opposition to his camp. Noor Mahl in the mean time, contrived to make her escape. Next day Asiph Jah the vizir, made an obstinate attempt to ford the river, and rescue the Emperor but was repulsed with great slaughter. Unable after this to keep the army from dispersing he fled to the castle of New Roras on the Attock, where he was besieged and soon obliged to surrender at discretion while his sister the Sultana fled to Lahore. The Emperor was treated by Mohfibet with profound respect assured that no infringement of his authority was designed that the necessity alone under which the enemies of Mohfibet had criminally placed him was the lamented cause of the restraint which his imperial master endured. The generous Mohfibet who really meant what he spoke, was well aware that for him there was no security under Jehangire while influenced and directed by Noor Mahl. She was repairing to the Emperor upon his own request, when met by an escort of Mohfibet who under pretence of guarding kept her a prisoner. He accused her immediately of treason and other high crimes and the Emperor on whose feeble mind absence had already effaced in some degree the impression of her charms signed without much reluc

tance the order for her execution. She only begged, BOOK III.
 that she might have leave, before her death, to kiss CHAP 4
1615-28.
 the hand of her lord. She was admitted, but in the presence of Mohâbet. She stood in silence. The Emperor burst into tears. "Will you not spare this woman, Mohâbet? See how she weeps" "It is not for the Emperor of the Moguls," cried Mohâbet, "to ask in vain" At a wave of his hand, the guards retired, and she was that instant restored to her former attendants. In a few months Mohâbet restored to the Emperor the full exercise of his authority, and, to show the sincerity of his obedience, dismissed the greater part of his attendants and guards. No sooner did the Sultana conceive him in her power, than she importuned the Emperor for his death. The Emperor had virtue to reject her proposal, but the consequence only was, that she resolved to employ assassination. Jehangir himself discovered to Mohâbet his danger, and he fled without attendants from the camp. The man who had saved the Emperor, and spared both his life and authority when both were in his hands; was now the object of a command to all the governors of provinces to suffer him nowhere to live in existence; and a price was set on his head. Mohâbet seized a resolution which accorded with the boldness and generosity of his nature. In a mean habit, he secretly entered the camp of Asiph Jah when it was dark, and placed himself in the passage which led from the apartments of the vizir to the haram. He was questioned by the eunuch on guard, who recognized his voice, and carried to Asiph his request to see him on affairs of the utmost importance. Asiph was not ignorant of the baneful effects of his sister's passions, nor unmoved by the generosity with which Mohâbet had lately treated both her and himself. He took him in

BOOK III his arms, and conveyed him in silence to a secret
Chap. 4 apartment, Mohâbet opened his mind with freedom
1628 on the misconduct of the Sultana the weakness of
 Jehangire and the necessity of another sovereign to
 cure the evils of an afflicted state. "The elder of
 the princes," said he, "is a virtuous man and my
 friend but we must not exchange one feeble sovereign
 for another I know the merit of Shah Jehan for I
 have fought against him and though his ambition
 knows no restraint either of nature or justice his
 vigour will prevent intestine disorders, and give
 power to the laws" The views of Asiph, whose
 daughter was the favourite wife of Shah Jehan, cor-
 responded, it seems, with those of Mohâbet a plan of
 co-operation was concerted at that moment and Mo-
 hâbet, with letters from the vizir retired to the court
 of the Rana of Odipore to wait for events

The death of the prince Purvez, which happened
 soon after, of an apoplexy and the death of Jehan-
 gire, which followed at a short interval, saved the
 conspirators from many difficulties, and probably
 crimes. It was found when the will of the Emperor
 was opened, that he had named Sharâr, his youngest
 son successor at the instigation of the Sultana
 whose daughter by her first husband that prince
 had espoused As a temporary expedient the vizir
 placed Dawir Buksh the son of the late prince
 Chusero upon the throne but at the same time dis-
 patched to Mohâbet the concerted signal for com-
 incing operations in behalf of Shah Jehan Asiph
 conquered the troops of Sharâr, and put out his eyes
 Shah Jehan proceeded towards Agra and every
 obstacle was removed by the death of Dawir Buksh
 Shah Jehan was proclaimed Emperor of the Moguls
 in the beginning of the year 1628

He began his reign by removing all drager of

competition. The whole of the male posterity of the house of Timur, reserving only himself and his sons, were dispatched by the dagger or the bow-string. His sons were four in number; Dara surnamed Shêko, Suja, Aurungzebe, and Morad, the eldest, at this time, thirteen; the youngest, four years of age. Even the daughters of Shah Jehan were important actors in the scenes of his eventful reign. They were three in number, women of talents and accomplishments, as well as beauty. The eldest, Jehânarâ, was her father's favourite, with a boundless influence over his mind; lively, generous, open; and attached to her brother Dara, whose disposition corresponded with her own. The second, Roshenrai Begum, was acute, artful, intriguing, and from conformity of character, favoured Aurungzebe. The gentleness of Suria Bânu, the youngest, kept her aloof from the turbulence of political intrigue and contention.

The two chiefs, Asiph and Mohâbet, who had conducted Shah Jehan to the throne, and were the most able and popular men of the empire, were appointed, the first, vizir, the latter, commander-in-chief of the forces. Through the wide dominions of the Shah, Lodi, who commanded the army in Deccan, was the only disobedient chief. Even he submitted, as soon as an army approached.

The dissensions and weakness usually attending a change of sovereign in the disjointed governments of the East, persuaded the leader of the Usbecks, that conquests might be achieved in Hindustan. Though Abbas still reigned in Persia, and the Usbecks had lately shed their blood in torrents, in disputes about the succession to their throne, they still possessed the regions of the Oxus, of which Abbas had in vain attempted to deprive them. Ten thousand horse, with a train of artillery, penetrated through the mountains

BOOK III into Cahul. They first laid siege to the fortress of **Char 4** Zohâr but, finding it strong and well defended, proceeded to Cabul. The city made a vigorous resistance but was at last reduced to extremity. The defenders resolving however upon one desperate struggle sallied forth and repulsed the enemy, who evacuated the province, before Mohâbet, on his march from Deccan, whether he had been sent for the subjugation of Lodi, could reach the scene of action.

1632

The disobedience of the Rajah of Bundelcund, who was so imprudent as to take offence at an increase of tribute was chastised by an overwhelming force. But the heart of the generous Mohâbet was gained by the bravery of his enemy and he obtained for him pardon and restoration.

All the merit of Mohâbet, and all his services only inflamed the dark suspicions which usually haunt the mind of an Oriental despot. Shah Jehan regarded him with terror and by such steps as it appeared safe to venture upon, proceeded to deprive him of his power.

The jealous and revengeful passions of the Emperor involved him in difficulties through another channel. When Lodi submitted upon terms, he was appointed to the government of a province but not forgiven. He was now ordered to court, and received with so much studied insult that both his pride and his prudence taught him to look for safety in his independence alone. He escaped with much difficulty, was reduced to the deepest distress but having talents and perseverance he baffled the imperial pursuers and reached Deccan. The resources which such a man as Lodi might find in the south made the Emperor tremble on his throne. He raised a large army placed himself at its head hastened to the scene of action and engaged in those struggles for

the subjugation of Deccan, which formed so large a portion of the business of this, and of the following reign.

1632.

BOOK III
CHAP 4

Since the fall of Ahmednuggur, at the close of the reign of Akbar, the following are the principal events which had taken place in Deccan. The territories of the Nizam Shawee or Ahmednuggur sovereignty were divided between Mallek Umber, who possessed from the Telingana frontier, to within eight miles of Ahmednuggur, and four of Dowlatabad; and Rajoo Minnaun, who ruled from Dowlatabad northward, to the borders of Guzerat, and southward to within twelve miles of Ahmednuggur, while Mortiza II a prince of the royal house of Ahmednuggur, with the empty name of sovereign, was allowed to hold the fortress of Ouseh, with a few villages to yield him subsistence. Perpetual contests subsisted between the usurpers, and Umber succeeded at last in taking Rajoo prisoner, and seizing his dominions. Umber was now a sovereign of high rank among the princes of Deccan, governed his dominions with wisdom, and, exacting something more than respect from the kings of Beejapore and Golconda, held in check the arms of Jehângîr himself. He built the city of Gurkeh, now called Aurungabad, five coss from Dowlatabad, and died two years before the present expedition of Shah Jehan, at eighty years of age, leaving his dominions the best cultivated, and the happiest, region in India. Futteh Khan, the son of Umber, succeeded him. Mortiza II. still alive, got him by treachery into his power, and recovered once more to the house of Nizam Beheree, the remaining part of the Ahmednuggur territories. He did not retain them long, Futteh Khan regained his liberty and ascendancy; and, with the concurrence of Shah Jehan, whom he

BOOK III into Kabul They first laid siege to the fortress of
CHAP. 4 Zohfāc but, finding it strong and well defended, pro-
 1632 ceed to Kabul The city made a vigorous resistance
 but was at last reduced to extremity The defenders
 resolving however upon one desperate struggle sallied
 forth, and repulsed the enemy, who evacuated the
 province, before Mohābet, on his march from Deccan,
 whither he had been sent for the subjugation of Lodi,
 could reach the scene of action

The disobedience of the Rajah of Bundelcund, who
 was so imprudent as to take offence at an increase of
 tribute, was chastised by an overwhelming force
 But the heart of the generous Mohābet was gained
 by the bravery of his enemy and he obtained for
 him pardon and restoration

All the merit of Mohābet, and all his services, only
 inflamed the dark suspicions which usually haunt the
 mind of an Oriental despot Shah Jehan regarded
 him with terror and by such steps as it appeared
 safe to venture upon, proceeded to deprive him of his
 power

The jealous and revengeful passions of the Emperor
 involved him in difficulties through another channel.
 When Lodi submitted upon terms, he was appointed
 to the government of a province, but not forgiven
 He was now ordered to court, and received with so
 much studied insult that both his pride and his
 prudence taught him to look for safety in his inde-
 pendence alone He escaped with much difficulty
 was reduced to the deepest distress but having
 talents and perseverance he baffled the imperial pur-
 suers and reached Deccan The resources which
 such a man as Lodi might find in the south made the
 Emperor tremble on his throne He raised a large
 army placed himself at its head, hastened to the
 scene of action and engaged in those struggles for

the subjugation of Deccan, which formed so large a portion of the business of this, and of the following reign.

CHAP. 4.

1692.

Since the fall of Ahmednuggur, at the close of the reign of Akbar, the following are the principal events which had taken place in Deccan. The territories of the Nizam Shawee or Ahmednuggur sovereignty were divided between Mallek Umber, who possessed from the Telengana frontier, to within eight miles of Ahmednuggur, and four of Dowlatabad; and Rajoo Minnaum, who ruled from Dowlatabad northward, to the borders of Guzerat, and southward to within twelve miles of Ahmednuggur; while Mortiza II. a prince of the royal house of Ahmednuggur, with the empty name of sovereign, was allowed to hold the fortress of Onsch, with a few villages to yield him subsistence. Perpetual contests subsisted between the usurpers; and Umber succeeded at last in taking Rajoo prisoner, and seizing his dominions. Umber was now a sovereign of high rank among the princes of Deccan, governed his dominions with wisdom, and, exacting something more than respect from the kings of Beejapore and Golconda, held in check the arms of Jehangîr himself. He built the city of Gurkeh, now called Aurungabad, five eoss from Dowlatabad, and died two years before the present expedition of Shah Jehan, at eighty years of age, leaving his dominions the best cultivated, and the happiest, region in India. Futtch Khan, the son of Umber, succeeded him. Mortiza II. still alive, got him by treachery into his power; and recovered once more to the house of Nizam Beheree, the remaining part of the Ahmednuggur territories. He did not retain them long; Futtch Khan regained his liberty and ascendancy; and, with the concurrence of Shah Jehan, whom he

BOOK III consulted, put Mortiza to death and placed his son,
CHAP 4 only ten years of age, upon a nominal throne.¹

1632 The Beejapore and Golconda sovereignties remained nearly in the same situation in which they had been found and left by Akbar. Mahomed Adil Shah was now on the throne of the former Abdoola Koottub Shah, on that of the latter kingdom.²

The Emperor arrived at Burhanpore the capital of Candesh and sent his mandates to the princes of Deccan, to disband their forces, deliver up Lodi, and make their submissions in person, on pain of destruction. The celerity of the Emperor had allowed to Lodi too little time to make the preparations which resistance to so formidable an enemy required. But he had already engaged the three sovereigns of Deccan in a confederacy for his support, and had influence to make them reject or evade the commands of the Emperor. He was entrusted with a body of troops, and seizing the passes of the mountains, opposed the entrance of the Mogul army into Golconda. The Emperor, impatient of delay, removed his general and commanded the vizir to take upon himself the charge of destroying Lodi and chastising the insolence of the princes of Deccan. The princes were already tired of the war and alarmed by its dangers. The reputation and power of the vizir augmented their apprehensions. Lodi was deserted by all on the day of battle except by a few chiefs his friends, who adhered to him with their retinues. With these he posted himself on an advantageous ground and long

¹ Ferishta's History of Deccan by Scott § 400—401. Laber was one of the adventurers from Abyssinia of whom so many sought, and obtained the fortunes in Deccan during the existence of the Afghan dynasty.

² Ibid p 339 340; and 400 410

arrested victory against the whole might of the imperial-arms. A neighbouring Rajah, to gain the favour of the Emperor, set upon him unexpectedly, as he was pursuing his way to some place of safety, and he lost his brave son with the greater part of his followers. A party of those who were sent in all directions to scour the country, at last came upon him in a place from which there was no retreat; and he fell defending himself to the last extremity. Shah Jehan exhibited the most indecent joy when assured of his destruction, the measure of his terrors, while this brave man was alive. After the conquest of Lodi, the war in Deccan was little else than a series of ravages. The princes were able to make little resistance. A dreadful famine, from several years of excessive drought, which prevailed throughout India and a great part of Asia, added its horrid evils to the calamities which overwhelmed the inhabitants of Deccan. The princes sued for peace, and the Emperor agreed to withdraw his army, which he now found it difficult to subsist, retaining, as a security for good behaviour, the forts which had fallen into his hands.

During the famine, religion had made the Hindus desert cultivation, and betake themselves to the supplications, penances, and ceremonies, pleasing to their gods. The calamities which sprung from this act of devotion raised the indignation of Shah Jehan. Though no fanatic in his own religion, he pronounced that "an army of divinities who so far from benefiting their votaries led them to inflict upon themselves worse evils than the wrath of an enemy, were unfit to be endued in his dominions" The Hindus however took arms in defence of their gods; and after some unavailing and unhappy efforts, he desisted, declaring, "that a prince who wishes to have subjects

BOOK III.
CHAP 4
1640-55.

BOOK III. must take them with all the trumpery and baubles of
CHAP 4 their religion "

1640-55 The Portuguese, who had established themselves at Hoogly, in Bengal and whose presumption rose with their success, gave displeasure to the Subahdar. He transmitted a complaint to the Emperor. "Expel those idolaters from my dominions" was the laconic answer. The Portuguese defended themselves bravely. When compelled to lay down their arms, the principal evil which they were doomed to suffer, was, to see their religious images broken and destroyed. To this affair succeeded a second revolt of the Rajah of Bundelcund, who warded off the destruction now decreed for him with obstinate bravery for two years. The third son of the Emperor Aurungzebe, with an experienced general for his guide, had the nominal command of the army though only thirteen years of age and showed that ardour in the work of destruction which distinguished his riper years.

When the Emperor marched from the borders of Deccan, he offered the government of Candesh and of the frontier army for which he saw that great talents were required, to the Vizir who, fearing the consequences of absence from the court recommended successfully the virtues and capacity of Mahâbet. Adil Shah the King of Beejapore threatened to wrest Dowlatabad from Iutteh Khan who governed in the name of the young Shah of Ahmednuggur. To prevent the annexation of this important fortress to the dominions of his rival, Iutteh Khan offered it to Shah Jehan, and Mahâbet marched to receive possession. Iutteh Khan repented of his offer and Mahâbet laid siege to the fortress. Dowlatabad is a place of great natural strength standing upon a detached and precipitous rock and had been fortified with the highest efforts of Oriental skill but famine at last made

Futteh submit. The young prince, his master, was carried a prisoner to Gualior. Futteh Khan was allowed to retain his private property, and was destined to become one of the high Omrals of the empire; but being seized with insanity, the consequence of a wound formerly received in his head, he was carried to Lahore, where he lived many years on a liberal pension. The fall of Dowlatabad put a period to the dynasty of Nizam Shah, which had swayed the sceptre of Ahmednuggur for 150 years.¹ Mohâbet, resolving to pursue the reduction of Deccan, marched towards Telngana, and laid siege to a fortress, but falling sick and finding himself unable to superintend the operations of the army, he withdrew the troops to Burrahanpore, where he died at an advanced age.

The tranquillity of the empire permitted the ambition of Shah Jehan to attach itself to the subjugation of Deccan. He began to march from Agra. That time might be afforded to the governors of the provinces for joining him with their troops, his progress was purposely slow. In rather less than a year he arrived at Dowlatabad with an accumulated army. This great host was divided into twelve bodies, and poured upon the kingdoms of Golconda and Beejapore, with orders not to spare the severities of war: "because war (such was the reflection of Shah Jehan) was the scourge of humanity, and compassion served only to prolong its evils" One hundred and fifteen towns and fortresses were taken in the course of a year. The unfortunate sovereigns were overwhelmed with calamity, and solicited peace on any terms. It was granted; but on condition that they should re-

¹ The fall of Dowlatabad is somewhat differently related by Dow in his history of Nizam Shah, p 151 We have here followed the account of Ferishta Scott's Deccan, i 402.

BOOK III sign their dominions, and be contented to hold them
CHAP 4 as tributaries of the Mogul. The province of Can-
1640-55 desh with the army in Deccan, was left under the command of the son of the late Mohábet, an accomplished chief. But he died in a little time, and Aurungzebe, the Emperor's aspiring son, was appointed to succeed him.

About this time, a refractory Rajah of Berar drew upon himself the imperial arms. That large district of Hindustan was regularly subdued and bestowed as a Subah upon the successful general. Another event yielded high satisfaction to the Emperor. The province of Candahar, which had been wrested from the Moguls by the power of Abbas Shah of Persia, was now recovered by the treachery of its governor, disgusted with the cruel and capricious sway of Sesi, the successor of Abbas on the Persian throne.

Of the operations next in order it is to be lamented that our information is so imperfect. The province of Bengal we are told, was invaded from the kingdom of Assam, the enemy descending the Brahmapootra in boats till its junction with the Ganges below Dacca. The Subahdar of Bengal experienced little difficulty in repelling the invaders and, not contented with an easy triumph, pursued them into their own country, took possession of several forts, and reduced some provinces but he was obliged to return for want of subsistence, and suffered extremely in his retreat by the commencement of the rains and the badness of the roads. It is related also, that the kingdom of Tibet was reduced about this time by another of the generals of Shah Jehan, who was delighted to conquer in regions which the arms of his predecessor had never reached. But to these conquests no effects are ascribed and of that which is said to have been accomplished in Tibet we are told neither the place,

nor the extent, nor the circumstances; neither the ^{BOOK III} road by which the army was led to it, nor that by ^{CHAP 4.} which it was conducted back

1610-55.

The numerous subjects of Shah Jehan now enjoyed a tranquillity and happiness such as had seldom, if ever, been experienced in that portion of the globe. The governors and officers, in every part of his dominions, were strictly watched; and not only their obedience to himself, but their duty to his subjects, was vigorously enforced. His reign is celebrated for the exact execution of the laws. And the collection of the revenue, which affects so deeply the condition of the people, and had, in the time of Akbar, been very much improved, was advanced to greater perfection under the diligent administration of Shah Jehan.¹

This tranquillity was scarcely affected by an incursion of the Usbecks into Cabul, the governor of which not only repulsed them, but, following the invaders, ravaged their country as far as Balk, and returned with considerable booty. This success of the governor of Cabul encouraged him to make an incursion into the territory of the Usbecks the following year. But he was on the point of paying dear for his temerity, his communications being intercepted, and his retreat rendered in the highest degree dangerous and difficult. The Emperor himself was, at last, infected with the ambition of conquering the Usbecks. His

¹ We meet with boasts, in the Oriental historians, of kings, whose administration of justice was so perfect, that a purse of gold might be exposed on the highways, and no man would touch it. Never was justice better administered in India than under the reign of Shah Jehan, yet knowing more of the circumstances of his reign, we know better what the general eulogies of the Oriental historians mean. Bernier, describing his situation at the time of his arrival at the court of Shah Jehan, speaks of "le peu d'argent qui me restoit de diverses rencontres de voleurs" *Hist des Estats du Grand Magot*, p 5

BOOK III youngest son, Morad, was sent with an army, and
Chap 4 over ran the country without much difficulty but
1640-55 offended his father by returning from his command,
 not only without, but contrary to orders. The Us-
 beck sovereign had fled into Persia, but one of his
 sons solicited and obtained the co-operation of the
 kindred tribes beyond the Oxus. Aurungzebe was
 sent to cope with the new adversary and his talents,
 and persevering courage were not more than neces-
 sary. In a desperate battle victory hung long sus-
 pended, and fortune was more than once on the point
 of declaring against the Moguls. After much diffi-
 culty, and much loss, the country was indeed sub-
 duced but its ancient sovereign, writing a most sub-
 missive letter to the Emperor was, on promise of a
 slight tribute, reinstated in his dominions.

It was mortifying to the Emperor, in so high a
 tide of his power that Candahar, regarded as the
 key of his dominions on the side of Persia was
 wrested from his hands. Shah Abbas the second
 had succeeded the wretched Sesi on the throne of
 Persia and taking advantage of the removal of the
 Mogul troops from the northern provinces and of the
 subjugation of the Usbecks, which seemed to deliver
 those provinces from danger he marched towards
 Candahar with a great force and obtained the city
 by capitulation before the Mogul army was able to
 arrive. The strongest efforts were made for its
 recovery. Aurungzebe besieged it two several times
 and Dara the eldest son of the Emperor once. It
 baffled the operations of both.

The most memorable transaction in the reign of
 Shah Jahan was the renewal of the war in Deccan.
 The frontier provinces, and the army appointed to
 hold in check the sovereigns of the south, had been
 entrusted to the command of Aurungzebe but the

suspicious and jealousy of his father and brothers had made them seek occasions to remove him, at one time to command in Guzerat, at another in the war against the Usbecks ; he had still, however, found means to regain that important government, and was at Dowlatabad when an occasion offered which a mind like his was not apt to despise. A chief, in the service of the king of Golconda, who had carried the arms of that sovereign against the Rajahs of the Carnatic, and added extensive districts to his dominions, fell, at last, from apprehension of his power, under the hatred of his master, and perceived that his life was no longer safe. He transmitted private intelligence to Aurungzebe of his readiness to co-operate with him in surprising the city of Hyderabad, not far from Golconda, where the sovereign resided, and where his treasures were deposited. Aurungzebe, covering his designs under the pretence of an embassy, was admitted into the city, but the king discovered the treachery in sufficient time to make his escape to Golconda, and as Hyderabad was set on fire in the confusion of the attack, the greater part of the riches which had tempted Aurungzebe was consumed in the flames. Siege was laid to Golconda ; but orders arrived from court, suggested by the jealousies which there prevailed, that the king of Golconda should be offered terms of peace. The troops were withdrawn, after the beautiful daughter of the king had been given in marriage to the eldest son of Aurungzebe.

The chief, at whose instigation Aurungzebe had undertaken the expedition, was the famous Emir Jumla, born in a village near Ispahan in Persia, and of parents so extremely poor that they had scarcely the means of procuring him instruction to read. A diamond merchant, who travelled to Golconda, carried him to

BOOK III that city as a servant or clerk at this place he left
CHAP 4 his master, and began to trade on his own account
1610-55 With the first of his gains he purchased a place in
 the service of the king His talents and address
 attracted favour and he ascended by rapid gradu-
 tions to the summit of command. During his public
 services, he forgot not the arts of private acquisition
 he had vessels trading to various places, and farmed
 under borrowed names the whole of the diamond
 mines He greatly added to those riches by his suc-
 cessful wars in Carnatic, and was supposed to possess
 enormous treasures at the time when he connected
 himself with Aurungzebe. That prince immediately
 received him into his inmost friendship and sought
 the benefit of his counsels and co-operation in his
 most important affairs As it appeared that his
 talents might be employed advantageously for Au-
 rungzebe, at the court of his father he was sent with
 such recommendations as helped him quickly to the
 highest rank When the office of vizir became vacant
 the remonstrances of Dara could not prevent the
 Emperor from bestowing it upon Jumla, in the sordid
 hope of receiving, upon his appointment, a magnifi-
 cent present, suited to the riches he was supposed to
 possess

Meanwhile, a new event demanded the presence of
 Emir Jumla in Deccan The King of Beejapore died
 and his Omrahs without consulting the Emperor, placed
 his son upon the throne The Emperor who now
 affected to reckon the sovereign of Deccan among his
 dependants construed this neglect into a crime which
 his new vizir was sent with an army to chastise
 He joined Aurungzebe at Burrahapore and that
 ambitious but artful prince, affected to act with pro-
 found submission under the orders of his fathers
 vizir These two leaders understood one another

The war was conducted with concert and ability. BOOK III
 The city of Beder was taken. The Beejapore army CHAP 4
 was defeated in the field. Calburga, the ancient 1640-55.
 capital of the Deccanee empire, submitted; and the
 King threw himself at the feet of the conqueror.
 After settling the terms of submission, which were
 severe, Aurungzebe returned to Burrahanpore, and
 the vizir was recalled to Agra.¹

After these events, the health of the Emperor excited alarm;² when the flames, which had for some time been with difficulty compressed, broke out with irresistible fury. To every brother under an Oriental despotism the sons of the reigning monarch look, as either a victim, or a butcher, and see but one choice between the musnud and the grave. The usual policy of oriental fear is to educate the royal youths to effeminacy and imbecility in the haram; but the sons of Shah Jehan had been led into action, and indulged with the possession of power. They were not all men of capacity, but they were all ardent, brave, and aspiring; and each thought himself worthy of empire. Dara, the eldest; gallant, open, sincere, but impetuous, thoughtless, and rash; was destined to the sovereignty by his father, and generally kept near himself; Sujah, the second, was now Subahdar of Bengal, with more prudence and discretion than his elder brother; but far inferior in those qualities to the deep and dissembling Aurungzebe, who

¹ For these transactions of Aurungzebe and Emir Jumla, see Bernier, *ut supra*, p 22—32, and the reign of Shah Jehan, chap v. in Dow

² Dow, who follows his Persian authority, says, the malady was paralysis and strangury, brought on by excesses in the haram, Bernier the physician speaks of it in the following terms “Je ne parlerai point ici de sa maladie, et je n'en rapporteray pas les particularitez. Je diray seulement qu'elle estoit peu convenable à un vieillard de soixante-dix ans et plus, qui devoit plûtot songer à conserver ses forces qu'à les ruiner comme il fit.” *Ut supra*, p 33.

BOOK III had from an early age affected a character of piety,
Chap 4 pretending to hate the business and vanities of the
1655-58 world, and to desire only a retreat where he might practise the austeries and devotions pleasing to God. Morâd, the youngest of the sons of Shah Jehan was conspicuous, chiefly for his courage popular, from his instability and generosity but credulous and weak. When his father's illness gave fire to the combustibles which filled the imperial house this Prince was serving as Suhahdar in Guzerat.

As the illness of the Emperor was from the first regarded as mortal Dara took into his hands without hesitation the reins of government and with his usual precipitation and violence began to show what he apprehended from his brothers and what his brothers had to expect from him. All communication with them was interdicted on pain of death. Their agent papers, and effects at the capital were seized Jumla and such of the other high officers of the state as were suspected of attachment to any of the younger princes were removed from their situations. And orders were issued to place the imperial forces in a state of preparation for the field.

Suja who was nearest the scene of action was the first to appear in hostile array. From the government of the richest province of the empire, which he had severely pillaged he was master of a large treasure the best armament of war and he had collected an army with a view to that very contest which was now impending. Solimân the eldest son of Dara was despatched without loss of time to oppose him found means to cross the Ganges unexpectedly surprised the camp of Suja and forced him to retreat precipitately to Monger where he was immediately besieged.

In the mean time Turunczeh was employing the

resources of his fertile mind for strengthening his hands, and making sure his blow. He persuaded Morâd, that with regard to himself his views were directed to heaven, not to a throne, but as his brothers Dara and Suja, compared with Morad, were unworthy to reign, he was desirous from friendship of aiding him with all his resources ; after which the only boon he should crave would be to retire into obscurity, and devote his days and his nights to the service of his Maker.

BOOK III
CHAP 4

1655-58.

Though Emir Jumla had been dismissed from the vizir's service, he was sent, through some influence which Dara could not resist, to the command of an army in Deccan, where it was the business of Aurungzebe to obtain the benefit of his talents and resources. But the family of Jumla, detained at Delhi, still retained that chieftain in bonds. The expedient which presented itself to the mind of Aurungzebe, fertile in contrivances, was, to seize the person of Emir Jumla. The appearance of constraint would deprive Dara of a pretext for taking revenge on his family. The sudden resentment of his army could be appeased by promises and bribes. The stratagem succeeded, and the talents and army of Jumla were both added to the resources of Aurungzebe.

Having concerted with his brother, from Guzerat, to join him at Oojeen, he took the route from Burrahapore, and arrived at the Nerbudda, where he learned that Jesswint Sing, who had married the daughter of the Rana of Odipore, and through her succeeded to most of the dominions of her father, was in possession of the city of Oojeen, and prepared to dispute the passage of the army. The Rajah lost the favourable opportunity of attacking the troops of Aurungzebe, when, spent with heat and fatigue, they first arrived on the banks of the Nurbudda. The

BOOK III wily Mogul delayed some days, till joined by Morad
Cap. 4 when the brothers crossed the river and, after a well
1655-58 contested action put the Rajah to flight. Aurungzebe,
 who never trusted to force what he could effect by
 deceit, had previously debauched the Mahomedans
 in the army of the Rajah by disseminating among
 them the idea that help to the infidels was treason to
 the faithful

In the mean time, the Emperor Shah Jehan had recovered from the violent effects of his disorder and resumed the exercise of his authority Dara, who during the royal illness had behaved with tenderness and fidelity truly filial and delayed not a moment to restore the reins of government when his father was capable to receive them, was exalted to a still higher place in the affections of the Emperor who dispatched his commands to the Princes Aurungzebe and Morad to return to their respective governments Aurungzebe was little inclined to intermit the efforts he had so happily begun but to make war upon his father, beloved both by the soldiers and people, was to ruin his cause, and made even his own army desert him. Under colour of refreshing his troops, he waited several days at Oojeen and the impetuosity of Dara, which the counsels of Shah Jehon were unable to restrain, speedily afforded him a pretext to cover his designs The news of the passage of the Nerbudda, and of the defeat of the Rajah, kindled Dara into a flame He marched out of Agra at the head of the imperial forces and enabled Aurungzebe to give out that he fought by necessity against his brother merely, not his father and in self-defence Dara sent to his son Soliman who was besieging Suja to Mongeer, to make what terms he could with that Sultan and march with all expedition to join him against Aurungzebe Suja was allowed to resume

the government of Bengal : Soliman hastened toward BOOK III.
the new scene of action. And, could the impatience of
Dara have waited, till joined by his son, who was be-
loved by the soldiers, and at once prudent and brave,
the career of Aurungzebe might perhaps have been
closed. The emperor trembled at the prospect of a
battle ; he threatened to take the field in person,
which would have been effectual ; because no autho-
rity would have been obeyed in opposition to his. But
the infatuated Dara found means to prevent the exe-
cution of this design ; and marched to occupy the
banks of the river Chumbul, and the passes of the
mountains which extend from Guzerat to the Jumna.
Aurungzebe found the passes so strongly guarded,
and the enemy so advantageously posted, that he
durst not attack them ; and fearing the approach of
Soliman, he was thrown into the greatest perplexity.
In this situation he received, from a treacherous
Omrah in the army of Dara, information of a bye-
road among the hills, which would conduct him to an
unguarded part of the river. He left his camp stand-
ing, to amuse the eyes of Dara ; whose first intelli-
gence was, that Aurungzebe was in his rear, and in
full march towards the capital. By great exertion
Dara threw himself before the enemy, and prepared
for action, Dara appeared to most advantage in the
field of battle. His bravery animated his troops.
The impetuous gallantry of Morad, and the cool and
inventive intrepidity of Aurungzebe, were balanced
by the spirit of the imperial army and its leader.
The elephant of Dara was wounded ; and in an evil
hour he was persuaded to dismount. The troops,
missing the imperial houda, suspected treachery and
the death of their general ; and every man began to
provide for himself. Aurungzebe found himself mas-
ter of the field of battle, at the moment when he de-

C H A P . 4 .

1655-58.

BOOK III spared of any longer being able to make his soldiers
CHAP 4 maintain the contest.

1658 Dara fled to Agra, and after a short interview with his father, departed with his family and a few attendants to Delhi, where some imperial troops and treasure were placed at his disposal, and whence he proposed to effect a junction with Soliman. All the counsels and diligence of Aurungzebe were now exerted to the utmost, to improve his victory. He effected to treat Morad as Emperor, and began to make preparations for himself, as intending immediately to set out on a religious pilgrimage to Mecca. In the mean time he wrote letters, and exhausted the arts of seduction, to detach the Omrahs from the cause of Dara. His principal solicitude was to debauch the army of Soliman which he accomplished so effectually, that the unfortunate Prince found at last he could place no dependance on its obedience and was not even safe in its power. He fled from his danger and took shelter with the Rajah of Serinagur an unconquered kingdom of Hindus, among the northern mountains. The victorious army advanced towards Agra but the Emperor ordered the gates of the citadel to be shut, and Aurungzebe was still afraid to offer violence to his father. He wrote a letter, replete with the strongest professions of loyalty and of the most profound submission to his parent and sovereign. The Emperor with the hope of drawing him into his power affected to be satisfied and invited him to his presence. Aurungzebe every day pretended that he was just about to comply but every day found an excuse for delay. After a series of intrigues, he pretended that to set his mind at ease in appearing under humiliation and abasement before his father, it was necessary that his son should previously be admitted into the citadel with a guard for his person. The Emperor, who was

blinded by his desire to have Aurungzebe in his hands, BOOK III assented to a condition which seemed indispensable. When he found himself a prisoner in the hands of his grandson, his rage and vexation exceeded bounds ; and he offered to resign to him the crown, if he would set him at liberty, and join him in defeating the schemes of Aurungzebe. But the youth, though not averse to the prospect of reigning, and not much restrained by the sense of filial duty, refused to comply ; and, after some hesitation and delay, Shah Jehan sent the keys of the citadel to Aurungzebe. The hypocrisy of Aurungzebe was not yet renounced. By a letter, which was carefully made public, he declared, that with the utmost grief he had been reduced to these extremities, and that as soon as Dara, to whose crimes every evil was owing, should be disabled from future mischief, the happiest event of his life would be, to restore to his father the plenitude of his power.

To deliver himself from Morad was the next study of Aurungzebe. The friends of that thoughtless prince had at last brought him to look with suspicion upon his brother's designs, and even to meditate an act which might deliver him finally from so dangerous a rival. The sagacity of Aurungzebe enabled him to discover the intended blow, which he contrived to elude at the very moment, when it was aimed and ready to fall. In his turn he inveigled Morad to an entertainment, and, having intoxicated him with wine, withdrew his arms while he slept, seized him without any commotion, and sent him a prisoner to the castle of Agra.¹

¹ Bernier had not heard of the attempt of Morad upon the life of Aurungzebe. It is here stated upon the Persian authorities of Dow. Bernier, ut supra, p 109—114. Dow's *Shah Jehan*, ch iii Hist of Hindostan, vol iii

BOOK III
CHAP 4
1658

It was now useless, if not hurtful to the cause of Aurungzebe, any longer to disavow his ultimate purpose. But he waited till he was importuned by his nobles, and then, on the second of August, 1658 in the garden of Azabād, near Delhi, pretending to be overcome by their entreaties, he submitted to receive the ensigns of royalty and assumed the pompous title of Aulum gir, or Conqueror of the world.

Aulum gir allowed not what he had already achieved to slacken his efforts in finishing what remained to be done. Dara had taken the route towards Lahore and had the resources of the northern provinces, Lahore, Multan and Cabul, at his command. Soliman was ready to descend from the mountains with the assistance of the Rajah of Scinagur, and with a body of adherents who still approached the size of an army. And Sujo was master of the rich province of Bengal. Aulum gir saw, what every skilful leader has seen that in the coarse business of war, expedition is the grand instrument of success. He hastened toward the Sutledge, from the banks of which Dara retreated upon the news of his approach. Aurungzebe, pressing on, drove him first from the Beyali theo from Lahore, and next from Multan the unfortunate Prince who might have resisted with some chance of success having lost his resolution together with his fortune. From Multan, he fled across the Indus to the mountains of Bicker, when Aurungzebe, declaring the war against him to be closed, left eight thousand horse to pursue him, and returned with haste to Agra.

He had no sooner arrived at Agra, than he learned what he partly expected, that Suja was already in force and in full march toward the capital. He sent to his son Mahomed whom he had left at Multan,

to join him with all his forces, and in the mean time BOOK III.
took the road to Bengal, but by slow marches, till CHAP 4
1658.
Mahomed came up Suja intrenched himself near Allahabad, and waited for the arrival of his enemy. Though Suja did not avail himself of all his advantages, he was able to join battle with a fair prospect of success. Nor was this all. In the very heat of the action, the Rajah, Jesswint Sing, who had made his peace with Aurungzebe, and joined him with his forces, turned his arms against him, and fell upon the rear of his army. The dismay and desertion which every unexpected incident scatters through an Indian army began to appear. But the firmness of the usurper recovered the blow. His elephant, which was wounded and began to be ungovernable, he ordered to be chained immovable by the feet; the soldiers, still beholding the imperial castle opposed to the enemy, were rallied by the generals; Suja committed the same fatal mistake which had ruined Dara; he descended from his elephant, and his army dispersed

Emir Jumla, the ancient friend of Aurungzebe, who from his place of confinement, or pretended confinement in Deccan, had joined him on the march, performed eminent service in this battle. It is even said, that Aurungzebe, when his elephant became ungovernable, had one foot out of the castle to alight, when Jumla, who was near him on horseback, cried out sternly, " You descend from the throne!" Aurungzebe smiled, had a moment for reflection, and replaced himself in the houda.

Suja and his army fled during the night, while Aurungzebe was in no condition to pursue them. Jesswint Sing, and his rajaputs, who had plundered the camp, had the audacity to wait the attack of

BOOK III Aurungzebe the following day and were routed, but
CHAP 4 without being obliged to abandon their spoil. Leaving
1656 M^{ohamed} with a force to pursue the vanquished Siya
 Aurungzebe hurried back to Agra

The haste was not without a cause. Dara, after having arrived at Bicker, crossed the desert with his family, and arrived in Guzerat, where he gained the governor. Aurungzebe, aware how small a spark might kindle into a flame among the disaffected rajahs of the mountains, and the distant viceroys and princes of Deccan, was eager to allow the danger no time to ougmet. He courted Jesswiat Sing who had so recently betrayed him, to prevent his co-operation with Dara and marched with all expedition to Ajmere. Dara had already seized an important pass and entrenched himself. Aurungzebe was not a little startled when he first beheld the advantages of the position, and strength of his works. He set in motion his usual engines of treachery and deceit and by their assistance gained a complete and final victory. Deserted by all, and robbed of his effects, by a body of Mahrattas in his service Dara fled towards the Indus with his family, who nearly destitute of attendants were on the point of perishing in the desert. After many sufferings he was seized by a treacherous chief who owed to him his life and fortune and delivered into the hands of Aurungzebe. His murder was only a few days deferred during which he was ignominiously exposed about the streets of Delhi.

While the Emperor was engaged in opposing Dara his son Mahomed and Jumla the Vizir prosecuted the war against Siya. That Prince had fled from the battle to Patno from Patna to Mongeet from Mongeet to Rajamahl, and from Rajamahl he was forced to

retreat to Tanda. Suja was still possessed of resources; his courage and resolution failed not, and an event occurred which promised a turn in the tide of his affairs. Mahomed had been formerly enamoured of the daughter of Suja; and their union had been projected, before the distractions of the royal family had filled the empire with confusion and bloodshed. It is said that the Princess wrote to Mahomed a letter, reminding him of his former tenderness, and deprecating the ruin of her father. The impatient and presumptuous Mahomed was little pleased with the treatment he sustained at the hands of Aurungzebe, his heart was touched with the tears of the princess, and he resolved to desert the cause of his own father, and join that of hers. He expected that the army, in which he was popular, would follow his example. But the authority and address of Jumla preserved order and allegiance. The news of his son's defection quickly reached Aulum gîr; who concluded for certain that he had carried the army along with him, and set out in the utmost expedition with a great force for Bengal. In the mean time Jumla attacked the army of Suja, which he defeated; and the conquered Prince retreated to Dacca. Aurungzebe, pursuing his usual policy, wrote a letter to Mahomed, which he took care that the agents of Suja should intercept. It purported to be an answer to one received, offering to accept the returning duty of Mahomed, and to pardon his error, on the performance of a service which was nameless, but seemed to be understood. This letter smote the mind of Suja with incurable distrust. After a time Mahomed was obliged to depart, and with a heavy heart to entrust himself to his unforgiving father. He was immediately immured in Guakor, where, after languishing for some years, he was entrusted with liberty, though

BOOK III not with power but died a short time after¹ Suja
CHAP. 4 was speedily reduced to extremity in Dacca, and
 1658 having no further means of resistance, fled from the province, and sought refuge in the kingdom of Arracan. But the wretched Rajah, who at once coveted his wealth, and dreaded his pursuers violated without scruple the laws of hospitality and mercy. Death, in some of the worst of its forms, soon overtook the family of Suja.

During these transactions, rewards which were too powerful for the virtue of a Hindu, had been offered to the Rajah of Scrinagur and shortly after the ruin of Suja, Solimān, the last object of the fears of Aulum gir was delivered into his hands, and added to the number of the prisoners of Guahor.

From the time when Aulum gir having subdued all competition for the throne, found himself the undisputed lord of the Mogul empire, the vigilance and steadiness of his administration preserved so much tranquillity in the empire, and so much uniformity in its business, that the historians who describe only wars and revolutions, have found little to do. The most important series of transactions were those which occurred in Deccan which ceased not during the whole of this protracted reign laid the foundation of some of the most remarkable of the subsequent events and had a principal share in determining the form which the political condition of India thereafter assumed. That we may relate these transactions without interruption we shall shortly premise such of the other transactions handed down to us (for we have no complete history of Aurungzebe) as fell near the beginning of his reign, and merit my regard.

¹ This account of the fate of Mahomed is given by Mr Stewart (Hist. Bengal p. 226) on the authority of the Mus'ulmangery and extracts from the account of Bernier who says he died in Guahor.

When Aurungzebe marched from Deccan to con- BOOK III.
tend for the crown, he left Mahomed Mauzim, his CHAP. 4.
second son, to command in his name. When estab-
lished upon the throne, it was not altogether without
apprehension that he contemplated so vast a power
in hands which possibly might turn it against him.
Mauzim, aware of the jealous disposition of his
father, preserved the utmost humility of exterior;
avoided all display, either of wealth or power; was
vigilant in business; exact in obeying the commands
of the Emperor, and in remitting the revenue and
dues of his government. He was recalled, notwithstanding
his prudence, and Shaista Khan made vice-
roy in Deccan. At the same time, Aurungzebe,
seeking security for the present, by directing hope to
the future, declared Mahomed Mauzim heir to the
throne, and changed his name to Shah Aulum, or
King of the World.

The third year of his reign was visited with a great famine, a calamity which ravages India with more dreadful severity than almost any other part of the globe. It was occasioned by the recurrence of an extraordinary drought, which in India almost suspends vegetation, and, throughout the principal part of the country, leaves both men and cattle destitute of food. The prudence of Aurungzebe, if his preceding actions will not permit us to call it his humanity, suggested to him the utmost activity of beneficence on this calamitous occasion. The rents of the husbandman, and other taxes, were remitted. The treasury of the Emperor was opened without limit. Corn was bought in the provinces where the produce was *least*, conveyed to those in which it was *most* defective, and distributed to the people at reduced prices. The great economy of Aurungzebe, who allowed no expense for the luxury and ostenta-

BOOK III tion of a court, and who managed with skill and
 CHAP 4 vigilance the disbursements of the state, afforded him
 166. a resource for the wants of his people

It was before the commencement perhaps of this calamity that the empire was agitated by the prospect of a fresh revolution from a dangerous sickness of the Emperor¹. The court was full of intrigues on one hand for Mauzim, the declared successor; on the other for Akbar a young and even infant son of Aurungzebe. Shah Jahan himself was still alive and the people in general expected that he would resume the reins of government. But the nation was relieved from its terrors and from the calamities which too certainly would have fallen upon it. The usurper recovered. But the efforts of Sultan Mauzim to secure the succession, expressed to the suspicious mind of Aulum gir, more of the desire to obtain a throne than to preserve a father and his purpose in regard to the succession, if his declaration in favour of Mauzim had ever been more than a pretence, was from this time understood to have suffered a radical change.

To forward his designs in favour of Akbar he applied to Shah Jahan to obtain for that prince in marriage the daughter of Dara who remained in the seraglio of her grandfather. Shah Jahan though strictly confined in the palace at Agra, had been treated with great respect retaining his women and servants, and furnished with every amusement in which he was under stood to delight. He had not,

¹ Dow (Hist. of Aurungzebe chap 18) places the Emperor's illness after the famine. But Bernier who was on the spot and mentions the arrival of a使者 from the Khan of the Ubeeks first among the events preceding the termination of the civil war says that those ambassador who remained somewhat more than four months had no doubt seen the Emperor when he was taken ill. Bernier Lycre n. 15 Paris 1701 vol 1 p 10

however, remitted his indignation against Aurungzebe, and now sent a haughty and insulting refusal. Aurungzebe had prudence not to force his inclination, and, so far from showing any resentment, redoubled his efforts to soften his mind.

BOOK III.
CHAP. 4

1665.

The services of Emir Jumla had been rewarded with the government of Bengal. But the mind of Aurungzebe, and indeed the experience of Oriental government, told him, that he was never safe while there was a man alive, who had power to hurt him. He wished to withdraw the Vizir from his government, but without a rupture, which might raise distrust in the breasts of all his Omrahs. To afford him occupation which would detain his mind from planning defection, he recommended to him a war against the King of Assam, who had broken into Bengal during the distractions of the empire, and still remained unchastised. Jumla, who promised himself both plunder and reputation from this expedition, and whose exploring eye beheld an illustrious path through the kingdom of Assam to the conquest of China, undertook the expedition with alacrity. He ascended the Brahmapootra in boats. The Assamese abandoned the country which lies on the side of the mountains facing Bengal, but the fortress of Azo was garrisoned, and stood an attack. After the reduction of Azo, Jumla crossed the mountains of Assam, vanquished the King who took refuge in his capital, forced him to fly to the shelter of the mountains, and became master of a great part of the kingdom. But the rains came on, which in that kingdom are peculiarly violent and lay the greater part of the level country under water. Jumla found it impossible to subsist his army, and was under the necessity of returning to Bengal. Incredible were the difficulties with which he had to contend, necessities wanting,

BOOK III the roads covered with water, and the enemy every
Chap. 4. where harassing his retreat. The capacity of Jumla
1665 triumphed over all obstructions he brought back the
 greater part of the army safe and wrote to the Emperor that he would next year carry his arms to the
 heart of China. But the army, on its return was
 afflicted with a dysentery the effect of the hardships
 it had endured. The general escaped not and worn
 out, as he was, with years and fatigue, fell a victim
 to the violence of the disease "I am" said the Emperor to the son of Jumla, whom he had recently
 made generalissimo of the horse 'have lost a father
 and I have lost the greatest and most dangerous of
 my friends."¹

The next event is ludicrous, perhaps, in itself, but
 of high importance, as an instance of the power of
 superstition among the weak and credulous inhabi-
 tants of India. Of the professors of devotion and pe-
 nance, going by the name of *Fakirs*, one class is dis-
 tinguished by wandering about the country in crowds,
 almost naked, pretending to live by mendicity, but
 stealing plundering, and even committing murder,
 wherever prompted by the hope of advantage In the
 territory of Marwar, or Jodhpore an old woman pos-
 sessed of considerable property, began to enlarge her
 liberalities towards the *Fakirs*. These sturdy beggars
 crowded round her to the number of some thousands,
 and not satisfied with the wealth of their pious patron
 etc, made spoil of the neighbouring country, and rioted
 in devotion and sensuality at her abode. The people,
 exasperated by these oppressions, rose repeatedly upon
 the saints but were defeated with great slaughter.
 The idea of enchantment was generated. The people
 regarded the old woman as a sorceress, and believed

¹ *Berries* vi supra p. 67

that she compounded for her followers a horrid mess BOOK III.
 which rendered them proof against human weapons,
 and invincible. What they were not rendered by
 enchantments, they were rendered by the belief of
 them The Fakîrs, finding themselves, under the
 auspices of the old woman, too formidable for resis-
 tance, assembled in great numbers, and spread their
 devastations to a wide extent. The Rajah of Marwar
 attacked them, but was defeated. The collectors of
 the imperial revenue marched against them with the
 troops under their command; but sustained a similar
 disaster. Becoming presumptuous from unexpected
 success, they resolved on a march to the capital, to
 the number of twenty thousand plundering saints,
 with the sacred old woman at their head. About five
 days' journey from Agia, they were opposed by a body
 of imperial troops, under the collector of the district
 Him they overcame; and now grasped in their ima-
 ginations the whole wealth and authority of the state
 They set up their old woman as sovereign. Aurung-
 sebe felt the danger to be serious; for the soldiers
 were infected with the superstitions of the people;
 and it was hazardous to the last degree, from the ter-
 rors with which they might be disordered, to permit
 them to engage with the sainted banditti What
 was first demanded; an antidote to the religious
 contagion; was invented by Auiungzebe His own
 sanctity was as famous as that of the old woman; he
 pretended that by means of incantation, he had dis-
 covered a counter-enchantment; he wrote with his
 own hand, certain mysterious words upon slips of
 paper, one of which, carried upon the point of a spear
 before each of the squadrons, he declared would ren-
 der impotent the spells of the enchantress The Em-
 peror was believed, and though the Fakîrs fought
 with great desperation, they were all cut to pieces,

Chap 4.

1665

BOOK III. except a few whom the humanity of the general led
Chap 4 him to spare. "I find," said Aurungzebe, "that too
 1665 much religion among the vulgar is as dangerous as
 too little in the monarch."

In the seventh year of the reign of Aurungzebe his father died. The life of Shah Jehan had reached its natural period but his death did not escape the suspicion of the *pousta*, that detestable invention of despotic fears.¹

After the death of Jumla, the Rajah of Arracan had invaded the contiguous quarter of Bengal, and possessed himself of Chittagong and all the country along the coast to the Ganges. He availed himself of the Portuguese settlers, who were numerous at Chittagong, and of their ships, which abounded in the bay of Bengal, and it is said infested the coast and every branch of the Ganges as plunderers and pirates. These evils it consisted not with the vigilance of Aurungzebe to leave without a cure. A new deputy was appointed for Bengal an army collected itself at Dacca and descended the river. The enemy

¹ The *Pousta* is thus described by the physician Bernier. Ce poust n'est autre chose que du parot écrité qu'on laisse la nuit tremper dans de l'eau; c'est ce qu'on fait ordinairement boire à Gonaltez à ces princes auxquels on ne veut pas faire couper la tête; c'est la première chose qu'on leur porte le matin et on ne leur donne point à manger qu'ils n'en ayant eu une grande tasse on les laisseroit plutôt mourir de faim; cela les fait dormir malgré et mourir insensiblement, perdant peu à peu les forces et l'entendement, et dorment comme tout endormis et étourdis et c'est par là qu'on dit qu'on s'est défaict de Sepe Chekouh du petit fils de Morad et de Soliman même. Bernier Hist. de la dernière Région des États du Grand Mogul p 170. It is said that when the gallant Soliman was, by the treachery of the Rajah of Senziger delivered into the cruel hands of Aurungzebe, and introduced into his presence when every one was struck with the noble appearance of the graceful and manly youth he entreated that he might be immediately beheaded; and not reserved to the lingering destruction of the *pousta*; when the hypocritical Aurungzebe forbade him to fear, adding, that he was cautious, but not cruel. Bernier Ibid. p 169 Dow Recd of Aurungzebe, ch. vi.

though master of the forts and strong holds of the country, without much resistance retired. The Portuguese were invited to betray them, and made no hesitation by their obedience to purchase for themselves privileges and settlements in Bengal.¹

BOOK III.

CHAP. 4.

1668.

The mistake of a secretary was near involving the empire, not only in hostilities with the whole force of Persia, but in all the horrors of a civil war. Aurungzebe, who had been complimented upon ascending the throne, by embassies from the Khan of the Usbekhs and from Abbas II. Shah of Persia, proposed, after settling the affairs of his government, to make the suitable return. The secretary who composed the letters, addressed to the respective sovereigns, inadvertently designated the Shah, by no higher title than belonged to the Khan of the Usbekhs. This was interpreted as a meditated insult: and resented by a declaration of hostilities. Aurungzebe wished to explain the mistake, but his ambassador was not admitted even to an audience. His own weapons were tried against him; and he added an illustrious instance to prove that he who is most practised in the arts of deception is not always the hardest to deceive. Of the Mahomedan army and officers of the Mogul empire, as some were Moguls, some Afghauns, some Turks, and some Usbekhs, so a large proportion were Persians, among whom was the Vizir himself. The fidelity of this part of his subjects, Aurungzebe was by no means willing to try, in a war with their native country. A letter was intercepted from Abbas, ad-

¹ Bernier (*Evenemens Particul des Etats du Mogul*, p 88—101) speaks of these Portuguese as infamous buccaniers, and their own historian Faria de Sowza, countenances the assertion, which might have been founded upon the reports of enemies. The Portuguese followed their merchandize as their chief occupation, but, like the English and Dutch of the same period, had no objection to plunder, when it fell in their way.

BOOK III dressed to the Vizir himself importuning that a conspiracy existed among the Persian nobles to seize the Emperor when he should take the field. **CHAP 4** **1668** Aurungzebe was transported with apprehension and rage. He issued a sudden order to the city guards to surround the houses of the Persian Omrahs, which they were forbidden to quit under pain of death. Aurungzebe found himself on the brink of a precipice. The Persian chiefs were numerous and powerful, a common danger united them, the descendants of the Afghano nobility, who formed a considerable proportion of the men in power, and hated the Moguls, by whom the Afghaun dynasty had been driven from the throne, were very likely to make common cause with the Persians. Even if guilty he beheld appalling danger in attempting to punish them but he now reflected that he might have been deceived, and wished only for the means of a decent retreat. He sent for some of the principal Omrahs but they excused themselves from attendance. All had assembled their friends and descendants fortified their houses and waited the appeal to arms. After a suspense of two days the princess Jehaoorn arrived. She had been sent for express, upon the first alarm. The favourite daughter of Shah Jehan by whom the Persians had always been distinguished and exalted might render by her mediation, the most important assistance. After a short conference with the Emperor she presented herself in her chair at the door of the Vizir. This was an act of supreme confidence and honour. The doors of the mansion flew open the Vizir hastened to the hall of audience and prostrated himself at the foot of the throne. Aurungzebe descended, and embraced him. Convinced that he had been deceived he now sought only to obliterate all memory of the offence and with some loss of re-

putation, and a remainder of disgust in the breasts of BOOK III.
some of the Omrahs, he recovered himself from the
dangerous position in which a moment of rashness had
placed him Shah Abbas in the mean time, with a
large army, was upon his march toward the confines
of India; and Aurungzebe, who had sent forward
his son Mauzim to harass the enemy, but not to fight,
made rapid preparations to meet him in person. Shah
Abbas, however, died in the camp, before he arrived
at the scene of action. His successor wished to
mount the throne, free from the embarrassment of an
arduous war; and Aurungzebe was more intent upon
gaining conquests in Deccan than in Persia. An ac-
commodation, therefore, was easily made¹

CHAP 4

1668.

These transactions were all contained within the first ten years of the reign of Aurungzebe, during which several events had already occurred in Deccan. A new enemy had arisen, whose transactions were not as yet alarming, but who had already paved the way to revolutions of the greatest importance. This was Sevagee, the founder of the Mahratta empire, a power which began when the empire of the Moguls was in its utmost strength; and rose to greatness upon its ruins. In the mountainous regions which extended from the borders of Guzerat to Canara, beyond the island of Goa, lived a race of Hindus, who resembled the mountaineers in almost all the other parts of Hindustan, that is, were a people still more rude and uncivilized than the inhabitants of the plains, and at the same time far more hardy and warlike. They consisted of various tribes or communities, to some of which (it appears not to how many) the name of Mahratta, afterwards extended to them all, was applied.² Sevagee was the son

¹ Dow, Reign of Aurungzebe, ch. vi.

² Mheerut, or Mharat, the name of a district, which under the

BOOK III of Shahjee, a Hindu in the service of Ibrahim Adil Shah, King of Beejapore, from whom he received a jahgure in the Carnatic with a command of ten thousand horse. Sevagee when very young was sent along with his mother to reside at Poonah, of which as a Zemindary, his father had obtained a grant, and of which he entrusted the management, together with the charge of his wife and son, to one of his officers, named Dadajee Punt. The mother of Sevagee was an object of aversion to her husband and the son shared in the neglect which was the lot of his mother. He grew up under Dadajee, to vigour both of body and mind and at seventeen years of age engaged a number of banditti, and ravaged the neighbouring districts. Dadajee, afraid of being made to answer for these enormities, and unable to restrain them swallowed poison, and died when Sevagee took possession of the Zemindary, increased the number of his troops and raised contributions in all the neighbouring districts. Such was the commencement of the fortunes of Sevagee.¹

Of his ancestry, the following is the account presented to us. His father was the son of Malojee

Deccanee sovereign was part of the province of Dowlatabad may in former ages says Mr Jonathan Scott, have given name to a larger division of Dekkan, and the original country of the Mahrasas. Scott's Deccan Intro. p. x. Ibid. I 5^a. The Mahrasa language extends along the coast from the island of Bardez to the river Tapu. Orme Histor. Frag. p. 57. It is said by Col. Wilks (Hist. Sketches. p. 6) that from Bedar the Mahrasa language is spread over the whole country to the northwestward of the Canara, and of a line which passing considerably to the eastward of Dowlatabad forms an irregular sweep until it touches the Tapu and follows the course of that river to the western sea—but that in the geographical tables of the Hindus the name of Maharashtra and by construction Mahrasa dham (or country) seems to have been more particularly appropriated to the eastern portion of this great region including Buldana, part of Berar and Canduh the western was known by its present name of Concan.²

Aurungzebe's Operations in Dekkan translated by Scott, p. 6.

and Malojee was the son of Bauga Bonsla, a son of BOOK III.
the Rana of Odipoor, by a woman of an inferior caste. CHAP. 4
The degradation of Bauga Bonsla, from the impurity
and baseness of his birth, drove him to seek, among
strangers, that respect which he was denied at home.
He served during a part of his life a Rajah, possessing
a Zemindaree in the province of Candesh; and after-
wards purchased for himself a Zemindaree in the
neighbourhood of Poonah, where he resided till his
death. His son Malojee entered the service of a
Mahratta chief, in which he acquired so much dis-
tinction as to obtain the daughter of his master in
marriage for his son. This son was Shajee, and Se-
vagee was the fruit of the marriage. But Shajec,
having quarrelled with his father-in-law, repaired to
the King of Beejapore, and received an establishment
in Carnatic. He here joined the Polygar of Mudkul
in a war upon the Rajah of Tanjore; and having
defeated the Rajah, the victors quarrelled about the
division of the territory. Shajee defeated the Poly-
gar, took possession of both Mudkul and Tanjore;
and having married another wife, by whom he had a
son named Ekogee, he left him and his posterity
Rajahs of Tanjore, till they sunk into dependants of
the East India Company.¹

¹ Aurungzebe's Operations in Dekkan, a translation from a Persian manuscript, by Jonathan Scott, p 6,—Appendix A to Lord Wellesley's Notes on the Mahratta war;—East India Papers, printed by the House of Commons, 1804, p 255. Lord Wellesley seems to have followed Scott. Ekogee, as he is called by Mr Orme and others, is written Angojee in Mr Scott's translation, p 32. The history and origin of the family is related with considerable variations, by Col. Wilks, on Mahratta authorities (Hist Sketches, chap iii.) But if Hindu authority were better than Persian, (and it is far inferior) the facts are not worth the trouble of a critical comparison. It is of some importance to state what is related (*ibid*) by Wilks, that Shahjee went second in command in the army of the King of Beejapore which proceeded to the conquest of the Carnatic in 1638, that he was left provincial governor of all the Beejapore conquests in Carnatic, when the

BOOK III. When Sevagee, upon the death of Dadajee, seized
Cap. 4 the Zemindaree of Poonah, his father was too much
1668. occupied in the East to be able to interfere. Aurungzebe was at the same moment hastening his preparations for the war with his brothers and invited Sevagee to join his standards. The short sighted Hindoo insulted his messenger and reproached Aurungzebe himself with his double treason against a king and a father. He improved the interval of distraction in the Mogul empire took the strong fortress of Rayree, or Rajegur, which he fixed upon as the seat of his government and added to it Porundeh, Jegneh, and several districts dependant on the King of Beejapore. The threats of that power, now little formidable, restrained not his career of plunder and usurpation. He put to death by treachery, the Rajah of Jnowlee and seized his territory and treasure plundered the rich and manufacturing city of Kallian took Madury Purdhaungur Rajapore, Sungarpore and an island belonging to the Portuguese. At length the Beejapore government sent an army to suppress him. He deceived the general with professions of repentance, and offers of submission, stabbed him to the heart at a conference cut to pieces his army deprived of its leader and rapidly took possession of the whole region of Kokun or Connan, the

general in chief returned to the capital; that his first residence was at Bangalore but that he afterwards seems to have divided his time between Colle and Ilalpore. Wilks infers from some grants of land by Shawjee of which the writings still remain that he effected independence of the declining government which he had served. The acquisition of Tanjore was made as the Colonel thinks not by Shawjee but after his death by Elorac his son; and his accomplice was not the Rajah or Polygar of Mudkul but the Naik of Madura which however appears to have been called Mudkul by the Persian historians. Naik and Poligar were Hindu names of governors of districts who, as often as they dared to assume independence affected the title of Rajah. Naik was a title of inferior dignity to Polygar.

country lying between the Ghauts and the sea, from BOOK III.
Goa to Daman.

CHAP 4

1668.

When Aurungzebe, upon the defeat of his rivals, sent Shaista Khan, with the rank of Ameer al Omrah, or head of the Omrahs, to command in Deccan, the Rajah Jesswunt Sing, who had redeemed his treachery in the battle against Suja, by his subsequent dereliction of the cause of Dara, was invested about the same time with the government of Guzerat. As soon as Aurungzebe had leisure to attend to the progress of Sevagee, the viceroy of Guzerat was commanded to co-operate with the viceroy of Deccan, in reducing and chastising the Mahratta adventurer. Sevagee could not resist the torrent which now rolled against him. The strong fortress of Jegnch was taken. The Ameer al Omrah advanced to Poonah, where he took up his residence. Here a band of assassins made their way to his bed in the night. He himself was wounded in the hand, by which he warded off a blow from his head, and his son was slain. The assassins escaped, and Sevagee himself was understood to have been among them. Circumstances indicated treachery; and the suspicions of Shaista Khan fell upon Jesswint Sing. These two generals were recalled, and after an interval of two years, during which the Prince Mahomed Mauzim, or Shah Aulum, held the government of Deccan; the two generals, Jey Sing and Dilleer Khan were sent to prosecute the war against the Mahratta chief. Jey Sing was the Rajah of Abnir,¹ and Dilleer was a Patan Omrah, who both

¹ The mountainous districts, lying between the provinces of Agra and Guzerat, and forming part of the provinces of Malwa and Ajmere, were inhabited by a race of warlike Hindus, named Rajpoots, who, from pride of superior prowess, claimed to be of a higher caste than the mass of other Hindus. They had been divided into three principal Rajahships, that of Abnir or Ambeer, called afterwards Jeypore and Jyengur, on the borders of Agra, that of Jodepore or Marwar, south

BOOK III had obtained high rank as generals in the service of
CHAP 4 Shah Jehan and being chosen for their merit as the
1668. fittest to guide and enlighten Soliman who sent
 agamst Suja, were the chiefs whom Aurungzebe had
 gained to betray their master, and debauch his army

Before the arrival of these generals, Sevagee had with great address surprised and plundered Surat a city of importance and renown the chief port of the Mogul empire, and that from which the holy pilgrims commenced their voyage to the tomb of the prophet. The operations of the new commanders turned the tide in Mahratta affairs. The armies of Sevagee were driven from the field his country was plundered and Poorundeh, a strong fortress, in which he had placed his women and treasures, was besieged. It was reduced to the last extremity, when Sevagee, unarmed, presented himself at one of the outposts of the imperial camp, and demanded to be led to the general. Professing conviction of his folly, in attempting to contend with the Mogul power, he craved the pardon of his disobedience and offered to the Emperor his services, along with twenty forts which he would immediately resign. Jeysingh embraced the

west from Abnis approaching the centre of Ajmere; and lastly that of Chitore called also Odeypore from another city lying farther south. Of these Rajahs the most powerful had been the Rajah of Chitore whose distinctive title was Rana. Jiwaini Sing the Rajah of Jod pore having married the daughter of the last Rana had merged those two kingdom of Rajpoots into one. Mr Orme seems not to have been aware of the marriage of Jiwaini Sing and of its effects; as he mentions with some surprise that the name of the Rajah of Chitore nowhere appears in the history of the present transactions. Bernier Relat. p 3rd 36; Dow Reigns of Shah Jehan ch 7 p 212; Scott ut supra p 10; Memoirs of Erodot Khan p 18; Rennel's Memoir Introd p xxiii. To the above nations of Rajpoots should also be added those of Bundels or Bundelkond a district between the provinces of Agra and Malwa extend'g from Jeypore by Gwalior and Callinger to the Deccan. Memoirs of Erodot Khan p 17 Rennel ut supra p xxxiii.

proposal; and Sevagee obeyed the imperial order, to wait upon the Emperor at Delhi. Sevagee had offered to conduct the war in Candahar against the Persians. Had he been received with the honour to which he looked, he might have been gained to the Mogul service, and the empire of the Mahrattas would not have begun to exist. But Aurungzebe, who might easily have dispatched, resolved to humble the adventurer. When presented in the hall of audience, he was placed among the inferior Onirahs; which affected him to such a degree that he wept and fainted away. He now meditated, and with great address contrived, the means of escape. Leaving his son, a boy, with a Brahmen whom he knew at Mutterah, and who afterwards conducted him safe to his father, he travelled as a pilgrim to Juggernaut, and thence by the way of Hyderabad to his own country.¹

The Prince Shah Aulum, and the Rajah Jesswunt Sing, were sent to supersede the Rajah Jey Sing, who was suspected of an understanding with Sevagee, and died on his way to the imperial presence.² The change was favourable to Sevagee; because Jesswunt Sing, who had but little affection to the imperial service, allowed the war to linger, and discontents and jealousies to breed in the army. Sevagee was not inactive. Immediately upon his arrival he took royal

¹ Scott, *ut supra*, p 11—17 Mr Orme, from scattered reports, has stated the circumstances differently, *Historical Frag* p 17, &c

² Not without suspicion of poison —Mr Scott's author, who probably wished to spare Aurungzebe, says, by his moonshee, or secretary (p 17) Mr Orme says, by order of Aurungzebe (p 27) But the Rajah was worn out with age and laborious services, and the only poison, perhaps was the anguish of disgrace He is praised by the Mahomedan historians as the most eminent, in personal qualities, of all the Hindus they had yet known, accomplished in Perian and Arabian learning His successor, of whom more will be heard hereafter, was celebrated for his astronomical learning, and for the observatory which he erected at Jeypore *Memoirs of Eradut Khan*, p 18 Note (1) by Scott.

BOOK III titles, and struck coins in his name His troops, in consequence of his previous arrangements, had been well kept on foot during his absence and he attacked immediately the Mogul territories and forts. Surat was again plundered he recovered all the forts which he had resigned, and added some new districts to his former possessions.

1668

The weakness of Beejapore made him look upon the territories of that declining state as his easiest prey Neither upon that, however, nor any other enterprise, could he proceed with safety, till his forts were supplied with provisions and provisions, while pressed by the Mogul arms, he found it difficult, if not impossible, to supply He seems never to have distrusted his own address any more than his courage By a letter to Jesswunt Sing, he averred, that only because his life was in danger had he fled from the imperial presence, where his faithful offer of services had been treated with scorn that still he desired to return within the walls of obedience and would place his son in the imperial service, if any command in the army, not dishonourable, was bestowed upon him The stratagem succeeded to his wish he obtained a truce, during which he supplied his forts he dexterously withdrew his son from the Mogul army with little resistance he took possession of several important districts belonging to Beejapore compelled the King to pay him a contribution of three lacs of pagodas, and the King of Golconda to pay him another of four¹

The Emperor, displeased with Jesswunt Sing, as well on account of the ill success of the war, as the divisions and jealousies which reigned in the army recalled him and several generals were successively

¹ Dr. (p. 80) says also upon what authorities he as usual omits to state

1671-81.

sent to conduct affairs under Aulum Shah. In the BOOK III. mean time, the Mahrattas plundered the adjoining countries, retreating with the spoil to their forts, in spite of all the efforts of the imperial commanders. At last, in 1671, the Prince himself was recalled. An Omrah, titled Bahadur Khan, succeeded him; and retained the government till the year 1676. During these years the war produced no remarkable event, though it was prosecuted with considerable activity, and without intermission. The efforts of the Viceroy were divided and weakened, by hostilities with Beejapore and Golconda; which, though they had contributed to the fall of those languishing states, had aided the rising power of Sevagee. In 1677 that chieftain affected to enter into an alliance with the King of Golconda against the King of Beejapore and the Moguls; and marched into the territory of Golconda at the head of an army of 40,000 horse. He proceeded to make conquests with great appearance of fidelity; but placed Mahratta governors in all the fortresses, and enriched himself by plunder. He obtained possession of the impregnable fortress of Gingee by treachery. He laid siege to Vellore, which defended itself during more than four months. An interview took place between Sévagee and Ekojee, the latter of whom, perceiving the insatiable appetite of his brother for power, trembled for his dominions. Before he had time, however, to conquer every thing to the north of the Coleroon, he was recalled to his western dominions.¹ Dilleer Khan, who succeeded Bahadur, carried on the war in a similar manner, and was superseded by Bahadur, who received the command anew, in 1681. The most remarkable occur-

¹ This expedition into the Carnatic is noticed by Scott, ut supra, p. 32, by Orme, Hist Frag p 82—87 Col Wilks, however, (ch iii ut supra) has given the most distinct account, and is here followed

BOOK III **CHAP 4** **1681** rence, during the administration of Dilleer, was the arrival in his camp of the son of Sevagee, who had incurred the displeasure of his father, and fled for protection to the Moguls. The event was regarded as fortunate, and a high rank was bestowed upon the young Mahratta bnt Sevagee soon found means to regain his confidence, and he had the good fortune to make his escape n little time before his father terminated his indefatigable and extraordinary career.

During all the time of these great and multiplied transactions, a naval war, which we hear of for the first time in the history of India, was carried on between Sevagee and his enemies. At the commencement of his exploits, a chief, distinguished by the name of Siddee Jore, had the government of the town of Dunda Rajapore, a sea port, to the southward of Bombay, belonging to the King of Beejapore and at the same time the command of the fleet which that sovereign had formed to protect his maritime dominions, and their trade, from the naval enemies which now infested the coasts of India. While Siddee Jore was endeavouring to signalize himself against Sevagee in another quarter, that ingenious adventurer arrived unexpectedly at Dunda Rajapore and obtained possession of it by a stratagem. The loss of this important place so enraged the King against Siddee Jore, that he procured his assassination. At the time of the capture of Dnnda Rajapore, however, the heir of Sndee Jore was in the command of the fleet which lay nt the fortified island of Gingera, before the town. When the outrage was committed upon his father by the King of Beejapore he tendered his services to Aurungzebe with the fort of Gingera and the whole of the Beejapore fleet. The offer, of course, was greedily necepted. Siddee, it appears, was a name, which was applied in common to those

Abyssinian adventurers, who had passed over, in great numbers, from their own country into the service of the kings of Deccan ; and had there frequently engrossed a great proportion of the principal officers of state. Of this class of men was the admiral who had now enlisted himself in the Mogul service. He was joined by a great number of his family and countrymen. He himself was called *the Siddee*, by way of distinction ; his principal officers had the term Siddee prefixed to their names ; and his crews and followers were in general denominated the Siddees. They carried on an active warfare along the whole western coast of India, and were not only dangerous and troublesome enemies to Sevagee, but formidable even to the British, and other European traders, who frequented the coast.¹

BOOK III.
CHAP. 4.

1682.

Sevagee breathed his last, in his fortress of Rayree on the 5th of April, 1682, of an inflammation in his chest, at the early age of fifty-two, having displayed a fertility of invention, adapted to his ends ; and a firmness of mind in the pursuit of them, which have seldom been equalled, probably never surpassed. With the exception of the few small districts possessed by the Europeans, his dominions, at the time of his death, comprehended, along the western coast of India, an extent of about 400 miles in length by 120 in breadth, and from the river Mirzeou in the south, to Versal in the north. Of the detached forts, which at one time he had garrisoned in Carnatic, only one or two appear to have at this time remained in his hands.²

During these transactions in the south, we are not informed of any other emergency which called the attention of Aurungzebe from the ordinary details of his administration ; excepting a war with the Patans

¹ Orme's Hist Frag. p 9 to 11, 79 to 81.

² Ibid p 133, 134. Wilks says he died in 1680, (ubi supra, p 91)

BOOK III or Afghans who infested the northern provinces
CHAP. 4 and another, which the Emperor himself provoked,

 1652 with the rajpoots of Ajmere and Malwa

The Governor of Peshawir, to punish an incursion of the Patans, had, in 1673, pursued them to their mountains, where he allowed himself to be entangled in the defiles, and was cut off with his whole army. A Patan, who had served in the armies of Sultan Sujah and bore a strong resemblance to his person, gave birth to a report, that the Sultan had made his escape from Arracan. The Patans proclaimed him King of India and all the tribes of that people were summoned to join their forces to place him upon his throne. They were able it is said, had they united to bring into the field 150,000 men and Aurungzebe was roused by the magnitude of the danger. He took the field in person and crossed the Indus, about the close of the year 1674. The war lasted for about fifteen months during which the Patans were driven from the more accessible country and Aurungzebo was too cautious to penetrate among the mountains. A chain of forts was established to restrain them and the governor whom he left at Peshawir having exerted himself to gain the confidence of the Patan chiefs, drew them to an entertainment at that place and murdered them along with their attendants. Though Aurungzebe disowned the nation, he obtained not the credit of being averse to it¹.

It is probable that Aurungzebe, from political motives projected the reduction of the rajpoot states viewing with jealousy the existence of so great an independent power, (able, it is said to bring 200,000 men into the field) into the heart of his dominions. He put on however the mask of religion, and began the

¹ *Orme's Hist. Eng.* p. 63-72

execution of a project, or pretended project, for the ^{BOOK III.}
 forcible conversion of the Hindus to the religion of ^{CHAP. 4.}
 the faithful Jesswunt Sing, the Maharajah, or
 Great Rajah, as he was called, having died, near
 Cabul in 1681, his children, on their return to their
 native country, were ordered to be conducted to
 court; where he insisted on their being rendered Ma-
 homedans. Their rajpoot attendants contrived their
 escape, and fled with them to their own country.
 The Emperor revenged the disobedience by a war;
 which he conducted in person. His numerous forces
 drove the rajpoots from the more accessible parts of
 their difficult country, but they held possession of
 their mountains and fastnesses, and the war degene-
 rated into a tedious and ineffectual struggle. Au-
 rungzebe sat down at Ajmere, where he superintend-
 ed, at a less inconvenient distance, the operations in
 Deccan, as well as the war with the rajpoots¹

Sambal, or Sambagee, the eldest son of Sevagee,
 succeeded to his throne, but not without a competi-
 tor, in a younger brother, whose adherents created
 him considerable danger, till the principal among
 them were all put to death. While the war was carried
 on between the Mahratta and the imperial generals in
 Deccan, as it had been for several years, by sudden
 inroads on the one side, and pursuit on the other;
 but with few important advantages on either; Akbar,
 one of the younger sons of Aurungzebe, who was em-
 ployed in the war against the rajpots, turned his
 standards against his father, being offered assistance
 by the enemy whom he was sent to subdue. One
 of Aurungzebe's tried artifices, that of raising jea-
 lousy between associates, enabled him to defeat the

¹ Scott's Operations of Aurungzebe in Deccan, p. 53. Orme, ut supra, p. 100—105, and 119—121

BOOK III first attempt of Akbar, who fled from the country of
CHAP 4 the rajpoets, and took refuge with Sambagee

1687 Both Sambagee and Aurungzebe knew the value of the acquisition. The prince was received with extraordinary honours, by the Mahratta chief, who would not sit in his presence. And Aurungzebe, resolving to extinguish the enemy who had so long troubled his government in the south, arrived with a vast army at Aurungabad, in 1684. After the attack and desecration of some forts, with no important result, the prince Shah Aulum was sent into Concan, to reduce the Mahratta fortresses on the sea coast. He found it impossible to procure provisions the climate disagreed with the Mogul troops and he was obliged to return with only a remnant of his army¹.

In 1687, the Emperor resolved upon the final reduction of the Mahomedan kingdoms of Deccan, Hyderabad or Golconda, and Beejapore which displayed a greater residue of strength and resources, than their reduced condition had led him to expect. From Ahmednuggur, where the grand camp had already arrived, he moved as far as Sholapore, and sent one army towards Hyderabad, another towards Beejapore.

The general, who led the army of the King of Hyderabad, betrayed his trust and passed over to the enemy upon which the king, abandoned the open country, and shut himself up in the fort of Golconda. Hyderabad was taken and plundered. That the Sultan Mauzin however who commanded, might not have the honour, which he was wise enough not to covet, of taking Golconda. Aurungzebe accepted the humble terms which were offered by the King and reserved his destruction till another opportunity.

Beejapore made considerable resistance which was

¹ See at supers p 5—6; Orme Hist Eng p 134—152.

aided by scarcity. After the city had been besieged for some time, the Emperor proceeded to the attack in person. Famine at last compelled the garrison to surrender; and the young King was delivered into the hands of Aurungzebe¹

BOOK III.

CHAP. 4

1690.

He received, about the same time, intelligence of another agreeable event, the departure of Sultan Akbar, from the Mahratta country to Persia. As this lessened greatly, in the eyes of Aurungzebe, the importance of immediate operations against the Maharratas, he turned from Beejapore towards Golconda. Shah Aulum, with his sons, was seized and put in confinement, for remonstrating, it is said, against the treachery aimed at the unfortunate King of Goleonda, who had submitted under pledge of honour to himself. Aurungzebe, in truth, was incurably jealous of his son, because heir to his throne; and was stimulated to ease his mind of a part of its load of terror and distrust. Golconda was invested, and, after a siege of seven months, fell by that treachery, the benefit of which Aurungzebe made it his constant endeavour to procure. He had now the two sovereigns of Deccan in his hands, and the reduction of the outstanding forts was all that remained to complete the extension of the Mogul dominion to the furthest limit of Carnatic².

This important success was immediately followed by an event which the Emperor regarded as peculiarly fortunate. His spies brought intelligence, that Sambagee, at one of his forts in the mountains not far distant, was spending his time in a round of his favour-

¹ Scott, *ut supra*, p. 65—73

² The greatest part of Carnatic had belonged to the rajahs of Beejapoor, in the flourishing state of that empire. After the reduction of that state by the Mahomedan powers of Deccan, it was divided between the states of Golconda and Beejapoor. Aurungzebe's Operations in Deccan, Scott, p. 73, 74, 75 Orme, p. 119—130.

BOOK III. its pleasures, and very imperfectly on his guard. A
CHAR 4 body of troops was dispatched to surprise him, and
 1690— he was in fact, taken prisoner. Sambagee was too
 1700 formidable to be permitted to live, but the Emperor
 polluted his fortune by glutting his eyes with the
 butchery of his enemy who relaxed not his haughty
 ness in the presence of death. The efficacy of Sam-
 bagee's talents, which were not inconsiderable, was
 obstructed by his immoderate passion for women,
 which his father predicted would lead him to his ruin.

The Emperor followed up his advantage with activity, and immediately sent an army into Concan. Its operations were highly successful and Rayree, which Sambagee and his father had made their capital, together with the wives and infant son of that chieftain, fell into the hands of the victor.¹

Rama however the brother of Sambagee escaped from Concan, and crossing by the way of Seringapatam to Carnatic, threw himself into the fort of Gingee, which was a place of great strength and by the obstinacy of its resistance, or the interested delays of the imperial generals, retarded the settlement of Deccan for several years. It gave occupation to a great part of the imperial army from the year 1692 to the year 1700 and during that period kept the reduction of Carnatic incomplete.

The Emperor turned his whole attention to the final subjugation of the Mahrattas and penetrated into the country with his principal army. But while he was employed in the reduction of forts the Mahrattas under various chiefs issued from their mountains and spreading over the newly conquered countries of Beejapore and Golconda and even the provinces of Berar Candeoli and Malwa carried great

¹ Scott ut supra p. 740; Orme p. 220— 24 Wilts (p. 218)
 succeeded in 1693.

plunder back with them, and left devastation behind. BOOK III.
The imperial forces marched to oppose them in all ^{CHAP 4.} directions, and easily conquered them in battle when 1700-07 they could bring them to an action. But the Mahattas eluded rencounter, retired to their mountains when pursued, hung upon the rear of their enemy when obliged to return, and resumed their devastations whenever they found the country cleared of the troops which opposed them. The Emperor persevered with great obstinacy in besieging the forts in the accessible parts of the Mahatta country; the greater part of which fell into his hands. But during that time the Mahattas so enriched themselves by plundering the imperial dominions, and so increased in multitude and power, being joined by vast numbers of the Zemindars in the countries which they repeatedly overran, that the advantages of the war were decidedly in their favour, and the administration of Aurungzebe betrayed the infirmities of age. The more powerful Omissis, who maintained numerous troops; and were able to chastise invaders, his jealous policy made him afraid to trust with the command of provinces. He made choice of persons without reputation and power, who abandoning the defence of their provinces, to which they were unequal, were satisfied with enriching themselves by the plunder of the people. Under so defective a government, the Mahattas found the whole country south from the Nerbudda open to their incursions. The Emperor persevered in his attempts to subdue them. In that harassing and unavailing struggle were the years consumed which intervened till his death. This event took place, in the camp at Ahmednugger on the 21st of February 1707, in the forty-eighth year of his reign, and ninety-fourth of his age.¹

¹ For the last seven years of the reign of Aurungzebe, the author of

BOOK III
CHAP 4
1707

At the time when the last illness of Aurungzebe commenced, his eldest son, Mahomed Mauzim, who at an early age had received the title of Shah Aulum, was at Cabul, of which, as a distant province where he would be least dangerous, he was made governor, upon his liberation from the confinement in which he had languished for several years. His two remaining sons, Azim Shah, who was subahdar of Guzerat, and his youngest son Kam Bilksh, who had been recently appointed to the government of Beejapore, were both in the camp. Aurungzebe, who forgot not his caution to the last, hurried them away to their stations, either fearing lest under his weakness they should seize upon his person while yet alive or lest they should fill the camp with bloodshed immediately upon his dissolution. Azim had not yet reached his province, when he received the news of the Emperor's decease. He hurried back to the camp and, no competitor being present received without difficulty the obedience of the army.

As it was not, however expected that Shah Aulum would quietly resign his throne and his life, Azim began his march towards the northern provinces. On the news of the Emperor's illness Shah Aulum had dispatched his commands to his two sons Moiz ad din the eldest governor of Multan, and Azim Ooshain the second, governor of Bengal to advance with their forces towards Agra. Azim Ooshain had used so much diligence that he was enabled to anticipate the arrival of Azim Shah, and got possession of Agra with its treasures. As the two

Aurungzebe operations in Deccan by Scott (p 73-123) is our principal authority. The set of Aurungzebe is stated on the authority of Golam Hussain Khan (See Month recd 1, 2). Mr Scott's author mentions not the set. Both writers miscalculate the length of the reign (which began in August 1658 and ended in February 1707); the one calling it more than sixty, the other more than fifty-one years.

armies were approaching one another in the neighbourhood of Agra, Shah Aulum addressed a letter to his brother, offering to divide the kingdom. The presumptuous prince rejected the proposal; and the armies came to action; when Azim Shah lost the battle, and he and his two eldest sons their lives. He had committed many important errors; among others offended the generalissimo, the famous Zulfeccar Khan, the favourite general of Aurungzebe, and son of Assud Khan, his vizir. He rejected the advice of this commander at the commencement of the battle, and Zulfeccar with his forces withdrew from the field.¹

BOOK III.
CHAP. 4.

1707.

Shah Aulum, who now assumed the title of Bahadur Shah, was chiefly indebted to the prudence and wisdom of Monâim Khan, his minister of finance, for his victory and throne. He rewarded him with the office of vizir; but Assud Khan, the late vizir, and Zulfeccar Khan his son, were received with extraordinary favour. the former being created vakeel muttulluck,² the latter meer bukshi;³ and governor of all Deccan, with the title of Ameer ul Omrah

Another contest, however, still remained. The throne was promised to Kâm Buksh by his own vanity, and by his astrologers; and though his brother, even when near him with an irresistible army, invited him to enjoy in peace his kingdom of Beejapore, to which he offered to add that of Golconda, the infatuated prince was resolved upon his destruction. It had been the object of his father to render

¹ The reign of Shah Aulum is related by two Persian noblemen, both cotemporary with the events, Eradut Khan, (Mem p 11—64,) and Golâm Hussein Khan, Seer Mutakhareen, p 1—23

² This was the highest office in an Indian government, and seldom bestowed, unless on some great emergency Scott, Memoirs of Eradut Khan, p 46

³ Chief paymaster, an office of great trust and dignity. Ibid.

BOOK III. him, by his power in Beejapore, safe from the jealousy of any of his brothers who might ascend the imperial throne. For this purpose, he had placed in his service the Turanee Moguls, or that part of the army which consisted of the Mogul adventurers, newly arrived from Tartary, and distinguished from those who had been bred in Hindustan. The chief of these Moguls was Ghazee ad dien Khan, a man of great years and experience who had acquired high reputation and influence in Deccan during the wars of Aurungzebe. The light, inconsiderate rash, and inconstant character of Kâm Buksh would have discovered to a less discerning mind than that of Ghazee the speedy ruin of that prince's hopes he therefore listened to the friendly proposals of the Emperor and was appointed Subahdar of Guzerat, while his son Cheen Koolich Khan a man of great celebrity in the subsequent history of India, was favourably received at court. Kâm Buksh was gradually deserted by almost all his followers but rushed desperately into battle near Hyderabad with not more attendants than a few hundred. He was taken prisoner but not till he received a mortal wound, of which he died the same evening.

The Emperor seemed afraid of becoming like his father, entangled in the labyrinth of Deccanee affairs and leaving to his officers whatever remained for the settling of those newly conquered regions, he began his march towards the capital, though in the middle of the rains. Zulseccar Khan the subahdar of Deccan left Daood Khan Punnee a native of Deccan, his deputy and followed his master, still further to push his ambitious designs.

The Emperor was not satisfied with the Rypoot prince, whose disobedience had been provoked by the religious and mischievous war kindled against

them at the end of the reign of Aurungzebe. Ajeet BOOK III.
 Sing, the successor of Jesswunt Sing, Raja of Odeypore ; and Jeysing, the successor of the Rajah, who had rendered himself famous in the wars of Arungzebe, had formed an alliance, cemented by marriage ; and without professing independence of the Mogul power, endeavoured to yield a very limited obedience. Some unavailing measures were taken to reduce them to more perfect subjection. But a new enemy, whose operations began to be serious, and even formidable, rendered it adviseable to accept for the present the nominal obedience of the Rajpoots.

CHAP 4.

1709.

The Sikhs, now ravaging the province of Lahore and the northern part of the province of Delhi, committing outrages on the persons of the Moslem, inflamed both the religious and political indignation of the Emperor and his Omrahs. This people, of whom the history is curious, were advancing rapidly to that importance, which renders them at present one of the principal powers in Hundustan. Their origin is to be traced back to the time of the Emperor Baber, when a celebrated Dvivesh, being captivated with the beauty of the son of a grain merchant of the Cshatrya caste, by name Nannuk, brought him to reside in his house, and instructed him in the sublime doctrines and duties of Islamism. Nannuk aspired beyond the merit of a learner. From theological writings which he perused, he selected, as he went on, such doctrines, expressions, sentiments, as captivated his fancy. At length his selections approached to the size of a book ; and being written (it is said with elegance) in the Punjabee dialect, or language of the country, were read by various persons, and admired. The fame of Nannuk's book was diffused. He gave it a name, *Kirrunt* ;¹ and, by degrees, the votaries

¹ Sir John Malcolm writes it Grant'h Sketch of the Sikhs, p 25.

BOOK III of *Kirrun* became a sect. They distinguished
CHAP. 4 themselves by a peculiar garb and manners which

 1709 resembled those of the Moslem fakirs. They united so as to live by themselves apart from the other inhabitants and formed villages or communities, called *Sangats* in which some one, as head of the community always presided over the rest. Nannuk was followed by nine successors in the office of chief, or patriarch of the whole sect during whose time the Seiks led peaceable and inoffensive lives. Teeg Bahadur, the tenth in order was perpetually followed by a large multitude of the enthusiasts of the sect and united himself with a Mussulman fakir who had a number of followers approaching that of his own. To subsist so numerous a body of idle religionists, the neighbouring districts were laid under contribution and the saints, having tasted the sweets of a life of plunder and idleness, pushed their depredations, and became the scourge of the provinces. Aurungzebe, who was then upon the throne commanded the governor of Lahore to seize the two leaders of the banditti to banish the Mussulman beyond the Indus and to conduct the Hindu to the fort of Guahor where he was put to death. The loss of their patriarch was far from sufficient to extinguish the religious flame of the Seiks. A son of Teeg Bahadur whose family name was Govind was raised to the vacant supremacy and was distinguished by the name of Georoo Govind Cooroo being the title bestowed by a Hindu on his religious instructor. The fate of his father taught him audacity he instructed his followers hitherto unarmed to provide themselves with weapons and horses divided them into troops placed them under the command of those of his friends in whose conduct and fidelity he confided and plundered

the country by force of arms. He was not, however, able to withstand the troops of the province, which were collected to oppose him; his two sons were taken prisoners, and he himself fled among the Afghauns. After a time he came back, disguised as an Afghaun devotee; but falling into mental derangement, was succeeded by Banda, one of his followers, who assumed the name of Gooroo Govind, and resolved to take vengeance on the Moslems for the slaughter of the father and sons of his predecessor. To the robbery and plunder which had become the business of the Seiks, -he added cruelty and murder. The Moslem historians of these events are filled with horror as well as indignation at the cruelties which he exercised upon the faithful (to them alone, it seems, did they extend) and describe as one of the most sanguinary of monsters the man whose actions, had infidels been the sufferers, and a Musselman the actor, they might not, perhaps, have thought unworthy of applause. It was this Banda whose enmities Shah Aulum hurried from Deccan to interrupt and chastise. The rebels (so they were now denominated) deserted Sihind upon the approach of the Emperor, and retired to Daber, a place of strength, at the entrance of the mountains, and the principal residence of the Gooroo. When Daber was reduced to the last extremity, Banda, with his principal followers, retired to the mountains during the night. The presence of the Emperor suspended, but did not extinguish, the depredations of the Seiks¹

¹ Golâm Hussein, (*Seer Mutakhareen*, 1 87—98) who gives a pretty detailed account of the origin of the Seiks, and Scott, (*Hist of Auringzebe's Successors*, p 142) who gives an abridged one, agree pretty exactly in the facts Eradut Khan (*Mem* p 61) describes the reduction of Daber. Some general remarks are found in a paper of Mr Wilkins, in the first vol of the *Asiatic Researches*. The more detailed account of Sir John Malcolm, (*Sketch of the Sikhs*, p. 1—85,) taken

BOOK III

CHAP 4

1712

Shah Aulum had reigned five years, counting from the death of Aurungzebe, with the praise of great humanity having spilt the blood of no rival but to the field and treating the sons of his rebel brothers like his own when he was seized with a violent illness and expired suddenly in his camp, near Lahore, in the year 1712.

The four sons of Shah Aulum, each with his army and retainers, were in the camp Moiz ad dieo Khan, the eldest Azeem Ooshauan the second the favourite of his father Russel Ooshauan the third and Kojesteh Akter, the youngest. Of all the Omrahs, the vizir Monaim Khan being dead Zulseccar Khan was by far the most powerful and doubted not to place in the musnud only of the princes whose cause he should espouse. Azeem Oashauan who had in the camp a large treasure of his own and from his situation near his father was enabled to possess himself of all the imperial treasure and effects, assumed the sceptre without hesitation. Zulseccar Khan sent to him a confidential messenger, to ask if, in that emergency he could render him any service and receiving a careless and disdainful answer took his resolution. He passed to the camp of Moiz ad Dien and formed or confirmed a union of the three brothers who agreed to oppose Azeem Ooshauan, and afterwards to divide the empire. Azeem Ooshauan lost the favourable opportunity of attacking his brothers. He allowed the time to pass till they made their preparations and till his own army, becoming uneasy and dispirited, began to disperse. When the inevitable hour arrived he was conquered without much difficulty, and dis-

from Seik author does differs widely in the history of Nonnuk; but though the inaccurate P. Evans are not much to be trusted the sibling S. is making every thing miraculous in the origin of their sect are null & void.

peared in the battle ; his wounded elephant, it is supposed, rushed with him down the precipice into the river, where both sunk to appear no more.

1712.

BOOK III.

CHAP 4

To the surviving princes it remained to settle the partition on which they had agreed, but Zulfeccar Khan had other designs. Whether from selfish motives, or a patriotic dread of the consequences of division; whether because that prince was the weakest, and might be governed, or the oldest, and had the better title, the Ameer ul Omrah resolved to make Moiz ad Dien sole Emperor, and to defeat the expectations of the other two. By various artifices, creating difficulties and delay, he contrived to secure the greater part of the treasure to Moiz ad Dien. This roused the jealousy of Kojesteh Akter, and he prepared for action; but the night before the projected battle a fire broke out in his camp, and he lost the greater part of his ammunition. He and his son fought with gallantry, but his soldiers deserted him during the engagement, and gave an easy victory to his more fortunate brother. Russah Ooshaun stood aloof during this action; still confiding in the friendship of Zulfeccar Khan, and reserving himself to fall upon the victor. While he waited with impatience for the morning, having been dissuaded from attacking the successful army the same night, intelligence of his design was carried to the Ameer ul Omrah, who made preparations to receive him. The victory was not a moment doubtful, for the army of the prince almost immediately dispersed, and he was slain, fighting bravely amid a few attendants.¹

¹ Eradut Khan, (Memoirs, p 65—67,) and Golam Hussein Khan, (Seer Mutakhareen, 1 23—36,) agree in the general points of this struggle for the crown, the former describing it like an eye-witness, but not a very curious one, the other from report merely, but not without diligence and criticism.

BOOK III. Moiz ad Dien was proclaimed Emperor with the title of *Jehandar Shah*. He possessed not abilities to redeem the weaknesses by which he exposed himself to the disapprobation of his people and his government and person fell into contempt. He was governed by a concubine, who had belonged to the degraded and impure profession of public dancers, and shed infamy upon the man with whom she was joined. The favours of the crown were showered upon the mean relations and ancient companions of Lall Koor (such was the name of the mistress) who did not always enjoy them with moderation. The Emperor, who loved the jollity of debauch exposed himself about the city in company with Lall Koor and her favourites, in situations where dignity was apt to be lost. The nobles were offended because a new set of favourites intercepted the rays of imperial favour and the people were disgusted at the sight of vices in their sovereign, which shed degradation on the meanest of themselves.

Jehandar Shah was, from these causes, ill prepared to meet the storm which shortly after he was summoned to face. When Azim Ooshaun marched from Bengal to assist his father in the struggle for the crown he left behind him his son Feroksere. Upon the defeat of Azim Ooshaun and the elevation of *Jehandar Shah* it became necessary for Feroksere to think either of flight or of resistance. There were two brothers Abdoola Khan and Ilusun Khan of the high birth of Syeds, or descendants of the prophet who had distinguished themselves in the service of Azim Shah and having afterwards attached themselves to Azim Ooshaun were by him appointed the one to the government of Allahabad the other, to that of Bahar. Feroksere succeeded in gaining the support of these brothers whose talents were power-

ful, and their reputation high. The counsels of Je- BOOK III
handar were divided. The powers and services of C H A P 4.
Zulfeccar Khan were eclipsed by the favour of Ko- 1713.
kultash Khan, the foster brother of the Emperor. The talents of Kokultash were unequal to the conduct of any important affair. The abilities of Zulfeccar were restrained, and his ardour cooled, by the success with which Kokultash thwarted his designs. Neither wished to take the command of the army, which, compelling him to quit the Emperor, left the imperial power in the hands of his rival. Time was consumed during these intrigues. In the end, Aiz ad Dien, the eldest son of the Emperor, and with him, for his guide, a relation of the foster brother, a man without talents or experience, proceeded to the reduction of Feroksere. The two armies met at Cudjwa, a town in the district of Corah, where Aurungzebe and Sujah had formerly engaged. But the conductor of Aiz ad Dien fled with him during the night which was expected to precede the battle, upon which the army either dispersed or joined Feroksere. By an advice of Syed Abdoolla, for which it is difficult to account, Feroksere halted for several days, instead of rapidly improving his advantage. Jehandar Shah had now to put life and empire upon the fate of a battle. All that could be assembled of the imperial forces marched towards Agra, with the Emperor himself at their head. Feroksere also arrived on the opposite side of the river, and the two armies faced one another for several days. At last Ferokseie unexpectedly crossed the river in the night; and battle was joined the following day. The line of the imperial army was soon broken, and confusion ensued. Zulfeccar Khan, indeed, fought with a gallantry not unworthy of his former renown, and kept the field when he and his followers remained alone. Not despairing to rally

BOOK III the army, and renew the action on the following day,
Cap 4 he dispatched messengers in all directions, but in
 1713 vain to search for the Emperor during the night
 That unhappy prince had taken the road in disguise
 toward Delhi, of which Assud Khan, the father of
 Zulfeccar was governor After intelligence of his
 arrival, the friends of the late Azim Ooshaun sur-
 rounded his palace, and demanded the custody of his
 person To quiet their clamours, or to lay a foundation
 of merit with the future sovereign, Assud Khan
 placed him in confinement and wrote to Ferokser
 that he waited for his commands to dispose of the
 prisoner So gracious an answer was received, as
 dissipated the fears of Assud Khan, and enabled him
 to prevail upon his son, who had arrived at Delhi, to
 trust himself in the hands of Ferokser The cred-
 ibility of Zulfeccar deceived him for he might have
 escaped to his government of Deccan, where his talents
 would have enabled him to set the imperial power at
 defiance He was strangled by order of Ferokser,
 and his dead body was exposed about the streets of
 Delhi, at the same time with that of his master Je-
 handar Shah¹

Ferokser began his reign in the year 1713, with
 the usual performances of an Oriental despot that is,
 the murder of all who were the objects of his appre-
 hension After this the two Syeds, to whom he
 owed both his life and his throne, were elevated
 Hussun to the post of Bukshi, or paymaster of the
 forces, with the title of Ameer ul Omrah and Ab-
 doolla to that of Vizir, with the title of Koottub al

¹ The Memoirs of Eradut Khan finish with the reign of Jehandar Shah He describes the scenes with the knowledge of an eye-witness but with little regard to Jehandar Shah or Zulfeccar the victims of the severity or cruelty of the prince under whom he wrote and whom it was as unsafe to offend. Colam Houssain is more candid and more detailed. See Mutakheen i 42-63

Mulk, or axis of the state. Cheen Koolich Khan, BOOK III.
the son of Gazee ad Dien Khan, who was chief of CHAP 4.
the Tooranee Moguls in the Deccan at the end of 1713.
the reign of Aurungzebe, was known to have lived on adverse terms with Zulfeccar Khan; and by this circumstance, as well as by the weight which was attached to his reputation for talents, and his connexion with the Tooranee lords, was recommended to the attention of the new government. He was appointed to the regency or subahdarry of Deccan, and decorated with the title of Nizam ul Mulk, or composer of the state; a common title, which he rendered remarkable, in the modern history of India, by transmitting it to his posterity, and along with it a kingdom, in that very region which he was now sent, and but for a little time, to superintend.

Feroksere was a weak prince, governed by favourites. The two Syeds had laid such obligations upon their sovereign, and possessed such power, chiefly from the inconsiderate cruelty of Feroksere, who had killed Zulfeccar and others by whom they might have been restrained, that they could brook neither rival nor partner in disposing of the state. Their chains soon became heavy on Feroksere. Aware of his impatience, they made such efforts to render themselves secure against the effects of his malice, as embroiled the state from the very commencement of his reign.

The first of the contrivances of Emir Jumla (this was the name of the favourite, a man who had formerly been cauzy at Dacca,) was to separate the brothers, under the pretence of honourable employment. The Rajah Ajeet Sing, whom we have already mentioned as the successor of Jesswunt Sing, in that district or division of Rajpootana which was known by the name of Marwar or Rhatore, and of which Chitore and Odeypore had been successively the capi-

BOOK III Cmr 4 **1718** tals, had stood out against the operations of Aurungzebe, and remained in a state little short of independence during the reigns of Shah Aulum and Jehandar Shah. Hussan the Ameer al Omrah, was required to undertake the reduction of the rebellious Hindu. He marched with so great a force that the Rajah deemed it better to yield than contend and though he received private encouragements from the court, where he was assured that opposition would be gratefully considered, he concluded an agreement with Hussun impatient to return to the capital, where his brother's letters assured him, that designs were ripening for their common destruction.

Though Abdoola, the Vizir had talents and other eminent qualities he was so addicted to women and other pleasures, that he neglected business and let the affairs of his high office devolve into subordinate hands, whose mismanagement shed discredit and unpopularity on himself. His enemies therefore enjoyed advantages, which in the absence of his brother they were eager to improve. Upon the return of Hussun from Marwar, he demanded the regency of Deccan, with a view to govern it by deputy and remain at court, and he received the appointment, in expectation of his being called to that distant province by the duties of his trust. When it was found last, that he had no intention to depart for Deccan, the misunderstanding between the court and the brothers became public and undisguised. They forbore at tendance upon the Emperor assembled their followers and fortified themselves in their palaces while the weak and timid Ferokhsere who desired without daring to attempt their destruction, formed and abandoned twenty resolutions in a day. After a period of anxiety and alarm a reconciliation was effected by mediation of the empress-mother who

was favourable to the Syeds, and by whom, it is said, BOOK III
 that intelligence was sometimes conveyed to them CHAP 4
 of the plots by which their lives were essayed.
 The agreement was, that Meer Jumla, being appointed
 to the government of Bahar, should depart for that
 province at the same time that the Ameer al Omrah
 should proceed to Deccan¹.

1719.

Hussun told the Emperor, that if mischief were aimed at his brother, he would in twenty days be in the capital from Deccan. The first danger, however, regarded himself Daood Khan Punnee, the Afghaun, who had been left deputy by Zulfeccar, and obtained the province of Guzerat, upon the appointment of Nizam al Mulk to the regency of Deccan, was ordered to Boorahanpore, ostensibly to wait upon the Subahdar of Deccan, and receive his commands; but with secret instructions to assail the Syed and cut him off. Great expectations were entertained of the Afghaun, who, being a man of prodigious bodily strength, great courage, and not devoid of conduct, had risen to the highest repute as a warrior. It is not unworthy of remark, that he had associated with himself a Mahratta chief, named Neemajee Sindia, who had been taken into the imperial service by Shah Aulum, honoured with a high rank, and gifted with several jagheers in the vicinity of Aurungabad. Hussun had a severe conflict to sustain, and had not a

¹ Before the departure of Hussun, the marriage of the Emperor was celebrated with the daughter of Maharaja Ajeet Sing, stipulated for, in the conditions lately imposed by Hussun upon the Rajah. She had been conveyed from her father's palace to that of Hussun, as her adopted father, who graced her nuptials with a magnificence which surpassed all that hitherto had been seen in Hindustan.

An indisposition of the Emperor, rather inconvenient at the time of a marriage, cured by a medical gentleman of the name of Hamilton, is said to have been the cause of obtaining the first phirmaun of free trade, for the East India Company. Scott's Successors of Aurungzebe, p 139

BOOK III matchlock ball struck Daood, at the moment when
CHAP 4 the advantage seemed hastening to his side, the day
1719 nught have been fatal to the fortune of the brothers. When the Emperor heard of the failure of his project, he could not, even in the presence of Abdoola, suppress his chagrin and observed that Dnood was a brave man unworthily used. Abdoola replied, that if his brother had fallen, the victim of perfidy, the imperial mind would have experienced more agreeable sensations.

About this time, Baada, the patriarch and captain of the Seiks, fell into the hands of his enemies. He had soon collected his followers, after they were dispersed by Shah Aulum and spread more widely his depredations and authority in the contiguous provinces. The Subahdar of Lahore had been sent against him, shortly after the accession of Ferokzere but was defeated with great slaughter. The Fogedar, or military and judicial chief of Sirhind, was next commanded to take the field but was assassinated in his tent by a Seik, specially commissioned for that purpose. The governor of Cashmire was then removed to the government of Lahore, and appointed to net against the heretics or infidels, with a great army. After many severe engagements, Baada was driven to seek refuge in a fort where famine at last compelled him to surrender. Great cruelty was exercised upon his followers and he himself was carried to the capital, where he was ignominiously exposed, and afterwards put to death by torture.

It would be useless and disgusting to describe the scenes to which the hatred of the Emperor and the jealousy of the Vizir gave birth in the capital. When the Ameer al Omrah arrived in Deccan, he found the power of the Mahrattas arrived at a height which was not only oppressive to the provinces but formid-

able to the imperial throne. Sahoo Rajah, or Saho- BOOK III.
gee the son of Sambagee, had succeeded to the autho- CHAP. 4.
rity of his father and grandfather, as head of the
Mahrattas, and had, during the distractions in the
Mogul empire, experienced little resistance in extend-
ing the sphere of his domination and exactions To-
wards the close of the reign of Aurungzebe, the widow
of Rama, the brother of Sambagee, who during the
minority of Sahogee enjoyed a temporary authority,
had offered to put a stop to all the predatory incur-
sions of the Mahrattas under which the imperial
provinces in Deccan so cruelly suffered, on condition
of receiving a tenth part, which they call Deesmuk-
kee, of the revenues of the six provinces which com-
pose the viceroyalty of Deccan. The pride of Au-
rungzebe revolted at the humiliating condition, and
the offer was rejected with scorn. Daood Khan
Punnee, however, who governed the country, as de-
puty of Zulfeccar, during the reigns of Shah Aulum
and Jehandar, and who cultivated the friendship
rather than the enmity of the Mahrattas, agreed to
purchase deliverance from their incursions by the
payment of even the chout, or fourth part of the reve-
nues of the Deccanee provinces, reserving only such
districts as were held in jagheer by any princes of the
blood royal, and excluding the Mahrattas from the
collection, which was to be performed by his own
officers alone. Upon the arrival of Nizam al Mulk as
Viceroy of Deccan, the chout gave rise to dispute and
hostilities, in which the Viceroy gained a battle, and
might have further checked the pretensions of the
freebooters, had he not been recalled, after enjoying
the government one year and some months. The
Ameer al Omrah sent a force to dislodge a Mahratta
chief who had established a chain of mud forts along
the road from Surat to Boorahanpore; and by means

1719.

BOOK III of them plundered or levied a tax upon the merchants
CHAPTER 4 who trafficked between the two cities. The com-
 1719 mander allowed himself to be drawn by the wily
 Mahratta into a place of difficulty where he and the
 greater part of his soldiers lost their lives. A still
 stronger force was sent to dislodge the plunderer
 who declined an action, and was followed by the im-
 perial general as far as Sattara, the residence of Sa-
 hogee. But before Sattara was besieged, the Ameer
 al Omrah, understanding that danger was increasing
 at Delhi, and that even Sahogee had received encou-
 ragement from the Emperor to effect his destruction,
 resolved, on any terms to free himself from the diffi-
 culties and embarrassment of a Mahratta war. He
 not only granted the chout, but he added to it the
 deesmukkee nay, admitted the Mahratta agents,
 with a respectable force at Aurungabad, to perform
 the collection of their own portion of the taxes. The
 provinces were thus freed from the ravages of mili-
 tary incursion but the people were oppressed by
 three sets of exactors, one for the imperial revenue,
 one for the chout, another for the deesmukkee.

Meanwhile a new favourite had risen at court, recommended to the Emperor by a double tie, a fel-
 lowship in disreputable pleasures, and promises to cut
 off the Sheads without the danger of a contest. By
 his advice the most powerful chiefs in the empire
 were invited to court Nizam al Mulk, from his
 government of Morudabad Sirbullah Khan, from
 that of Patna and the Rajpoot princes Jeysing of
 Ambere or Jagenagur and the father in law of the
 Emperor Ajeeb Sing of Rhatore. Had these chiefs
 perceived a prospect of sharing among themselves the
 grand posts of the empire they would have under-
 taken the destruction of the Sheads but they found
 the despicable Feroksere so infatuated with his un-

worthy favourite, that he alone was destined to be the organ of power. Ajeet Sing, perceiving the miserable state of the imperial councils, lost no time in uniting himself with the Vizir.

BOOK III.

CHAP 4.

1719.

The increasing violence of the councils pursued for the destruction of the Syeds, and the union, which the removal of the favourite would suffice to form against them, of so many powerful chiefs, induced Abdoola to summon his brother from Deccan, and to meditate a decisive step. No sooner did the Emperor hear that Hussun was in motion, than, struck with apprehension, he solicited reconciliation with the Vizir. They exchanged turbans, and vows of fidelity, which were equally sincere on both sides. A messenger of rank was dispatched towards Hussun, to declare the reinstatement of his family in the plenitude of imperial favour; while Hussun, giving up to the Mahrattas such forts as he could not garrison, proceeded to the capital with an army, of which ten thousand were Mahrattas; attended by a youth, whom he received from Sahogee as a son of Sultan Akbar, and treated with all the respect due to a grandson of Aulumgir, and a competitor for the imperial throne. In the mean time the Vizir had found little difficulty in detaching from the hopeless cause of the Emperor, Nizam al Mulk, and the other chiefs of the intended conspiracy. Jeysing alone adhered to Ferokseie, advising him to take the field in person, and, by the weight of the imperial name, bear down the cause of rebels and traitors. The pride and the resentments of Ferokseie made him incline to violent measures during one moment; his fears and pusillanimity made him incline to submissive measures the next. After an interval, during which these passions violently alternated in his breast, he threw himself upon the mercy of the Syeds, and submitted to all their demands.

BOOK III. It is not certain that they meant to depose him ^{bat}
CHAP 4 during these violent proceedings, tumults arose in the
 1720 city Feroksere shut himself up in the women's apart-
 ments, and refused to come out his friends and ser-
 vants took arms the commotions became alarming,
 and a moment might be productive of fatal events
 After repeated entreaties, the Vizir was at last com-
 pelled to violate the sanctity of the secret apart-
 ments Feroksere was dragged forth, and put in con-
 finement Russeh al Dirjaut, son of Russeh al Kud-
 der, a grandson of Aurungzebe by a daughter of
 Akbar was taken from among the confined priores
 and seated on the throne his accession was announced
 by the sound of the nobut, and firing of cannon and,
 in a few hours, the commotions, which seemed ready
 to overwhelm the city gave place to tranquillity and
 order

II

Feroksere was rather more than six years on the
 throne His successor was labouring under a con-
 sumption and died in five months after his exaltation
 During this interval, Feroksere suffered a violent
 death, but whether at his own hand, or that of the
 brothers, is variously assumed. Except in the palace
 the offices of which were filled entirely with the crea-
 tures of the Syeds, the different functionaries of the
 state were confirmed in their situations Nizam al
 Mulk who liked not the complexion of the times, de-
 sired leave to retire but he was prevailed upon to
 accept the government of Malwa

Russeh al Dowlah, the younger brother of Russeh
 al Dirjaut, was chosen to supply the vacancy of the
 throne But the Governor of the citadel of Agra had
 under his charge a son of Akbar, the youngest son of
 Aulumgir and, in hopes of being joined by other
 lords inimical to the Syeds, as well as by Jevsing
 who, through influence of the brothers, had been dis-

missed to his own country before the dethronement of BOOK III.
Feroksere, proclaimed the son of Akbar, King. The ^{CHAP 4} Syeds left no time for the disaffected to combine; and ^{1720.} the Governor, finding his undertaking desperate, put an end to his life. The sickly youth, who this time also was placed upon the throne, followed his predecessor in three months. Rooshun Akter, a son of Kojesteh Akter, the youngest son of Shah Aulum, was the Prince who now was taken to fill the dangerous throne.

Mahomed Shah (that was the name which the new sovereign adopted) began his reign in the year 1720. He was in his seventeenth year; had been confined along with his mother, a woman of judgment and prudence, from the beginning of the reign of Jehandar Shah, and reared by her in great silence and obscurity.

The Syeds were now deprived of all grounds of jealousy and resentment towards the throne; for the Empress-mother advised, and the Emperor practised the most perfect submission to their will. But among the great lords of the empire were some, who beheld not their triumphs and power, without envy and hatred. The Governor of Allahabad had been guilty of some marks of disrespect. Shortly after the accession of Mahomed, Hussun marched to chastise him. The Governor died while Hussun was yet upon the march; and his nephew, though he stood upon the defensive, offered to lay down his arms, provided Rajah Ruttun Chund, the famous Duan of the Vizir, were sent to negotiate the terms of his submission. The difficulty of besieging Allahabad, strongly defended by the Jumna and the Ganges, which meet under its walls, allayed in the bosom of Hussun, the thirst of revenge. He listened to the proposition of the nephew, and gave him the govern-

BOOK III. ment of Oude, in exchange for that which his uncle
Cap. 4 had enjoyed.

1720

Mahomed Ameed Khan, one of the Tooranee Omrah, remaining at court, began to excite the suspicions of the Syeds but Nizam al Mulk soon became the principal object of their attention and fears. Upon taking possession of his government of Malwa, he found the province, owing to the late distractions of the empire, overrun with disorder the Zemindars aiming at independence, and the people either become robbers themselves or suffering from bands of robbers, who plundered the country with impunity The vigorous operations demanded for the suppression of these enormities, justified the Nizam in raising and maintaining troops in providing his garrisons, in adopting all the measures, in short, which were best calculated to strengthen his position The Syeds were not slow in discerning that these preparations looked beyond the defence of a province Policy required the removal of the Nizam. The most respectful intimations were conveyed to him, that as Malwa lay half way between Deccan and the capital it was pointed out as peculiarly convenient to form the place of residence for the Ameer al Omrah who, from that station could both superintend his viceroyalty in Deccan, and watch the operations of the court and four Subahs were pointed out to Nizam al Mulk Multan, Can desh Agra, and Allahabad of which he was invited to make his election in exchange Policy might counsel the non-compliance of the Nizam but pride and vanity counselled an insolent reply, which precipitated hostilities on both sides The brothers sent an army against Malwa. The Nizam resolved to take possession of Deccan He crossed the Ner budda got, through bribery, possession of the strong

fortress of Asere, and the city of Boorahanpore ; was joined by Eiwuz Khan, Subahdar of Berar, his relation ; by a Mahratta chief, who had quarrelled with Sahogee ; and, by a variety of Zemindars. He encountered and defeated the army which the brothers had sent to oppose him ; conquered, and slew in battle the Governor of Auiungabad, who marched out to meet him ; and remained without a rival in Deccan. The Governor of Dowlatabad held out ; but the Governor of Hyderabad joined him with 7000 horse. In addition to all these fortunate events, he was encouraged by messages from the court, from Mahomed Ameen Khan, and from the Emperor himself, that his opposition to the Syeds should meet with their support.

BOOK III.
CHAP 4

1720.

The brothers wavered, and permitted time to be lost. Ruttun Chund recommended, what was probably wise, to gain Nizam al Mulk by resigning to him Deccan ; and, with vigilance, to guard the rest of the empire. Pride rejected this proposal. It was at last determined, that Hussun, accompanied by the Emperor, should proceed with a great army to Deccan, while Abdoola should remain to guard the capital. The troops were assembled ; the march began ; and had continued during four or five days, when Mahomed Ameen Khan conceived his plan to be ripe for execution. He had associated with himself Saadut Khan, afterwards Nabob of Oude, progenitor of the now reigning family, and another desperado, named Hyder Khan, in a conspiracy, with the privity of the Emperor, to assassinate the Ameer al Omrah. The lot fell upon Hyder to strike the blow. Hussun, who received a mortal stab, had strength to cry, “ Kill the Emperor ! ” but the conspirators had taken measures for his protection ; and, though the nephew of the deceased armed his fol-

BOOK III lowers, and endeavoured to penetrate to the Emperor,
CHAP 4 who was overpowered and slain, while his tents were
 1720-32 plundered by the followers of the camp

The dismal news was speedily conveyed to Ahdooln, who was on his march to Delhi. He advanced to that city took one of the remaining princes, and proclaimed him Emperor. Found still the means to assemble a large army and marched out to oppose Mahomed. A great battle was fought at Shahpore but the Vizir was vanquished and taken prisoner. The Emperor, after little more than a year of tutorage, entered his capital in great pomp and ceremony, and was hailed, as if it had been his accession to the throne.

The weakness of Mahomed Shah's administration, whose time was devoted to pleasure, and his mind without discernment and force, was soon felt in the provinces. The Rajah, Ajeet Sing, with a view to bind him to the cause of Mahomed, had, through the hands of the Empress-mother, at the time of the accession, received a firman appointing him Governor of Guzerat and Adymere during life. The grant was now revoked and Ajeet Sing rebelled. After some vain demonstrations of resentment, the Emperor was obliged to submit to concessions and indulgence.

The Afghans about Peshawar rose in arms and, after an obstinate engagement, deserted and took prisoner the son of the Governor of the province.

These, and other disorders, were expected to be redressed upon the arrival of Nizam ul Mulk, who was invited from Deccan to receive the office of Vizir. He earnestly exhorted the Emperor to apply his own mind to affairs, and to infuse vigour into government, now relaxed and dissolving through negligence and corruption. But the pleasantries of his gay companions, who turned the person and the counsels of

the old and rigid Vizir into ridicule, were more agreeable to the enervated mind of Mahomed; and the Nizam, in disgust, under pretence of coercing a refractory Governor in Guzerat, withdrew from the capital. Saadut Khan was about the same time appointed Subahdar of Oude.

BOOK III.
CHAP 4.

1732.

The Nizam, having reduced to his obedience the province of Guzerat, and taken possession of Malwa, which was also added to his extensive government, paid another visit to the capital, where he found the temper of administration as negligent and dissolute as before. Despairing, or careless of a remedy, and boding nothing but evil, he only thought of securing himself in his extensive dominions; and, under pretence of a hunting excursion, left the capital without leave, and pursued his march to Deccan. The Emperor, who now both hated and feared him, dispatched a private message to the Governor of Hyderabad to oppose and cut him off, with a promise of all his government of Deccan, as the reward of so meritorious a service. The bribe was too great to be resisted; but the undertaker paid the forfeit of his temerity with his life. The Nizam, however, was deprived of his Vizir, and of his new governments of Malwa and Guzerat. To be revenged he encouraged his deputy in Guzerat to resist the imperial commands; and the Mahratta chiefs Peelajee and Coantojee to invade the provinces. Some inadequate and unavailing efforts were made to oppose the progress of these Mahratta chiefs; who were afterwards joined, still at the instigation, it is said, of the old Nizam, by Bajerraow, the general of Sahogee. The struggle was upheld, with more or less of vigour, by the imperial deputies, till about the year 1732; when the provinces of Guzerat and Malwa might be regarded as completely reduced

BOOK III. under Mahratta dominion Never contented with
CHAP 4 present acquisitions, the Mahrattas made endless encroachments and by degrees, seized upon several districts in the Subahs of Agra and Allahabad, plundering even to the vicinity of Agra. When opposed by an army, they retreated scoured the country cut off supplies and made flying attacks. When the opposing army was obliged to retrace its steps, they immediately reseized the country and still more extensively diffused their depredations

During the calamities of the empire, Saadut Khan alone among the different Omrah and governors, exhibited any public spirit, or any manliness and vigour. Though his province, placed beyond the Ganga was little exposed to the devastations of the destructive Mahrattas, he marched out, in 1735 to chastise a body of them, who were plundering to the very walls of Agra overtook them by forced marches, brought on a battle, and gave them a signal overthrow. The wreck of the army joined Bajeernow in the neighbourhood of Guohor. Saadut Khan intended to follow up his blow to pursue the marauders to their own country, and redeem the lost honour of the imperial arms. But the Ameer al Oinra, jealous of the glory sent him orders to halt till he should join him with the troops of the capital. Bajeernow, having time to restore animation to the Mahrattas, and learning the removal of the troops from Delhi, marched with Mahratta speed towards that capital, and communicated the first intelligence of his stratagem by the fires which he lighted up in the suburbs. He was in possession of the outskirts of the city for three days, before the approach of the imperial army made it necessary for him to decamp. He took the road to Malwa and the pusillanimous monarch was ad-

vised by his dissolute courtiers to purchase the promise of peace by paying the chout, or fourth, of his revenues to the Mahattas

BOOK III.
CHAP 4

1735.

A more dreadful enemy was now about to fall upon the misgoverned empire. The Sophis, whom, in the reign of Shah Jehan we left sitting upon the throne of Persia, had sunk into that voluptuousness and neglect of the business of government, which so uniformly accompany the continued possession of power; relax the springs of the existing government; and prepare the way for an usurper. In this state of the country, the range of mountains, placed near the confines of Persia and India, which had already given a race of sovereigns to Hindustan, produced a chief, who with his rude and hardy countrymen, the mountaineers of Afghaunistan, invaded Persia, and pushed his conquests against the feeble Hussun Shah; whose government was, moreover, distracted, by the wretched factions of the black eunuchs, and the white. Though the Afghaun was assassinated, he was succeeded by a nephew, an enterprising youth of eighteen years of age. The provinces near the Caucasus and the Caspian, as well as those near the Indus, revolted. The Afghaun in 1722 laid siege to Ispahan itself, and the wretched Hussun laid his crown at his feet. In the mean time a son of Hussun, whose name was Thamas, escaped from massacre, and was joined by as many people as still adhered to his family or person, in the neighbourhood of Tauris, among others by Nadir, the son of a shepherd of Chorasan, who by the sale of part of his father's flocks, had hired a banditti; with whom he scoured and plundered the country. By his daring courage, and indefatigable activity, he soon distinguished himself among the followers of the fugitive Prince. He took the name of Thamas Koolee Khan, or Khan, the slave of Thamas.

BOOK III. Such a man found it easy in Persia to increase the
CHAP. 4 number of his followers, whom he subsisted and re-
1736 warded by the plunder of the country. In a short
time he was daring enough to measure swords with
the Afghaun himself and prevailed. In 1729 he re-
took Ispahan, pursued the usurper to Afghanistan
itself, vanquished, and took him prisoner. Thamas,
whom he acknowledged as King of Persia, he retained
in confinement, and governing in his name, turned
his arms against the Turks, who had made encroach-
ments on the western provinces of Persia during the
declining vigour of the Sophis.² Having conducted
this war with success, he felt his power sufficient to
pull off the mask. He proclaimed himself King,
by the title of Nadir Shah in the year 1736 and
put out the eyes of the unfortunate Thamas.

The restless and enterprising Afghauns who re-
gretted the loss of Persia, still kept up disturbance
on its eastern frontier and they provoked the proud
and furious Nadir to undertake a war of little less
than extermination. Not satisfied with driving them
from all the accessible parts of their own country he
made his way into Candahar which had for some
generations been detached from the Mogul empire,
and annexed to that of Persia. Cabul which already
contained a great mixture of Afghauns was now
crowded with that people, flying from the cruelties of
the foe. Nadir was not soon tired in the pursuit of
his prey. He had reason to be dissatisfied with the
government of Hindustan to which he had sent re-
peated embassies, received with something more than
neglect. In the general negligence and corruption
which pervaded the whole business of government,
the passes from Persia into Cabul were left unguarded.
The Persian protested that he meant neither hostility
nor disrespect to his brother of Hindustan, and that,

if not molested, he would chastise the accursed Afghauns, and retire. The opposition he experienced was, indeed, so feeble, as hardly to excite the resentment of Nadir; and, after slaughtering the Afghauns in Cabul, he was ready to withdraw; when a circumstance occurred, which kindled his rage. A messenger and his escort, whom he had dispatched from Cabul to the Emperor at Delhi, were murdered at Jellalabad by the inhabitants; and, instead of yielding satisfaction for the injury, the silken courtiers of Mahomed counselled approbation; and ridiculed the supposition of danger from the shepherd and freebooter of Chorasan.

BOOK III
CHAP 4.

1739.

That furious warrior hastened to the offending city, and slaughtered the inhabitants without mercy. From this he pursued his route to Peshawir, and thence to Lahore; at both of which places he experienced but little opposition. He then turned his face directly to the capital, where Mahomed and his counsellors, wrapped in a fatal security, were not prepared to believe that the Persian usurper would dare to march against the Majesty of Hindustan. The Hindustanee army, which had been two months in the field, had only advanced to Carnal, four days march from Delhi, where it was surprised by the appearance of the enemy, while Mahomed and his friends were yet ignorant of his approach. The hardy and experienced valour of Nadir's bands quickly spread confusion among the ill conducted crowds of Mahomed. The Ameer al Omrah was mortally wounded, and died after leaving the field of battle. Saadut Khan fought till he was deserted by his followers, and taken prisoner. Nadir, who had no project upon Hindustan, left the disordered camp the next day without an attack; and readily listened to the peaceful counsels of his prisoner Saadut Khan, who hoped, if now set

BOOK III free, to obtain the vacant office of Ameer ul Omrah
CHAP 4 Mahomed honoured the Shah with a visit in his camp,
1739 and the Shah consented to evacuate Hindustan, upon receipt of two crores of rupees. The insatiable avidity, however, of Nizam al Mulk fatally defeated this happy agreement. He demanded, and was too powerful to be refused, the office of Ameer al Omrah. The disappointed and unprincipled Sandut hastened to inform Nadir, that two crores of rupees were no adequate ransom for the empire of Hindostan that he himself, who was but an individual would yield as great a sum that Nizam al Mulk who alone had power to offer any formidable resistance, ought to be secured and that Nadir might then make the wealth of the capital and empire his own. A new and dazzling prospect was spread before the eyes of the ravager. Mohomed Shah, and Nizam al Mulk were recalled to the Persian camp when Nadir marched to Delhi, the gates of which were opened to receive him. For two days had the Persians been in Delhi and as yet observed the strictest discipline and order. But on the night of the second an unfortunate rumour was spread that Nadir Shah was killed upon which the wretched inhabitants rose in tumult and ran to massacre the Persians and filled the city throughout the night with confusion and bloodshed. With the first light of the morning Nadir issued forth and dispersing bands of soldiers in every direction ordered them to slaughter the inhabitants without regard to age or sex in every street or avenue where the body of a murdered Persian should be found. From sun rise to mid day the sabre raged and by that time not less than 8000 Hindus Moguls, or Afghans, were numbered with the dead. During the massacre and pillage, the city was set on fire in several places. The destroyer at last allowed himself

to be persuaded to stay the ruin; the signal was given, and in an instant, such was the authority of Nadir, every sword was sheathed.

1739.

A few days after the massacre, a nobleman was dispatched by Nadir, to bring from Oude the two crores of rupees, promised by its governor Saadut Khan, who, in the short interval, had died of a cancer in his back. On the same day he commenced his seizure of the imperial treasure and effects; three crores and fifty lacks in specie,¹ a crore and fifty lacks in plate;² fifteen crores in jewels,³ the celebrated peacock throne, valued at a crore,⁴ other valuables to the amount of eleven crores,⁵ besides elephants, horses, and the camp equipage of the Emperor. The bankers, and rich individuals were ordered to give up their wealth, and tortured to make discovery of what they were suspected to have concealed. A heavy contribution was demanded of the city, and exacted with cruel severity; many laid violent hands upon themselves to escape the horrid treatment to which they beheld others exposed. Famine pervaded the city; and pestilential diseases ensued. Seldom has a more dreadful calamity fallen upon any portion of the human race, than that in which the visit of Nadir Shah involved the capital of Hindustan. Yet a native and cotemporary historian informs us, such is the facility with which men accommodate themselves to their lot, "that the inhabitants of Delhi, at least the debauched who were by far the most numerous part, regretted the departure

¹ £ 3,500,000.

² £ 1,500,000

³ £15,000,000

⁴ £ 1,000,000

⁵ £11,000,000

BOOK III. of the Persians and to this day (*says he*), the excesses
CHAP 4 of their soldiery are topics of humour in the looser
 1739 conversation of all ranks, and form the comic parts of
 the drolls or players. The people of Hindustan at
 this time regarded only personal safety and personal
 gratification. Misery was disregarded by those who
 escaped it, and man centred wholly in himself, felt
 not for his kind. This selfishness destructive of
 public and private virtue, was universal in Hindustan
 at the invasion of Nadir Shah nor have the people
 become more virtuous since, consequently not more
 happy nor more independent" ¹

Nadir having ordered, as the terms of peace, that
 all the provinces on the west side of the Indus, Cabul,
 Tatta, and part of Multan, should be detached from
 the dominions of the Mogul, and added to his own,
 restored Mahomed to the exercise of his degraded
 sovereignty and bestowing upon him and his cour-
 tiers some good advice, began on the 14th of April,
 1739 his march from Delhi of which he had been
 in possession for thirty seven days ².

In regulating the offices of state, Mahomed was ob-
 liged to confirm the vizarut, which he intended for

¹ *Aurungzeb's Successors* by Scott, p. 214

² The most valuable of the details respecting the Invasion of Nadir are furnished us by Golam Husein (See *Mutakhareen* i 325—344) Scott as usual gives chiefly an abridgement of the *Seer Mutakhareen*, but here enriched with some particulars from the known historians of Nadir. An interesting account of the march of the Persian army back and its operations in Bucharia, and Karisme to which Nadir imme-
 diately proceeded is given us by an eye-witness Khojeh Abdulkurreem a Cashmerian of distinction who accompanied him from Hindustan and whose narrative has been translated for us by Mr Gladwin. Kho-
 jeh Abdulkurreem differs from Scott in the day of the conqueror's departure from Delhi which he makes the 4th of May. *Memoirs of Khojeh Abdulkurreem* p. 1. A curious letter of Nadir Shah himself giving an account to his son of his march towards Delhi of the battle and of his intention not to seize the crown of Mahomed has been translated by Sir John Malcolm (Asiat. Res. x 119)

other hands, to Kummir ad dien Khan, the relation ^{BOOK III} and partisan of Nizam al Mulk. At the request of ^{CHAP. 4} that domineering chief, the office of Ameer al Omrah was transferred to Ghazee ad dien Khan, his eldest son, while he himself was in haste to depart for Deccan, where Nazir Jung, his second son, whom he had left his deputy, was already aspiring at independence. After several months spent without avail in messsages and negotiations, the father was obliged to draw his sword against the son. A victory, gained in the neighbourhood of Ahmednuggur, restored his government to the Nizam, and made Nazir Jung his prisoner. To compose the provinces subject to his command, which had been governed so irregularly and feebly for many years, and were over-run by innumerable disorders, required both vigour and time. The war which he carried on in Carnatic was the most remarkable of his subsequent transactions. Its result is the only circumstance material to us. Nearly the whole of that great province was reduced to his obedience.¹

Saadut Khan Boorahan al Mulk, the deceased governor of Oude, was succeeded by his son in law, Abul Mansoor Khan Suffder Jung, who subsequently received the dignity of grand master of the household. A new governor was appointed for Guzerat and an effort was made, but without success, to ravage that important province from the Mahrattas.

A refractory chief called the Emperor into the field, in the year 1745. This was Ali Mahomed Khan the founder of the power of the Rohillas, a name of some celebrity in the modern history of Hindustan. The Afghauns, inhabiting the district of Roh, bordering on Cabul, were known by the name of Rohil-

¹ For the circumstances of Nizam ul Mulk's resumption of his government in Deccan, see Seer Mutakhareen, iii 3, 8

BOOK III has.¹ Ali Mahomed himself is said to have been of
Chap 4 Hindu extraction the son of a man of the caste of
1745 cow keepers He was adopted, however and reared by an Afghaun of the Rohilla clan a man of a rank no higher than his own He entered into the army as a common soldier and after a time acquired the command of a small body of Afghaun cavalry, with which he served in the army of the Vizir, governor of Moradabad His conduct gained him distinction he was recommended to promotion by the Vizir received some lands in grant from the Emperor and was appointed to manage certain districts in Moradabad by the Vizir Under the negligent government of Mahomed and the disorders which ensued upon the invasion of Nadir Shah's scope was afforded to the ambition of such a man as Ali Mahomed the Rohilla. He acquired possession of the lands of some neighbouring jagheer holders, under pretence of taking them in lease He increased the number of Afghauns in his pay many of whom the severities of Nadir Shah had driven to look for a home beyond the reach of his destructive sword and to seek employment and protection under Ali Mahomed their countryman The supposition of power produced its usual consequence The remittances from his government were delayed and evaded The Vizir sent a new governor with an army to enforce obedience Him the Rohilla conquered and slew and the Vizir who hated every thing which disturbed his pleasures and ease thought it better to make an accommodation with Ali than contend with him He was confirmed in the government of certain districts and by one acquisition after another, extended the limits of his authority, till they comprehended Mooradabad, Bareilly, Aunlakhi, Sambal

¹ Memoirs of Khojeh Abdolkereem p. 183

Bangur, Budaoon, and Amroah, districts of Kutteer, BOOK III.
a province, henceforward known by the name of Ro- CHAP 4.
hilecund, from the Afghaun clan, to whom, more par- 1747.
ticularly, Ali and his followers were regarded as he
longing. The progress of this adventurer alarmed at
last the Viceroy of Oude, whose representations of
danger prevailed upon the Emperor to take the field
in person. The Rohilla was unable to resist the im-
perial army; but was underhand supported by the
Vizir, in opposition to the Viceroy of Oude. He was
invested in one of his fortresses, but receiving the
promise of the Vizir to make his peace with the Em-
peror, he sent away his treasures to a place of safety,
and surrendered. As a compensation for the ter-
ritory which he had governed, he received the sojldary,
or military and judicial authority of Serhind, a district
in the upper part of the province of Delhi¹.

In the second year after this imperial expedition, happened the invasion of Ahmed Abdallee, a man destined to be the founder of a formidable empire in the contiguous provinces of Persia and Hindustan. He was an Afghaun chief of the tribe of Abdal, inhabiting a district of the mountains of Gaur, near the city of Herat. When yet very young he was taken prisoner by Nadir Shah, and was for some time one of the slaves of the presence; till, attracting the notice of his master, he was raised to the office of Yessawal, or mace-bearer. He was by degrees promoted to a considerable rank in the army, and accompanied Nadir in his invasion of India. Nadir Shah was massacred in his tent, not far from Meshed, on the 8th of June, 1747. Ahmed Abdallee had acquired so

¹ Seer Mutakhareen, (iii 20—26), Memoirs of Khojeh Abdulkur-
reem, (p 183—185) Scott gives a very short and unsatisfactory
abridgement of the passage in the Seer Mutakhareen. Aurungzebe's
Successors, p 218

BOOK III great an ascendancy among the troops, that upon
Chap 4 this event several commanders and their followers
1747 joined his standard and he drew off toward his own country. He fell in with and seized a convoy of treasure, which was proceeding to the camp. This enabled him to engage in his pay a still larger body of his countrymen. He proclaimed himself king of the Afghans and took the title of Doordowtan, or pearl of the age, which being corrupted into Douranee, gave one of their names to himself and his Adallees.² He marched towards Candahar, which submitted to his arms and next proceeded to Cabul. The inhabitants had resisted the proposal of the governor to purchase tranquillity by the payment of a contribution, but they deserted him on the approach of danger and this province also fell into the hands of the Afghaun. The governor of Lahore sent him a proposal offering to betray his trust, and became the servant of Ahmed, on condition of being appointed his Vizir and though he repented of his engagement and came to blows, his troops made a feeble resistance and Lahore was added to the dominions of the conqueror. He now directed his ambitious thoughts to the capital of Hindustan, with the feeble government of which he was not unacquainted. A large army under the Emperor's eldest son, the Vizir, and other distinguished chiefs, advanced as far as the Sutledge to repel him but he passed them artfully, and plundered the rich city of Serhind, where the heavy baggage of the prince was deposited. The imperialists made haste to overtake him and after several days of skirmishing the Vizir was killed with a cannon ball in his tent. The brittle materials of an Indian army were nearly broken asunder by this

² *Memoirs of Khojeh Abdulkarrem*, p. 201.

event; the Rajpoots, under their princes, "stretched," ^{BOOK III.} says the historian, "the feet of trepidation on the boundless plain of despondency, and marched back to their homes." ^{CHAP 4} However, the remaining chiefs, and among the rest the sons of the late Vizir, exerted themselves with constancy and judgment, and on the following day a still more disastrous accident took place in the camp of the Abdallees. A magazine of rockets and ammunition which had been taken at Sirhind accidentally exploded, and killing a great number of people shed through the army confusion and dismay. Ahmed, no longer willing to risk an engagement, drew off his troops, and marched back unmolested to Cabul.¹

The Emperor, who only survived a sufficient time to receive intelligence of this joyful event, expired in the thirtieth year of his reign, and forty-ninth of his age, his constitution exhausted by the use of opium.²

Ahmed Shah, his eldest son, succeeded without opposition. The great character and power of Nizam al Mulk removed all competition for the vizirat, but he excused himself on account of his years, and actually died, about a month afterwards, in the hundred and fourth year of his age, leaving his

¹ Seer Mutakhareen, (iii 38—52), Memoirs of Khojeh Abdulkurreem, p 186, 203—207 Life of Ahmed Shah, king of the Abdallees, who are also called Duranees, from the custom of wearing a pearl in one of their ears, translated from the Persian by Henry Vansittart, published in Gladwin's Asiatic Miscellany

² The Seer Mutakhareen is the great authority for this reign, Mr. Scott giving little more than an abridgment of the narrative in that work Some curious facts are contained in the Memoirs of Khojeh Abdulkurreem Frazer's Nadir Shah, and the history of that ferocious conqueror, translated into French by Sir William Jones, are to be consulted for the details on the Persian side In Frazer there is an abridgment of the Mogul history, from Aurungzebe to Mahomed Shah, which is given in a still more abridged form by Holwell in his "Interesting Historical Events"—Frazer's materials were imperfect

BOOK III government of Deccan to be seized by his second son Nazir Jung whose good fortune it was to be present on the spot. After the refusal of the Nizam, the vizir was bestowed upon Sufsder Jung, the Viceroy of Oade for whom it was originally intended.

CHAP 4 1719-50 The Rohillas and Abdallee Afghauns gave occasion to the most remarkable transactions of the reign of Ahmed Shah Ali Mahomed, though removed from Rohilkund to Sirhind, found means to return, upon the invasion of the Abdallees, and being joined by the Afghauns, great numbers of whom had still remained in the country, he regained possession, and expelled the imperial governor, much about the time of the death of Mohamed Shah. He enjoyed not his prosperity long but, dying of a cancer in his back, left discord and contention in his family. This circumstance encouraged the governor of Oude who was now Vizir, and commanded the remaining resources of the state to form the design of relieving himself from the dread of an aspiring neighbour, and of increasing his power and dominion by the country which that neighbour possessed. The district of Irruckabad was governed by an Afghaun of the Bungush tribe. This man the Vizir endeavoured to make his instrument in the destruction of the Rohillas. But the Bungush chieftain lost his life in the contest. The Vizir was not less greedy of the country of his Bungush friend, than he was of that of his Rohilla antagonist. The family of the Bungush chieftain perceiving the designs of the Vizir, formed a confederacy with the neighbouring Afghauns. The Vizir was defeated in a great battle after which the Afghauns proceeded in two bodies, one to Allahabad, where they plundered the city and besieged the citadel the other to Lucknow, which

they expected to surprise The Vizir, now trembling for his own possessions, could think of nothing better than the wretched resource of calling in the Mahrattas to his aid. They fell upon the country with their usual rapidity; took the Afghauns in a great measure by surprise, and compelled them after much slaughter to take shelter in the neighbouring hills. This done, the Mahrattas had no inclination to depart. They took up their quarters during the rainy season in the country which they had cleared, and the Vizir was fain to assign them a large portion of it in the name of a reward for their service. The Afghauns, as a welcome counterpoise, were allowed to re-occupy the remainder. These events occurred before the end of the year 1750.

In 1749, Ahmed Abdallee marched from Kabul, and advanced as far as Lahore. Meer Munnoo, the eldest son of the late Vizir, had been appointed Governor of Multan, and of as much of the other provinces of Upper India, as could be recovered from the Persians or Afghauns. Being unprepared for adequate resistance, he offered to purchase the retreat of the Dooranee by assigning to him the revenues of four districts, with which Ahmed, for the present, thought proper to content himself.¹ In two years he repeated his visit; when Meer Munnoo, after some months of vigorous resistance, was betrayed by one of his generals, and defeated. The Dooranee Shah was not incapable of generosity, he soothed the vanquished leader by obliging expressions, and appointed him his deputy in the two provinces of Multan and Lahore, which were now finally severed from the dominion of the Moguls. A messenger was sent to

¹ Seer Mutakhareen (in 79) Mr Scott speaks of a vigorous resistance on the part of the Governor (p 225), but Golâm Hussun says, there was no fighting, and so does Kojeh Abdulkurreem (p 236)

BOOK III. Delhi to demand even a formal cession of the con-
CHAPTER 4 quered territory and, though Sussder Jung was sum-
1752 mitted from his government, with a view to resist the Afghauns, the favourite eunuch, jealous of the honour which he might acquire by recovering those im-
portant provinces, persuaded the Emperor to ratify the cession before he arrived. About the same time an expedition was undertaken against one of the nations of Rajpoots, who had seized, with a dis-
putable title, upon certain districts in Ajmere. The war was ill conducted and ended in disgrace.

A youth now appeared on the stage who was destined to play a conspicuous part in the closing scenes of the Mogul sovereignty. This was the only son of Gazee ad Dien Khan, the eldest son of Nizam al Mulk. Upon the death of Nazir Jung in Deccan, Gazee ad Dien his elder brother, solicited the Vice-royalty of that important country for himself and taking with him the Mahratta army which had been in the pay of the Vizir, marched unmolested to Aurungabad. At this place he died only a few days after his arrival. His army immediately dispersed and the Mahratta general took possession of Candesh the government of which the deceased Viceroy had been obliged to assign him in security for the pay of his troops. His son Shaab ad Dien, whom he had left in the capital, made so good a use of his interest chiefly with the Vizir Sussder Jung that he received his father's titles of Ghazee ad Dien Khan Bahadur, and was raised to his office of Ameer al Omrah. This did not prevent him from joining immediately the party of the Emperor, and from seconding, with all his power the machinations intended for the destruction of the Vizir. The military command of the palace was artfully taken out of the hands of that officer and he and his dependants were refused

admittance. The Vizir was alarmed at the prospect ^{BOOK III} of a war with his master. He therefore solicited ^{CHAP 4} permission to retire to his government beyond the ^{1752.} Jumna This was refused. He marched out of the city, and encamped at a few miles distance, with an intention of proceeding to his government without leave, but without drawing the sword, unless in self defence. Learning that an attack was certainly intended, he invited to his assistance the Jaat Raja Soorâje Mul. This chief had already fought in his service, and readily joined his old friend and commander.¹ The Vizir set up a new Emperor, a youth whom he represented as one of the royal princes; and laid siege to the castle. It was vigorously defended by the spirit and bravery of the young Ameer al Omrah, and, after a fruitless contest of six months, both parties were glad to negotiate. Sussder Jung gave up his pretended Prince, and was allowed to

¹ The Jaats or Jauts, inhabiting the mountainous region, from the Chumbul and Jumna eastward, to the Jeypoor Rajaliship on the west, and from twenty coss to the southward of Agra, to the province of Delhi on the north, were known as a formidable predatory tribe from the earliest period of the Mohainedan history. The original seat of the Jaats appears to have been near the Indus, in the lower part of Multan. Their chief, or one of their chiefs, was received into the service of Jehander Shah, and behaved with gallantry in the war between that Prince and Ferokserc. Upon the ascendant gained by the latter Prince, the Jaat retired with his plunder to his fortress of Bhurtpore. This chief was succeeded by his son, who was obliged to become tributary to the Rajah of Jeypoor. To him succeeded his brother, who contrived to throw off his dependence upon the Rajpoot, and, first of his race, assumed the title of Rajah. During the weakness of Mahomed Shah's administration, he spread his incursions to the very walls of Agra, and left to his son and successor, Sooraje Mull, a considerable kingdom. His power, and vicinity to the capital, rendered him an object of consequence, and the Vizir had attached him to his interests by placing him among the Omrahs of the empire, and other favours. See an account of the Jaats, *Asiat. An Reg 1802*, Characters, p 12. Also "A Sketch of Rajehpootaneh," translated from the Persian, in "Tracts, &c" by William Francklin, a small volume, published in 1811.

BOOK III retire to his government, but was deprived of the
 CHAR 4 Vizir, which was bestowed upon Intizam ad Dow-
 1753 lah, son of the late Vizir Kummir ad Dier Khan

The Jaat Rajah, Sooraje Mul had given suffi-
 cient umbrage by his support of the rebellious Vizir
 but, during the weakness of the Mogul government,
 the Jaats had also extended their encroachments over
 a great part of the province of Agra. The youthful
 ardour of Ghazee ad Dier suggested to him an
 expedition for the entire reduction of the Jaat country.
 He called to his assistance a Mahratta general
 Holkar Mulhar and the Jaats unable to keep the
 field, retired to their strong holds. To reduce them
 speedily, heavy cannon was required. For this Gazee
 ad Dier applied to the Emperor. But the aspiring
 temper of the Ameer al Oairah was already formid-
 able to both the Emperor and Intizam ad Dowlah.
 Sooraje Mul, aware of their sentiments, coaxed
 intimation to the Emperor, that if he would meet
 him at Secundra, he would join him with all his
 forces and deliver him at once from the dangers
 which, from the ambition of his Ameer al Oirah
 impended over his person and throne. The scheme
 was relished and the Emperor, under pretence of
 a hunting party, set forward with as great a force as
 possible on the road to Secundra. He had advanced
 as far as that city when Holkar Mulhar surprised
 his camp in the night. The Emperor, the Vizir,
 and other leading officers fled, disguised as women
 leaving even their wives and daughters behind them.
 Upon this the army disbanded, and Cawal ad Dier
 marched to the capital where nothing remained to
 oppose him. He invested himself with the office of
 Vizir seized the Emperor and his mother blinded
 them both and bringing forth Yezzer ad Dier son
 of the late Jehander Shah, proclaimed him Emperor,

by the title of Aulumgeer the Second. This revolution occurred in the year 1753.¹

BOOK III.

CHAP. 4.

1753.

During the same year died Sufder Jung, Subahder of Oude ; and was succeeded by Sujah ad Dowlahi, his son. About the same time died also Meer Munnoo, Viceroy, under the Abdallee King, of the provinces of Multan and Lahore. By the severe exactions of the government, and the interruptions of agriculture through the ravages and terror of war, these provinces had for some time been severely afflicted with scarcity. Of this, one important consequence was, an accession to the numbers and power of the Seiks; for that people making it a rule to provide maintenance and occupation for one another, great numbers of persons in distress were tempted to join them ; and all were readily received upon adopting the gaib and principles of the sect.² The Abdallee Shah withdrew not the government of Multan and Lahore from the family of Meer Munnoo. His son was a minor ; but, in quality of guardian of the minor, his mother was allowed to act in his stead. Under this arrangement, the disorder of the provinces increased. The weakness of the administration suggested to the Vizir, who now had changed his title from that of Gazee ad Dien Khan to that of Unad al Mulk, the project of wresting the provinces at once from the hands of this female superintendant, and from the dominion of the Asghauns. During the life of Meer Munnoo, the daughter of the Governess had been promised in marriage to Gazee ad Dien Khan, who now claimed fulfilment of the contract. The mother, to whom few events could yield greater pleasure, conveyed to him his bride, with all the magni-

¹ The Seer Mutakhareen is followed in the text Francklin (Hist. of Shah Aulum, p. 4) says, 1755

² Seer Mutakhareen, iii. 137

BOOK III. licence which the importance of the nuptials appeared
Chap. 4. to require Under the confidence and security which

 1754 this alliance inspired, the Vizir detached a body of
 troops to Lahore, who seized and conveyed to his
 camp, the deluded Governess inveighing against his
 perfidy, and denouncing the vengeance which Ahmed
 Shah her sovereign would speedily exact.

The fulfilment of her angry predictions was not long deferred. The exasperated Afghaun hastened from Candahar to Lahore which was evacuated on his approach and thence directed his march to Delhi. The Vizir, sensible of his inability to contend with the storm, eagerly solicited reconciliation with his mother in law, and employed her as a mediator with the Shah. The invader rejected not the prayer but demanded a large contribution as the price of his clemency and, in the mean time, continued his march to Delhi. The wretched Aulumgeer, having no means of resistance, opened to him the gates of the capital and affected to receive him as a royal guest. For some weeks Delhi was subject to all the enormities which are practised by a barbarian soldier, on a prostrate foe. To gratify more fully the rapacity of the invader, Umad al Mulk offered to go in person to raise contributions in the Doonab or country between the Jumna and Ganges while the Doorance Shah was to march against the country of the Jant Rajah Sooraje Mul. He had reduced some fortresses and was employed in besieging the citadel of Agra, when a plague broke out in his camp. Upon this he formed the resolution of returning immediately to his own country, without even waiting for the return of the Vizir. An interview, as he passed Delhi again took place between him and Aulumgeer. The fallen Mogul entreated the invader of his country not to leave him in the hands of his overbearing Vizir.

Nujeeb ad Dowlah, a chief of Rohillas, who had lately acted a conspicuous part in the imperial service, was, at the request of the Emperor, appointed Ameer al Omrah; and to him the Dooranee recommended the protection of his master.

BOOK III
CHAP. 4

1756.

The Vizir, upon the retreat of the Abdalees, engaged in his party Ahmed Khan, the Bungush chief of Furrukhabad, whose father had lost his life in the contest with the Rohillas. To him and his Afghauns he joined an army of Mahrattas, under Ragonaut Raow and Holkar. With this force he marched to Delhi. The Emperor and Nujeeb ad Dowlah shut the gates of the city; but, after a siege of forty-five days, the Emperor was obliged to submit; while Nujeeb ad Dowlah, by bribing the Mahrattas, obtained the means of escaping to his own district in Rohilkund, and his office of Ameer al Omrah was bestowed upon Ahmed Khan. Alee Gohur, the eldest son of Aulumgeer, was in the vicinity of Delhi, supporting himself with a small body of cavalry on some districts which he had in Jaghire. The Vizir made his father recall him, and the Prince repaired to Delhi, but refused to enter the citadel where he might easily be confined. He was, accordingly, besieged in his palace; but a few of his followers cut a passage for him through the troops of the Vizir, and he made his escape to Nujeeb ad Dowlah, with whom, and with the Subahdar of Oude, he remained for some months; and then betook himself for an asylum to the English in Bengal.

The settlement which, with short-sighted policy, the Viceroy of Oude had given to a body of Mahrattas in part of Rohilkund, had fired other Mahrattas with a passion for the fertile country beyond the Ganges. Of this passion, in labouring the ruin of Nu-

BOOK III Jeeb ad Dowlah, and of the Nabob of Oude,¹ whose
CHAP 4 power he dreaded, and whose government he desired,
 1756 Umad al Mulk resolved to make his account. At his instigation two chiefs Junkojee and Duttah Sinda, set out from Deccan, meditating no less than the entire subjugation of Hindustan. They crossed the Jumna and driving Sujah ad Dowlah from the open country, besieged him in one of his forts, where he defended himself with obstinate bravery. Sujah ad Dowlah saw that the danger was common and collecting an army marched to support him. He encountered the Mahratta army gained the advantage, and forced it to cross the Jumna, where a considerable portion of it perished in the waters. Hearing at the same time of the march of the Abdalee Shohi, its leaders were sufficiently disposed to accommodation.

As soon as Umad al Mulk, the Vizir, was made acquainted with the alliance of Sujah ad Dowlah and the Rohillas, it was his desire, as his interest, to march to the assistance of his Mahratto allies. But he was now beset with a number of difficulties. The Abdalee Shohi, whom he had twice offended was in motion. The Rohillas, with the Nabob of Omle were opposing the Mahrattas. And Aulumgeer was in correspondence with all his enemies. He resolved, without

¹ The term *Nabob* as equivalent to *Sulabdar* is very modern in Hindustan; and is said to have begun with Sujah Dowlah. Formerly it was not applied to the *Sulabdar* or governor of the *Sulabi*, but to the *Sulabdar's* deputy or *locum tenens*; the literal meaning of the word being *deputy*. The new use of the term is thus accounted for in the *Sect Muukhareen* (iii. 167). When the Prince Alce Gohur was on the visit just mentioned to Sujah ad Dowlah, and received the compliments of that Governor he addressed him by the title of *brother Ad!* which being reckoned an elegant compliment passed into circulation, when the name was afterwards currently applied to him, and also to other governors.

scruple, to deliver himself from the last of these difficulties. A trusty Cashmerian having received his commission, the Emperor was stabbed with poignards, and his body thrown out upon the strand of the Jumna; where it was stripped by the people, and remained exposed for eighteen hours. Mohee al Sunnut, a son or grandson of Kauin Buksh, the youngest son of Aurungzebe, was taken from confinement, and set up as the pageant of royalty; after which the Vizir hastened to join the conflict against Nujeeb ad Dowlah and the Nabob of Oude. He was on his march when he heard that peace was concluded; and that the Mahrattas were gone to oppose themselves to the approach of the Abdalee King. The means of personal safety now engrossed the mind of Umad al Mulk. He retired to the country of Suraje Mul, and shut himself up in one of the strongest of his forts.

Upon the last retreat of Ahmed Dooranee Shah from Hindustan, he had left his son Governor of Lahore and Multan, disordered by revolutions, wasted and turbulent. A chief who had served with distinction under the late Meer Munnoo incited the Seiks to join him in molesting the Dooranees, and they gained several important advantages over their principal commanders. They invited the Mahratta generals, Ragonaut Raow, Shumsheer Bahadur, and Holkar, who had advanced into the neighbourhood of Delhi, to join them in driving the Abdalees from Lahore. No occupation could be more agreeable to the Mahrattas. After taking Sirhind, they advanced to Lahore, where the Abdalee Prince made but a feeble resistance, and fled. This event put them in possession of both Multan and Lahore. Placing the country under a temporary government, they marched

BOOK III.
CHAP. 4
1759.

BOOK III. homeward at the approach of the rains but left a
CHAP 4 Mahratta Subahdar, who next season extended his
 1760 acquisitions as far as the river Attok It was at this
 very time that the army, of which we have already
 spoken, marched to take possession of Rohilcund and
 Oude And the whole Indian continent appeared now
 about to be swallowed up by the Mahrattas. Had not
 Ahmed Shah, the Abdalce, whose empire was in its
 youth and vigour, been upon the stage had not the
 Mahrattas at that time been possessed of extraor-
 dinary power, the Mahrattas, in the one case, the
 Abdalees, in the other, might have extended their
 dominion from Thibet and Persia to Cape Comorin
 The opposition which they made to one another open-
 ed a way for a maritime nation to introduce itself
 from the other side of the globe, and to acquire by
 rapid strides a more complete ascendant over that ex-
 tensive region than any single government had ever
 attained

Ahmed Shah was not only roused by the loss of
 his two provinces and the disgrace imprinted on his
 arms but he was invited by the chiefs and people of
 Hindustan groaning under the depredations of the
 Mahrattas, to march to their succour and become
 their King The Mahrattas flying before him, eva-
 cuated the two provinces at his approach and assem-
 bled together from all quarters in the neighbourhood
 of Delhi The Doorance army was joined by the
 chiefs of Rolucund, Nujeeb ad Dowlah, Sandoollah
 Khan, Hafiz Rhamut and Doondee Khan For
 some days the Doorances hovered round the Mahratta
 camp when the Mahrattas, who were distressed for
 provisions came out and offered battle Their army,
 consisting of 80 000 veteran cavalry, was almost
 wholly destroyed and Duttali Sindia, their General,

was among the slain. A detachment of horse sent BOOK III.
against another body of Mahrattas, who were marauding under Holkar in the neighbourhood of Secundra, CHAP 4.
surprised them so completely that Holkar fled naked, 1760.
with a handful of followers, and the rest, with the exception of a few prisoners and fugitives, were all put to the sword.

During the rainy season, while the Dooranee Shah was quartered at Secundra, the news of this disaster and disgrace excited the Mahrattas to the greatest exertions. A vast army was collected; and Suddashéo Raow, commonly called Bhaow, the nephew of Ballajee, the Peshwa, and other chiefs of the greatest note, assuming the command, the Mahrattas marched to gratify the resentments, and fulfil the unbounded hopes of the nation. Having been joined by Sooraje Mul the Jaat, and Umad al Mulk the Vizir, they arrived at the Jumna before it was sufficiently fallen to permit either the Mahrattas on the other side, or the Dooranees, to cross. In the mean time they marched to Delhi, of which after some resistance they took possession; plundered it with their usual rapacity, tearing away even the gold and silver ornaments of the palace, proclaimed Sultan Jewan Bukht, the son of Alee Gohur, Emperor, and named Sujah ad Dowlah, Nabob of Oude, his Vizir. Impatient at intelligence of these and some other transactions, Ahmed Shah swam the Jumna, still deemed impassable, with his whole army. This daring adventure, and the remembrance of the late disaster, shook the courage of the Mahrattas, and they entrenched their camp on a plain near Pannipût. The Dooranee, having surrounded their position with parties of troops, to prevent the passage of supplies, contented himself for some days with skirmishing. At last he tried an assault; when

BOOK III. the Rohilla infantry of Nujeeb ad Dowlah forced their way into the Mahratta works, and Bulwant Raow with other chiefs was killed but night put an end to the conflict. Meanwhile scarcity prevailed, and filth accumulated, in the Mahratta camp. The vigilance of Ahmed intercepted their convoys. In a little time famine and pestilence raged. A bottle became the only resource. The Abdalee restrained his troops till the Mahrattas had advanced a considerable way from their works when he rushed upon them with so much rapidity as left them hardly any time for using their cannon. The Bhaow was killed early in the action confusion soon pervaded the army, and a dreadful carnage ensued. The field was floated with blood. Twenty two thousand men and women were taken prisoners. Of those who escaped from the field of battle, the greater part were butchered by the people of the country who had suffered from their depredations. Of an army of 140 000 horse, commanded by the most celebrated generals of the nation, only three chiefs of any rank, and a mere residue of the troops found their way to Decca. The Dooranee Shah made but little use of this mighty victory. After remaining a few months at Delhi, he recognized Alee Gohur, as Emperor, by the title of Shah Aulum the Second and entrusting Nujeeb ad Dowlah with the superintendance of affairs till his master should return from Bengal he marched back to his capital of Cabul in the end of the year 1760. With Aulungeer the Second, the empire of the Moguls may be justly considered as having arrived at its close. The unhappy Prince who now received the name of Emperor, and who after a life of misery and disaster, ended his days a pensioner of English merchants, never possessed a sufficient degree of

CHAP 4
1760

power to consider himself for one moment as master BOOK III
CHAP. 4

¹ The events of Aulumgeer's and the preceding reign are found in considerable detail in the Seer Mutakhareen (iii 62—192), which is abridged by Scott, Hist. of Aurungzebe's Successors, p 224—246. The principal facts are noticed, but in certain respects somewhat differently, by Franklin, Life of Shah Aulum, p 7—27.

1760.

CHAP V

A Comparison of the State of Civilization among the Mahomedan Conquerors of India with the State of Civilization among the Hindus

BOOK III CHAP 5 AFTER this display of the transactions to which the Mahomedan nations have given birth in Hindustan it is necessary to ascertain as exactly as possible the particular stage of civilization at which these nations had arrived. Beside the importance of this inquiry, as a portion of the history of the human mind, and a leading fact in the history of India it is requisite for the purpose of ascertaining whether the civilization of the Hindus received advancement or depression from the ascendancy over them which the Mahomedans acquired.

We have seen in the comparisons adduced to illustrate the state of civilization among the Hindus, that the nations in the western parts of Asia—the Persians, the Arabians, and even the Turks—possessed a degree of intellectual faculties rather higher than the nations situated beyond them toward the East—were rather less deeply involved in the absurdities and weaknesses of a rude state of society—had in fact attained a stage of civilization in some little degree, higher than the other inhabitants of that quarter of the globe.

This is a statistical fact, to which it is not probable that much contradiction will hereafter be applied. It is chiefly of importance, for the present inquiry, to show that the people who actually invaded Hindustan and assumed the government over so large a

portion of its inhabitants, were perfectly on a level with the Arabians and Persians, in the highest state of their civilization.

BOOK III
CHAP. 5

The Mahomedans, who established their dominion in Hindustan, were principally derived from the eastern portions of that great country which was contained within the limits of the Persian empire in its greatest extent

These eastern provinces of the great Persian empire, Bactria and Transoxiana, with the contiguous regions, at the time when those men were formed who established the Mahomedan dominion in Hindustan, were remarkable rather for exceeding than falling short of the other parts of that empire, in the attainments of civilized life. The language of Balk was reckoned the most elegant dialect of the Persian tongue, and when God speaks mildly and gently to the cherubim surrounding his throne, thus, according to the Mahomedans, is the language he employs. A large proportion of the men who have been most distinguished in all the different walks of Persian literature, have been natives of Balk, of whom it may suffice to mention Mahomed Ebn Emir Khowând Shah, better known to Europeans under the name of Mirkhond, the author of a great historical work, to which Europeans have been indebted for much of their knowledge of Persian history; Rashîd, a celebrated poet; and Anwari, famous both as a poet and astronomer. So greatly was Balk distinguished during the reigns of the immediate successors of Gingis Khan, that it was denominated *Kobbat al Islâm*, the metropolis of Islamism. Bokhara was one of the greatest seats of learning in the East. Students flocked from all parts, to the celebrated university of Bokhara. In the Mogul language, Bokhâr, we are told, is a common appellation for a learned man. Among the celebrated

BOOK III men who have made illustrious the studies of Bokhara,
CHAP 5 is found a name, ranked high among his contemporaries in all the quarters of the globe, Ebn Sina, or Avicenna who wrote above one hundred volumes, and died in 1036, at the early age of fifty-eight

The Moguls were not perfectly barbarous when they advanced upon the countries of the West. It is sufficiently proved that they had the use of letters, they had an alphabet of their own, in no degree corresponding with the troublesome characters of the Chinese, but as ingenious and simple as that of the Romans. The degree in which they approximated to the mental capacity of the most enlightened nations of Asia, is abundantly proved, not only by that power of combined action which enabled them to effect their conquests, but by the skill with which they regulated the government of China, as well as that of Persia and Transoxiana, to which they subsequently advanced. It appears not that the government in those several countries was more skilfully conducted in any hands, than in those of the immediate successors of Gingis. The Moguls, at the time of their conquests, were so fully prepared for a new step in civilization, that they assimilated themselves with wonderful rapidity both in China and Persia to the more cultivated people among whom they had arrived and, in a short time were to be distinguished from them rather by slight shades of character and manners than any difference in point of civilization. In their new acquisitions in Persia and Transoxiana, they were celebrated for prosecuting the sciences with great ardour and in particular, for having laid astronomy, geography, and the mathematical sciences, under great obligations. In the city of Samarcand, the seat of government of one of the sons of Gingis and his successors, "the academy of sciences," to use the words of the writer

in the Universal History, "was one of the most eminent to be found among the Mahomedans, who resorted thither to study from all the neighbouring countries." Abulfeda mentions two decisive marks of a considerable degree of civilization. In his time the streets were paved, and water was conveyed into the city by leaden pipes. The silk-paper made here was the most beautiful in Asia, and in great request over all the East¹

Mahmood, of Ghizni, the founder of the first Mahomedan dynasty in Hindustan, was the most accomplished Prince in Asia. His court contained an assemblage of learned men. The greatest poet of Asia wrote in his capital, and was fostered by his bounty. He and his nobles adorned Ghizni with an architecture which rendered it the finest city in the East. He there erected an university, which he richly endowed, and made it one of the principal seats of learning in that quarter of the globe.²

Under Mahmood of Ghizni, the great sovereign of Persia, who combined in his service all the finest spirits that Persian civilization could produce, the Hindus could not be said to be over-run, or held in subjection by a people less civilized than themselves. As little could this be said under the descendants of Mahmood, who, though inferior to him in personal qualities, were themselves formed, and served by men who were formed, under the full influence of Persian arts and knowledge. The same was undoubtedly the case with the princes of the Gaurian dynasty. They,

¹ For these facts, the reader will find the original authors faithfully quoted and extracted, in the Universal History, ii 352, 354, iv 309, 393, v 123 Modern Part, 8vo Ed. In exploring the Persian and Arabian Authorities, the authors of the Universal History are not the worst of our guides

² Vide supra, p 223.

BOOK III. and the leaders by whom they were principally served,
CHAP. 5 were, in respect of training and knowledge, in reality
 Persians. It will not be denied, that the Moguls,
 the last of the Mahomedan dynasties of Hindustan,
 had remained a sufficient time in Transoxiana and
 Persia, to have acquired all the civilization of these
 two countries, long before they attempted to perform
 conquests in India. The Persian language was the
 language they used the Persian laws, and the Per-
 sian religion, were the laws and religion they had
 espoused it was the Persian literature to which they
 were devoted and they carried along with them the
 full benefit of the Persian arts and knowledge, when
 they established themselves in Hindustan

The question, therefore, is, Whether by a govern-
 ment, moulded and conducted agreeably to the pro-
 perties of Persian civilization, instead of a government
 moulded and conducted agreeably to the properties of
 Hindu civilization, the Hindu population of India lost
 or gained For the aversion to a government, because
 in the hands of foreigners that is, of men who are
 called by one rather than some other name, without
 regard to the qualities of the government, whether
 better or worse is a prejudice which reason dis-
 clums. As India was not governed by the Moguls,
 in the character of a detached province, valued only
 as it could be rendered useful to another state, which
 is the proper idea of foreign conquest but became
 the sole residence and sole dominion of the Mogul
 government, which thereby found its interest as
 closely united to that of India, as it is possible for the
 interest of a despotical government to be united with
 that of its people the Mogul government was, to all
 the effects of interest and thence of behaviour, not a
 foreign but a native government With these consi-
 derations before the inquirer, it will not admit of any

long dispute, that human nature in India gained, BOOK III.
and gained very considerably, by passing from a CHAP 5
Hindu to a Mahomedan government. Of this, without
descending to particulars, the situation of human
nature, under the Hindu governments which we have
seen; that of the Mahrattas, for example, that of
Nepaul; that of Mysore, before the time of Hyder
Ali; or that of Travancore; affords a very satisfac-
tory proof. The defects of Mahomedan rule, enor-
mous as they justly deserve to be held, can by no
means be regarded as equal to those which univer-
sally distinguish the government of Hindus.

The same minute analysis might here be instituted
of the grand circumstances which constitute the
marks of civilization among the Mahomedans of
India, as has been already executed in regard to the
Hindus. But it is by no means necessary. The state
of civilization among the Hindus has been myste-
rious, and little known. With the state of civiliza-
tion in Persia the instructed part of European readers
are pretty familiar. Besides; in analysing the cir-
cumstances which constitute the marks of civilization
among the Hindus, such comparisons, for the sake
of illustration, were made with the corresponding
circumstances among the Persians, as served to throw
some light upon the state of civilization among the
latter people, and to show in what position they stood
as compared with the Hindus. A few short reflec-
tions under each of the heads will therefore suffice.

I CLASSIFICATION AND DISTRIBUTION OF THE
PEOPLE In this grand particular, the superiority
of the order of things among the Mahomedans, over
that among the Hindus, was inexpressibly great.
The Mahomedans were exempt from the institution
of caste, that institution which stands a more effec-
tual barrier against the welfare of human nature than

BOOK III any other institution which the workings of caprice
CHAP 3 and of selfishness have ever produced. Under the Mahomedan despotisms of the East, nearly as much as in republics themselves, all men are treated as equal. There is no noble no privileged class. Legally, there is no hereditary property, as the king is the heir of all his subjects. The only thing which creates distinction, is office or the exercise of some portion of the powers of government. For office, there is no monopolizing class. Men from the very lowest ranks of life are daily rising to the highest commands where each of them is honoured, in proportion not to the opulence of his father, but the qualities which he himself displays. Though here, there is wanting that barrier to the unlimited progress of the power of the king which was found in the hereditary nobility of Europe yet the situation of Spain, of Poland, and, in a greater or less degree, of every country in Europe shows that the body of the people is not much benefited, when the unlimited power of oppressing them instead of being confined to the hands of the king and his servants, is shared between him and a body of nobles.

II THE FORM OF GOVERNMENT In the simplicity of Oriental despotism, there is not much room for diversity of form. Yet there are circumstances which distinguish to a considerable extent the state of government among the Mahomedans from that among the Hindus and all of them to the advantage of the former.

Under the Mahomedan sovereigns, there was a regular distribution of the functions of government, to certain fixed and regular officers that of the Vizir, that of the Bokshiee Ameer ul Omrah, and so on. Under the Hindu sovereigns there appears to have been a confusion of all things together in one hetero-

geneous mass. The sovereign governed by a sort of BOOK III.
council, composed of Brahmens, who exercised the CHAP 5
powers of government, according to no pre-established plan; but according as each by intrigue, or by reputation, could obtain an ascendancy among the rest.¹ The natural and common order of things, in this situation, was, that some one individual acquired a predominant influence, and employed the rest as merely his instruments. This man became, by way of distinction, *the minister*—peshwa, as he is called by the Mahrattas. Where the council of Brahmens is not a regular establishment; the sovereign chooses a minister, that is, a depositary of all his power, who disposes of it in portions, regulated by no rule, and by not much of established custom and habit.

To the abuse of the power which is placed in the hand of absolute sovereigns, there is no limit, except from three circumstances. 1. Religion, 2. Insurrection, 3. Manners.

1. When it is said that *Religion* opposes the will of the sovereign, it is meant that the ministers of religion oppose it, the priests: For, as a political engine, religion, without somebody to stand up for it, is a dead letter. Now, the priests can only oppose the will of the sovereign, when, by their influence over the minds of men, they have acquired a great portion of power, a power which the king is afraid to provoke. Again, this power of the priests will, or will not, be applied, in a way to protect the people from the

¹ Mr Grant remarks that Kirkpatrick's account of Nepaul exhibits a form of government, state officers, civil, and military, nearly the same as were established in Hindustan, under the rule of the Moguls. Grant's Observations on the Hindus, p 41 But Kirkpatrick's account is very imperfect, and he appears to have supplied his want of information, by ideas borrowed from what he knew in other parts of India. Besides, the Nepaulians, as well as the Mahrattas, were in a situation to borrow, from the Mshomedans

BOOK III abuse of the sovereign power, according as the sovereign allies himself with it, or does not ally himself with it. If he allies himself with it that is to say, if he associates the power of the priests with his own, and admits them to a due share of the benefits which he pursues, the power of the priests is employed, not in checking, but in supporting him in the abuse of his power. Now, so completely was the power of the priests associated with that of the sovereign, under the Hindu system of government, that the power of the sovereign was almost wholly transferred into the hands of the priests. As the benefit of abusing the sovereign power was shared so largely with them selves, they had no motive to check, but every motive to support. To misgovernment accordingly under Hindu sovereigns we find no where any symptoms of opposition from religion.

Under Mahomedan sovereigns, the alliance between the Church and the State is much less complete. The Caliphs, it is true, were at once head magistrates, and head priests. In other situations, under Mahomedan sovereigns, the priests have had little political power. Except in some matters of established custom, which by themselves are little capable of mending the condition of the people upon the whole, they have never had sufficient influence, nor apparently any inclination, to protect the people from the abuses of sovereign power. Herein they differ from the Hindu system of priesthood, and the difference is an important one that they are not allied with those who abuse the sovereign power, and yield them no protection.

2. *Insurrection* is a principle of salutary operation under the governments of the East. To that is owing almost every thing which the people are anywhere left to enjoy. I have already had some opportunity

tunities, and as I proceed shall have more, to point out remarkable instances of its practical effects. In a situation where there is no regular institution to limit the power of gratifying the will, the caprices, and the desires of the sovereign and his instruments, at the expense of the people, there is nothing which hinders the people from being made as completely wretched as the unbounded gratification, at their expense, of the will, caprices, and desires of those who have sovereign power over them, can render human beings; except *the dread of insurrection*. But, in a situation where the mass of the people have nothing to lose, it is seldom difficult to excite them to insurrection. The sovereigns of the East find, by experience, that the people, if oppressed beyond a certain limit, are apt to rebel; never want leaders of capacity in such a case to conduct them; and are very apt to tread their present race of oppressors under their feet. This prospect lays these rulers under a certain degree of restraint; and is the main spring of that portion of goodness which any where appears in the practical state of the despotisms of the East. But the dread of insurrection was reduced to its lowest terms, among a people, whose apathy and patience under suffering exceeded those of any other specimen of the human race. The spirit, and excitability, and courage of the Mahomedan portion of the Indian population, undoubtedly furnished, as far as it went, an additional motive to good government, on the part of the sovereigns of Hindustan.

3. It is in a higher state of civilization than that exemplified, either among the Mahomedans or among the Hindus, that *Manners* have great influence in limiting the abuses of sovereign power. It is only in proportion as the mind of man is susceptible of pleasure from the approbation, pain from the disapproba-

BOOK III tion, of his fellow creatures, that he is capable of restraint from the operation of manners unless in so far as they increase or diminish the chance of insurrection. Though no great amount of salutary effects is, therefore, to be ascribed to the operation of manners, under the sovereigns, either of Hindu or of Mahomedan breed, the benefit as far as it went, was all on the side of the Mahomedans. There was, in the manners of the Mahomedan conquerors of India, an activity, a manliness, an independence, which rendered it less easy for despotism to sink, among them, to that disgusting state of weak and profligate barbarism, which is the natural condition of government among such a passive people as the Hindus.

Further, along with those remains of barbarism which in considerable amount adhere to the best of the Mahomedan nations, as well as to all the other inhabitants of Asia, a considerable portion of plain good sense marked the character of the conquerors of India while the natives of that country are distinguished by a greater deficiency in the important article of practical good sense than any people; above the rank of savages of whom we have any record. The practical good sense of any people is not without its influence upon the mode of employing the powers of government and upon the minds of some at least of the princes that wield them. Before the Moguls proceeded to Hindustan, we have a proof in the Institutes of the conqueror Timur¹ of the degree of benevolent contrivance, with which he laid down the plan of his administration.

"I appointed a Suddur, a man of holiness and of

¹ The Persian version was translated by Major Dury; and edited with a preface and other additions, by Mr White, the Arabic Professor at Oxford in 1782.

illustrious dignity, to watch over the conduct of the BOOK III.
faithful ; that he might regulate the manners of the
times ; and appoint superiors in holy offices, and es-
tablish in every city, and in every town, a judge of pe-
netration, and a doctor learned in the law, and a
supervisor of the markets, of the weights, and the
measures.

“ And I established a judge for the army, and a
judge for the subjects : and I sent into every province
and kingdom, an instructor in the law, to deter the
faithful from those things which are forbidden, and to
lead them in the truth.

“ And I ordained that in every town, and in every
city, a mosque, and a school, and a monastery, and an
alms-house for the poor and the indigent, and an
hospital for the sick and infirm, should be founded,
and that a physician should be appointed to attend the
hospital ; and that in every city a government-house,
and a court for the administration of justice should
be built ; and that superintendants should be appoint-
ed to watch over the cultivated lands, and over the
husbandmen.

“ And I commanded that they should build places of
worship, and monasteries in every city , and that they
should erect structures for the reception of travellers
on the high roads, and that they should make bridges
across the rivers

“ And I commanded that the ruined bridges should
be repaired ; and that bridges should be constructed
over the rivulets, and over the rivers , and that on
the roads, at the distance of one stage from each other,
Kauruwansarai should be erected ; and that guards
and watchmen should be stationed on the road, and
that in every Kauruwansarai people should be ap-
pointed to reside , and that the watching and guard-

BOOK III C H A P 5 ing of the roads should appertain unto them and that those guards should be answerable for whatever should be stolen on the roads from the nowary tra veller

" And I ordered that the Suddur and the Judge should, from time to time, lay before me all the ecclesiastical affairs of my empire and I appointed a Judge in equity, that he might transmit unto me all civil motters of litigation, that came to pass amongst my troops and my subjects."

Here is a selection of four of the most important objects of government, in moking a provision for which, the first care and attention of the Mogul sovereign are employed. The administration of justice the instruction of the people the facilitation of inter course, and his own knowledge of all that is transacted in his name. That the provision for these objects was very incomplete, we have sufficient assurance but some progress was made in the art and science of government, when they were pointed out as primary objects of regard still more, when something considerable was really done for their obtainment

Of the twelve maxims of his government, the following is a selection

" Persons of wisdom, and deliberation and vigilance, and circumspection, and aged men endowed with knowledge and foresight, I admitted to my private councils and I associated with them and I reaped benefit, and acquired experience from their conversation

" The soldier and the subject I regarded with the same eye. And such was the discipline which I established amongst my troops and my subjects that the one was never injured or oppressed by the other

" From amongst the wise and the prudent, who BOOK III.
merited trust and confidence, who were worthy of CHAP 5.
being consulted on the affairs of government, and to
whose care I might submit the secret concerns of my
empire, I selected a certain number, whom I consti-
tuted the repositories of my secrets : And my weighty
and hidden transactions, and my secret thoughts and
intentions, I delivered over to them.

" By the vizzeirs, and the secretaries, and the
scribes, I gave order and regularity to my public
councils . I made them the keepers of the mirror of
my government, in which they showed unto me the
affairs of my empire, and the concerns of my armies
and my people: And they kept rich my treasury ; and
they secured plenty and prosperity to my soldiers and
to my subjects ; and by proper and skilful measures
they repaired the disorders incident to empire , and
they kept in order the revenues and the expences of
government , and they exerted themselves in pro-
moting plenty and population throughout my do-
minions

" Men learned in medicine, and skilled in the art
of healing, and astrologers and geometricians, who
are essential to the dignity of empire, I drew around
me And by the aid of physicians and chiurgeons
I gave health to the sick. And with the assistance
of astrologers I ascertained the benign or malignant
aspect of the stars, their motions, and the revolutions
of the heavens . And with the aid of geometricians
and architects, I laid out gardens, and planned and
constructed magnificent buildings

" Historians, and such as were possessed of infor-
mation and intelligence, I admitted to my presence :
And from these men I heard the lives of the prophets
and the patriarchs, and the histories of ancient princes,
and the events by which they arrived at the dignity

BOOK III of empire, and the causes of the declension of their
CHAR⁵ fortunes And from the narratives and the histories
of those princes, and from the manners and the conduct of each of them, I acquired experience and knowledge And from those men I heard the descriptions and the traditions of the various regions of the globe, and acquired knowledge of the situations of the kingdoms of the earth

"To travellers and to voyagers of every country, I gave encouragement, that they might communicate unto me the intelligence and transactions of the surrounding nations And I appointed merchants and chiefs of Kauruwauns to travel to every kingdom and to every country, that they might bring unto me all sorts of valuable merchandize and rare curiosities, from Khuttou and from Kluttun and from Cheen and from Moncheen, and from Hindostaun, and from the cities of Arabia, and from Missur, and from Shium and from Room, and from the islands of the Christians that they might give me information of the situation, and of the manners and of the customs of the natives and inhabitants of those regions, and that they might observe and communicate unto me the conduct of the princes of every kingdom and of every country towards their subjects."

All these different points laid down, in writing; as main objects of attention in the conduct of government undoubtedly indicate a state of the human mind very considerably removed from the lowest barbarism

The following regulations respecting the collection of the revenues of all the parts of an imperfect government that which most deeply affects the happiness of the people indicate no common share of excellence in the spirit of administration

"And I commanded that the Ameers, and the

Mingbaushees, in collecting the revenues from the BOOK III.
subjects, should not, on any account, demand more CHAP 5
than the taxes and duties established.

“ And to every province on which a royal assign-
ment was granted, I ordained that two supervisors
should be appointed, that one of them should inspect
the collections, and watch over the concerns of the
inhabitants, that they might not be impoverished,
and that the Jaugheerdaur might not ill use or op-
press them, and that he should take an account of all
the sums which were collected in the province, and
that the other supervisor should keep a register of the
public expenses, and distribute the revenues among
the soldiers:

“ And every Ameer who was appointed to a jaug-
heer, I ordained that for the space of three years it
should remain unto him, and that, after three years,
the state of the province should be inspected. If the
inhabitants were satisfied, and if the country was
flourishing and populous, that he should be continued
therein; but if the contrary should appear, that the
jaugheer should return unto the crown, and, that for
the three following years, subsistence should not be
granted to the holder thereof.

“ And I ordained that the collection of the taxes
from the subject might, when necessary, be enforced
by menaces and by threats, but never by whips and
by scourges. The governor, whose authority is in-
ferior to the power of the scourge, is unworthy to
govern.

“ I ordained that the revenues and the taxes should
be collected in such a manner as might not be produc-
tive of ruin to the subject, or of depopulation to the
country.”

Of the produce of the fertile and cultivated lands,

BOOK III. one third was taken for the government and this
CHAP 5 was the principal, and almost the only source of the revenue.

" And I ordained, whoever undertook the cultivation of waste lands, or built an aqueduct, or made a canal, or planted a grove, or restored to culture a deserted district, that in the first year nothing should be taken from him, and that in the second year, whatever the subject voluntarily offered should be received, and that in the third year the duties should be collected according to the regulation

" And I ordained, that if the rich and the powerful should oppress the poorer subject, and injure or destroy his property, an equivalent for the damage sustained should be levied on the rich oppressor, and be delivered to the injured person, that he might be restored to his former estate.

" And I ordained, that in every country three Vizzeers should be stationed . The *first*, for the subject—to keep a regular account of the taxes and the duties received and what sums, and to what amount, were paid in by the subject and under what denomination, and on what account, and to preserve an exact statement of the whole . The *second*, for the soldier—to take account of the sums paid to the troops, and of the sums remaining due unto them " The third was for certain miscellaneous services, too tedious to be specified

These details are sufficient to show, that among the Moguls, even at their first irruption into Hindustan, the arts of government were considerably advanced and that the Hindus had much to gain by a change of masters . In the hands of some of the most eminent of the Mogul princes, the Emperor Akbar, for instance the powers of government were dis-

tributed, and employed with a skill which would not disgrace a period of considerable knowledge and refinement.

Though in a pure despotism much depended on the qualities of the sovereign, yet when a good plan of administration was once fully introduced, a portion of its excellence always remained, for a time; and had a strong tendency to become perpetual.

III. THE LAWS.—The laws of the Hindus, we have already seen, are such as could not originate in any other than one of the weakest conditions of the human intellect, and, of all the forms of law known to the human species, they exhibit one of the least capable of producing the benefits which it is the end and the only good consequence of law, to ensure.

The Mahomedan law, as introduced into India by its Mogul conquerors, is defective indeed, as compared with any very high standard of excellence; but compare it with the standard of any existing system, with the Roman law for instance, or the law of England, and you will find its inferiority not so remarkable, as those who are familiar with these systems, and led by the sound of vulgar applause, are in the habit of believing. In the following view of the most remarkable particulars in the state of Mahomedan law, a reference to the system of English law is peculiarly instructive, and even necessary, as it is by the English system that the Mahomedan has been superseded.

1. The civil, or non-penal branch of law, lays down the rights which it is, for the good of the species, required should be constituted in behalf of the individual; in other words, prescribes the power which the individual, for the good of the species, ought exclusively to possess, over persons, and over things.

The particular powers or privileges which it is ex-

BOOK III ^{Char 5} pedient to constitute rights, are, in the great points, so distinctly and strongly indicated by common experience, that there is a very general agreement about them among nations in all the stages of civilization. Nations differ chiefly in the mode of securing those rights.

One instrument, without which they cannot be secured, is strict and accurate definition. In affording strict and accurate definitions of the rights of the individual, the three systems of law, Roman, English, and Mahomedan, are not very far from being on a level. Completeness, in point of definition, it seems, is a perfection in the state of law, which it requires, a very advanced stage of civilization to bestow. At first, experience has provided no record of all the variety of material cases for which a provision is necessary. Afterwards, the human mind is not sufficiently clear and skilful to classify accurately a multitude of particulars and without accurate classification useful definitions and rules can never be framed. Lastly (and that is the state in which the more civilized nations of Europe have long been placed) custom and habit acquire a dominion which it is not easy to break, and the professors of law possess an interest in its imperfections, which prompts them to make exertions, and a power which enables them for a long time to make successful exertions, to defeat all endeavours for its improvement.

Until very lately, there was no civil code, that is to say, there was no description, good or bad, in a permanent set of words, of almost any of the rights belonging to individuals, in any country in Europe. The whole was traditional, the whole was oral; there was hardly any legislative writing. Of course in the greater number of cases, nobody knew exactly what was right. The judge having no fixed definition

for his guidance, made for himself, on each particular occasion, a definition to suit that particular occasion. But these numerous definitions, made by numerous judges on numerous occasions, were more or less different one from another. All the approximation to accuracy that was attained, or that was attainable, consisted in this, that the routine of decision fixed a certain sphere, within which the variation of the arbitrary definitions which the judges on each occasion made for themselves was with a certain force, confined; as he, by whom a wider range was taken for injustice than what was usually taken, would expose himself to the consequences of blame. Within a few years some attempts have been made, in some of the German states, to supply a code, that is, to give fixed and determinate words to the laws, by the only instrument of permanency and certainty in language, writing. These attempts have been partial, and exceedingly imperfect, even as far as they went. The Emperor Napoleon was the first sovereign in modern Europe, who bestowed upon his subjects the inestimable benefit of laws, in written, fixed, and determinate words. Many are the faults which might be discovered in this code, were this the place to criticise the execution, but with all its imperfections, it placed the French people, with respect to law, in a situation far more favourable than that of any other people upon the globe. In England, the whole portion of the field, occupied by what is denominated the common law; that is, almost all the civil, and a great proportion of the penal branch, is in the unwritten, that is, the oral, and traditional, or barbarous state. Lastly, that portion, which bears the character of written, or statute law, is so overloaded with useless words, so devoid of classification, and the expression is so ambiguous and obscure; that the lawyers declare

BOOK III it is far more polluted with the vice of uncertainty,
CHAP 5 than that which is in a state of necessary and perpe-
tual fluctuation, the common law itself

The form of the Mahomedan law, as exhibited to us in some of the best of its digests, as the Hednya, for instance, is not much more rude and barbarous than this To give any intelligible account of the powers which law converts into rights, it is necessary to make a distribution of the existences which are the subject of those rights, or over which the powers, converted into rights, are granted This distribution is the same, in the Mahomedan, as in the European systems. The subjects of those rights, or the existences over which the powers are granted, are either, First, Persons or, Secondly, Things In the case in which *Persons* are considered as the subject of rights Individuals, as individuals, are allotted rights, or exclusive powers, with respect to their own persons as husbands, fathers, sons, masters, servants, judges suitors kings, or subjects, &c. they are allotted rights or exclusive powers, with respect to the persons (including the services) of others In the case in which *Things* are considered as the subject of right two circumstances principally require to be ascertained First, the powers which are included in each right Secondly, the events which cause or give origin to the existence of a right. These points are determined upon the same principles, and nearly in the same way, by the Mahomedan as by European legislation Every where law has been formed, not by a previous survey and arrangement of the matters which it belongs to a system of law to include but by the continual aggregation of one individual case to another, as they occurred for decision The only classifications therefore, which have ever been attempted, are those of the cases which occur for decision, the states of

circumstances which most frequently give occasion to BOOK III. disputes about rights : Now, these states of circumstances are the more common of the events which constitute change of ownership, or effect the transfer of property . Of these events, one set, which obviously enough fall into a class, are those of bargain and sale, or the exchange of one article of value for another ; this constitutes a large chapter in the Mahomedan code Another important class of such events are those which relate to inheritance . A third class are those which relate to wills : A fourth, those which relate to engagements, either to pay a sum of money, or to perform a service : There are other inferior titles, of which those relating to deposits and to bail are the most considerable : And under these heads is the matter of civil law distributed in the Mahomedan code.

It will not be denied that this distribution very closely resembles that which is made of the same subject in the legal systems of Europe. It will hardly be denied that this combination of heads as completely includes the subject, or all the cases of dispute respecting ownership or right, as that combination of heads which we find in the codes of the west To show the exact degree in which the Mahomedan system falls short of the Christian system, but exceeds the Hindu, in making clear and certain the rights which it means to create and uphold, would require a development far too long and intricate for the present occasion. From the delineation of the great lines to which the present aim has been confined, it will appear, that a much higher strain of intelligence runs through the whole, than is to be found in the puerilities, and the worse than puerilities, of the Hindus.

2. So much for the comparison of Mahomedan law with that of the Hindus and Europeans, in regard to

BOOK III the civil branch, or the constitution of rights ¹ In CHAP 5 the penal branch, beside the selection of the acts which shall be accounted offences, in which selection there is great uniformity all over the globe, two things are necessary, an exact definition of the act which the law constitutes an offence, and an exact specification of the punishment which it adopts as the means of preventing that offence

On the penal branch of law, the Mahomedan, like the Roman system, is exceedingly scanty. In the Institutes of Justinian, for example three short titles or chapters, out of eighteen, in the last and shortest of four books, is all that falls to the share of this half of the field of law. And the whole is brought in under the subordinate title of "Obligations arising from delinquency." The arbitrary will of the judge (a wretched substitute) was left to supply the place of law. The same disproportion, (and it is one of the most remarkable points of inferiority in the ancient Roman as compared with the modern system of jurisprudence) is observable in the Mahomedan books of law the portion which relates to the penal is very small in comparison with that which relates to the non penal branch of the subject.

The Mahomedan system contained, indeed, one law, comprehensive enough to supersede a number that, in all cases of injury to the person, retaliation should be the rule An eye for an eye, and a tooth for a tooth. This recommends itself to a rude age by the appearance of proportion. But it recommends itself to no other but a rude age, because it possesses nothing but the appearance of proportion and grossly violates the reality. In this the Mahomedan more nearly approached the Hindu than the European systems of penal law. By this however it avoided the atrocity of some modern systems, particularly the

English, in as much as it limited capital punishment, BOOK III never allowed for offences against property, to the single case of murder. In practice too, "the Mussulman courts," says the translator of the Hedaya, "in all cases short of life, understand the words of the Koran, not as awarding an actual retaliation, according to the strict literal meaning, but an atonement in exact proportion to the injury."¹ This indicates a considerable refinement of thought on the subject of penal law; far removed from the brutality which stains the code of the Hindus.

The most atrocious part of the Mahomedan system of punishment, is that which regards theft and robbery. Mutilation, by cutting off the hand, or the foot, is the prescribed remedy for all higher degrees of the offence. This savours strongly of a barbarous state of society; and in this the Mahomedan and Hindu systems resemble one another. The translator of the Hedaya, though he laments the *inhumanity, inconvenience, and inefficiency*, of this mode of punishment, yet tells his British countrymen; "They have nothing better to offer by way of substitute; for surely their penal laws are still more sanguinary" This is a heavy imputation on the legislature of his country; but surely no good reason hinders a better system of penal remedies, than that of either English or Mahomedan law, from being introduced into India, by an enlightened legislature, if such a thing were to be found.

One peculiarity, indicating the work of an immature state of the human mind, strongly distinguishes the Mahomedan system, while it distinguishes the English, in a degree scarcely, if at all, inferior. In

¹ The Hedaya, or Guide, a commentary on the Mussulman Laws Translated by order of the Governor-General and Council of Bengal, by Charles Hamilton, in 4 vols 4to ,Preliminary Discourse, by the translator, p. lxxxiii

BOOK III framing the several rules or ordinances which, of course, are intended each, to include not a mere individual case (for then to be complete they must be innumerable), but sets or classes of cases it is not the specific, or the generic differences, but the individual differences, upon which a great proportion of the rules are founded. Their mode of proceeding is the same, as if (taking a familiar case for the sake of illustration) they were to make one law to prohibit the stealing of a sheep, another to prohibit the stealing of a cow a third, the stealing of a horse though all the cases should be treated as equally criminal, and all subjected to the same penalty Not merely a good logic, but a good talent for expediting business, would teach that all such cases as could be comprehended under one description, and were to be dealt with in one way, should be included in one comprehensive law This would have two admirable effects The laws would first be less voluminous hence less obscure, and difficult to administer In the second place being founded upon the generic and specific differences, they would include all individual cases without exception whereas in so far as they are founded upon individual distinctions, they may rise to the number of millions, and leave us many cases (no individual case resembling another) without an appropriate provision

3 Beside the laws which mark out rights and punishment, are a set of laws on which the execution of the former branches altogether depends. These are the laws which constitute the system of procedure or the round of operations through which the judicial services—inquiry, sentence, and enforcement—are rendered

In this part of the field of legislation there is a most remarkable difference, between the Indian and

the European systems. In the European system, the ^{BOOK III}
 steps of procedure are multiplied to a great number,
 and regulated by a correspondent multiplicity of rules
^{CHAP 5.}
 In the Mahomedan, (and in this the Mahomedan and
 the Hindu systems concur) the mode of procedure is
 simple, and not much regulated by any positive rules ;
 the Judge being left to conduct the judicial inquiry,
 in the mode which appears to him most conducive to
 its end, and falling of course into the natural and
 obvious train of operations, recommended to every
 individual by ordinary good sense, when he has any
 private inquiry, analogous to the judicial, to perform.
 The parties are summoned to appear before him.
 They state, in their order, the circumstances of the
 case, subject to examination of all sorts, for the elu-
 cidation of the facts. The evidence which they have
 to adduce, whether of testimony or of things, is
 received : When all the evidence is before the Judge,
 he balances the weight of that which affirms, with
 the weight of that which denies the point in dispute ;
 and according as either preponderates, decision is
 pronounced.

In this department, the advantage is all on the side
 of the Indian systems. The inconvenience to which
 the Indian mode of procedure is liable consists in the
 arbitrary power entrusted to the Judge ; which he
 may employ either negligently, or partially and cor-
 ruptly. Two things may here be observed. First,
 that this inconvenience is not removed from the sys-
 tem characterised by the great number of steps and
 rules, which may be called the technical system :
 Secondly, that it may, to a great degree, be easily
 removed from the system which is characterised by
 the small number of steps and rules, which may be
 called the natural system.

It is not removed from the technical system for that hinds the Judge to nothing but an observance of the technical rules. Now *they* may all be observed in the most punctilious manner while the real merits of the case may either have been most imperfectly brought to light, through negligence or purposely disguised through corruption. The observance of the technical rules by no means forces the inquiry upon the merits of the case and affords no security what soever that in regard to *them* the inquiry shall be complete.

In the next place, the power of the Judge may be restrained from abuse in the natural mode of procedure, by very easy expedients. As the steps are simple, they can be clearly described and a standard of perfection may be rendered perfectly familiar to the minds of the people. With this standard in their minds, the conduct of the Judge may be subjected to perfect publicity and held open to the full view, and unrestrained criticisms, of the people. As no misconduct would thus escape detection, an efficient method might be easily provided to render it very difficult, or impossible, that it should escape the due measure of punishment. This is the mode of obtaining good conduct from the Judge, as from every other servant of the public, not the prescription of numerous ceremonial observances, few of them having any connexion with the merits of any case, many of them obstructing rather than aiding the efficient operations of a rational inquiry and all taken together far better calculated for screening the Judge in a course of misconduct than for imposing upon him any necessity of good and faithful service.

If the technical affords no security for good conduct in the Judge above the natural system it pos-

sesses other qualities which render it infinitely hurtful BOOK III
CHAP 5. to the interests of justice. By multiplying the operations of judicature, it renders the course long, intricate, obscure, and treacherous. It creates delay, which is always a partial, often a complete denial of justice. It creates unnecessary expense; which is always positive robbery, and as often as it is above the means of the suitor is complete and absolute denial of justice expense, which is almost always above the means of the indigent, that is, the most numerous class; which possesses, therefore, this peculiar property, that it *outlaws* the great body of mankind; making law an instrument which any one may employ for the oppression of the most numerous portion of the species; an instrument which they can scarcely at all employ for their protection

It is instructive, and not difficult, to trace the causes which gave birth to such different modes of judicial procedure in the two countries. The difference arose from the different situation of the judges. It arose from the different means presented to the judges of drawing a profit out of the business which they had to perform. In India, as the state of manners and opinions permitted them to receive bribes, they had no occasion to look out for any other means of drawing as much money as possible from the suitors, and, therefore, they allowed the course of inquiry to fall into the straight, the shortest, and easiest channel. In England, the state of manners and opinions rendered it very inconvenient, and in some measure dangerous, to receive bribes. The judges were, therefore, induced to look out for other means of rendering their business profitable to themselves. The state of manners and opinions allowed them to take fees upon each of the different judicial

BOOK III operations It was, therefore, an obvious expedient
CHAP 5 to multiply these operations to excess to render them as numerous, and not only as numerous, but as *ensnaring* as possible For with a view to fees, it was of prodigious importance, after the operations had been rendered as numerous as possible, to create pretexts for performing them twice over This was easily done, by rendering the operations, imposed upon the suitors, so nice, and intricate and equivocal, that it was hardly possible to observe them in such a manner as to preclude exception and by making it a rule, that as soon as any misobservance was laid hold of by the judge the whole of the preceding operations, how exactly soever performed, should be set aside, and the suit ordained to commence anew This re-commencement, accordingly, this double performance of the ceremonies, double payment of the fees, is one of the most remarkable features in the English system of procedure

Two persons in the Mahomedan courts, the Cauzee and Moostee, share between them, on each occasion the functions of the judge The Moostee attends in order to expound the sacred text the Cauzee is the person who investigates the question of fact, and carries into execution what he receives as the meaning of the law¹

The following passage discovers a correct mode of detecting whatever disconformity may have been found between the rule and the practice "It is incumbent on the Sultan to select for the office of Cauzee a person who is capable of discharging the duties of it, and passing decrees, and who is also in a superlative degree just and virtuous for the prophet has said *If however*

¹ Hedes ii 614

appoints a person to the discharge of any office, whilst there is another among his subjects more qualified for the same than the person so appointed, does surely commit an injury with respect to the rights of God, the prophet, and the Mussulmans"¹

BOOK III.
CHAP. 5.

Publicity was an important principle in the Mahomedan jurisprudence. For the hall of justice, "the principal mosque," says the law, "is the most eligible place, if it be situated within the city, because it is the most notorious."²

There is no part of the rules of procedure which more strongly indicate the maturity or immaturity of the human mind, than the rules of evidence. There is scarcely any part of the Mahomedan system, where it shows to greater advantage. On many points its rules of evidence are not inferior, in some they are preferable, to those of the European systems. Its exclusion of evidence, for example, is not so extensive, and, in the same proportion, not so mischievous as the English. There are other cases, however, in which inferiority appears. Reckoning women's testimony inferior to that of men (they have less correctness, says the law, both in observation and memory—which so long as their education is inferior will no doubt be the case), the Mahomedan law makes some very absurd rules. In all criminal cases, the testimony of the woman is excluded; and in questions of property, the evidence of two women is held only equal to that of one man; as if one class of women may not be better educated than another class of men, and their testimony, therefore, more to be depended upon. Under Mahomedan customs, indeed, which exclude the women from the acquisition of knowledge and experience, the regulation had less of impropriety than it

¹ Hedaya, ii 615² Ibid 620.

BOOK III would have in a state of things more favourable to
CHAP 5 the mental powers of the sex. There is nothing, however, to compare with many absurdities of the Hindu system, which makes perjury, in certain cases, a virtue.

IV THE TAXES — To a great extent the Mahomedans followed the plan of taxation which was established under the native government of the Hindus. The great source of the revenue was the proportion, exacted by the sovereign, of the gross produce of the laod. The Emperor Akbar was celebrated as having placed the details of collection in a better state, than what that important business had ever been seen in before. From what has been observed of the practice of existing Hindu governments, and, from the superior share of intelligence which the Mahomedans brought to the business of state, we may infer, with sufficient assurance, that the improvement introduced by that people was not inconsiderable. That the Mahomedan priores generally made use of Hindus in affairs of revenue, and even employed them as their instruments in the reforms to which they were led, is not inconsistent with the supposition, that the business was better managed under the Mahomedans than under the Hindus. For the details of collection which a revenue chiefly derived from a proportion of the gross produce of the laod rendered excessively operose and complex, an intimate acquaintance with the language and manners of the people was indispensably required and that acquaintance Hindus alone possessed. There is nothing to hinder the Hindus, as any other people, from being well qualified to be used as instruments in a business, in which they might have been utterly incapable of being the principals. The methods devised, with considerable

skill, under the Emperor Akbar, for preventing the two great abuses incident to the machinery of collection; the oppression of the people, and embezzlement of the king's revenue; appear to have preserved their virtue, not much impaired, all the time, during which any vigour remained in the Mogul government; and to have become altogether neglected, only when each province, as the empire fell to pieces, became an independent, petty state, and when the feeble and necessitous sovereign of each petty state was unable to contend either with his own vices, or those of his agents.¹

BOOK III.

CHAP. 5

V RELIGION.—Under this head very few words are required; because the superiority of the Mahomedans, in respect of religion, is beyond all dispute. To the composition of the Koran was brought an acquaintance with the Jewish and Christian scriptures; by which the writer, notwithstanding his mental rudeness, appears to have greatly profited, and assigning, as we are disposed to assign, very little value to the lofty expressions regarding the Divine perfections, in the Koran, as well as to those in the Vedas,

¹ “The moderation of the tribute imposed by all Mahomedan conquerors, and the simplicity of their method of collecting it, accounts for the surprising facility with which they retained possession of their conquests. The form of their government was despotic, but in fact it was not oppressive to the mass of the conquered people. In general, they introduced no change, but in the army, and in the name of the sovereign.” Francis, Plan for a Settlement of the Revenues of Bengal, par 9. “The gentiles (Hindus) are better contented to live under the Mogul's laws than under Pagan princes, for the Mogul taxes them gently, and every one knows what he must pay, but the Pagan kings or princes tax at discretion, making their own avarice the standard of equity, besides, there were formerly many small Rajahs, that used, upon frivolous occasions, to pick quarrels with one another, and before they could be made friends again, their subjects were forced to open both their veins and purses to gratify ambition or folly.” Hamilton's New Account of the East Indies, II 26.

BOOK III we find the absurdities in the Koran, by which those
CHAR 3 lofty ideas are contradicted, inconsiderable, both in
 number and degree, compared with those which
 abound in the religious system of the Hindus.

VI MANNERS. In this respect the superiority of the Mahomedans was most remarkable. The principal portion of the manners of the Hindus was founded upon the cruel and pernicious distinction of castes. A system of manners proceeding, like that of the Mahomedans, upon the supposition of the natural equality of mankind, constituted such a difference in behalf of all that is good for human nature, as it is hardly possible to value too high. Another great portion of the manners of the Hindus consisted in the performance of religious ceremonies. In ceremonies to the last degree contemptible and absurd, very often tormenting and detestable, a great proportion of the life of every Hindu is, or ought to be consumed. The religion of the Moslem is stript of ceremonies to a degree no where else exemplified among nations in the lower stages of civilization.

As so great a portion of human life is devoted to the preparation and enjoyment of food the great diversity between a diet wholly vegetable, and one which may in any degree consist of animal food implies a considerable diversity in one grand portion of the details of ordinary life. Abstinence from intoxicating liquors is a feature almost equally strong in the manners of both Mahomedans and Hindus.

In point of address and temper, the Mahomedan is less soft, less smooth and winning than the Hindu. Of course he is not so well liked by his lord and master the Englishman who desires to have nothing more to do with him, than to receive his obedience. In truth, the Hindu like the eunuch, excels in the

qualities of a slave. The indolence, the security, the BOOK III pride of the despot, political or domestic, find less to hurt them in the obedience of the Hindu, than in that of almost any other portion of the species. But if less soft, the Mahomedan is more manly, more vigorous. He more nearly resembles our own half-civilized ancestors, who, though more rough, were not more gross; though less supple in behaviour, were still more susceptible of increased civilization, than a people in the state of the Hindus.

In the still more important qualities, which constitute what we call the moral character, the Hindu, as we have already seen, ranks very low; and the Mahomedan is little, if at all above him. The same insincerity, mendacity, and perfidy, the same indifference to the feelings of others, the same prostitution and venality,¹ are conspicuous in both. The Mahomedans are profuse, when possessed of wealth, and devoted to pleasure; the Hindus are almost always penurious and ascetic.

VII THE ARTS The comparison has been so fully exhibited, between the Persians and Hindus, in respect to progress in the arts, in that chapter of the preceding book, in which the arts of the Hindus have been described, and it is so well known, that the

¹ Sir Thomas Roe, speaking of even the Mogul Emperor and his court, says, "Experience had taught me that there was no faith among these barbarians" Journal in Churchill's Voyages, 1 799. Contrasting the opposition he met with, when he had not, and the obsequiousness when he had something to give, he says, "This made me sensible of the poor spirits of those people Asaph Khan [the minister] was become so much our friend, in hopes to buy some trifles, that he would have betrayed his own son to serve us, and was my humble servant" Ibid. Sir Thomas Roe said it was better not to send ambassadors to the Mogul's court, but to employ the money in bribing. "Half my charge," said he, "shall corrupt all this court to be your slaves" Letter to the E I Company, Ibid. p 809.

BOOK III Mahomedan conquerors of India carried with them
CHAP. 5 in perfection the arts of the Persians, that under this head scarcely any thing remains to be adduced

Of the mechanical arts, those of architecture, jewellry, and the fabrication of cloth, appeared to be the only arts for which admiration has been bestowed upon the Hindus. In the first two, the Hindus were found decidedly inferior to the Mahomedans. Of the Mahomedan structures, some are hardly exceeded by the finest monuments of architecture in Europe. The characteristic circumstance of building an arch, the Hindus were totally ignorant of the Mahomedans excelled in it.¹ If in any thing the Mahomedans were inferior to the Hindus, it was in the productions of the loom though it is doubtful whether as high specimens of art, the silks and velvets of the Persians are not as wonderful as the fine muslins of the Hindus.

In making roads and bridges, one of the most important of all the applications of human labour and skill, the Hindus, before the invasion of the Mahomedans, appear to have gone very little beyond the state of the most barbarous nations. We have seen, in the extract lately produced from the Institutes of Timur, that this was a primary care of government among the Moguls, before they became the conquerors of Hindustan.

In the fine arts as they are usually called or those of music, painting and sculpture the reader has already traced, with me, a remarkable coincidence in the progress of the Mahomedans, the Chinese and the Hindus. In painting the taste, as well as the mechanical faculty of all these nations, resemble one

¹ Vide supra p. 13. 14

another in a degree that is singular and surprising. BOOK III
In music, the Hindus appear to be inferior, as, in ^{CHAP 5} sculpture, the Persians superior, to the other two.

Whether war is to be ranked among the fine or the coarse arts; and whatever the relative portion of the powers of mind which it requires; the art may be expected to exist in a state of higher perfection among a people who are more, than a people who are less advanced in the scale of intelligence. When a number of people comparatively few, overcome and hold in subjection a number of people comparatively large, the inference is a legitimate one, (unless something appear which gave the small number some wonderful advantage), that the art of war is in a state of higher perfection among the conquering people, than the conquered. This inference, in the case of the Mahomedans and Hindus, is confirmed by every thing which we know with respect to both those people.

VIII. LITERATURE. In this important article, it will be impossible to show that the Hindus had the superiority in one single particular. It will not be disputed, it is probable, that in almost every particular a decided superiority was on the side of their invaders. The only branches of Hindu literature to which the admirers of Hindu civilization have called for any admiration, are the mathematics and the poetry.

With regard to the mathematics, it is rather the supposed antiquity, than the high progress of the science, among the Hindus, at which any wonder has been expressed. Whatever the case in regard to antiquity, it is abundantly certain that the science existed among the Mahomedans, acquainted to a considerable degree with the mathematics of Europe, in a state not less high, than it was found among the

BOOK III Hindus and that point is all which is material to
CHAP 5 the present purpose

Of the poetry of the Hindus I have already endeavoured to convey a precise idea. On the present occasion it appears sufficient to say that even those who make the highest demand upon us for admiration of the poetry of the Hindus, allow, as Sir William Jones, for example, that the poetry of the Persians is superior. Compare the Mahabarat the great narrative poem of the Hindus, with the Shah Namah, the great narrative poem of the Persians the departure from nature and probability is less wild and extravagant the incidents are less foolish the fictions are more ingenious all to a great degree, in the work of the Mahomedan author, than in that of the Hindu.

But the grand article in which the superiority of the Mahomedans appears is history. As all our knowledge is built upon experience the recordation of the past for the guidance of the future is one of the effects in which the utility of the art of writing principally consists. Of this most important branch of literature the Hindus were totally destitute. Among the Mahomedans of India the art of composing history has been carried to greater perfection than in any other part of Asia. In point of simplicity and good sense there is no specimen even of Persian history known to the European scholar which can vie with the works of Ferishta, or the interesting Memoirs of Ghulam Hussein, the Seer Mutakhareen. Beside the best specimens of Persian history, it is worthy of remark that the best specimen also of Persian poetry, the celebrated Shah Namah, was produced among the Mahomedan conquerors of Hindustan.

NOTE A. p. 71.

THE most authentic source of information, yet open to the research of the European scholar on the metaphysical, as on other ideas of the learned Hindus, is the volume of the Institutions of Menu. This celebrated, authoritative, and divine work contains, as is usual with the sacred books of the Hindus, a specimen of all their knowledge, cosmogony, theology, physics, metaphysics, government, jurisprudence, and economics. From the account which in this work is rendered of the origin of the mind and its faculties, very sure conclusions may be drawn respecting the extent and accuracy of the psychological knowledge of the people by whom that account is delivered and believed.

The inspired author of this divine work informs the believing Hindu that, "From the supreme soul, Brahma, the Creator, drew forth mind, existing substantially, though unperceived by sense, immaterial."¹ The principal words here employed are vague and obscure, and no distinct meaning can be assigned to them. What is meant by "existing substantially?" What is meant by "immortal?" "To exist substantially," if it have any meaning, is to be a substance. But this is inconsistent with the idea which we ascribe to the word immaterial; and there is, in many other passages, abundant reason to conclude that the word, with its usual leanings, here translated, "immortal," by Sir William Jones, meant nothing, in the conception of a Hindu, but a certain air, or ether, too fine to be perceived by the organs of sense.

Immediately after the words we have just quoted, it is added; "And before mind, or the reasoning power, he produced consciousness, the internal monitor, the ruler."² Consciousness, a faculty of the mind, is here represented as created before the mind, the quality before the substratum. It is subjoined in the next words, "And before them both" (that is, before the mind and consciousness) "he produced the great principle of the soul, or first expansion of the divine idea."³ Here is a third production, which is neither the mind, nor consciousness. What is it? To this we have no answer. As to the term "first

¹ Laws of Menu, ch. 1, 14. See the passage quoted at length, supra, vol. 1, p. 425.

² Laws of Menu, ch. 1, 14.

³ Ibid. 15.

expansion of the divine idea," which may be suspected to be a gloss rather than a translation it is mere jargon with no more meaning than the cawing of rooks. In the same manner"—(that is, according to the construction of the sentence before mind and consciousness)—“he created the five perceptions of sense and the five organs of perception”¹. Another faculty of the mind, perception is thus a creation antecedent to mind. The organs of perception too or bodily part, are a separate creation perceiving organs, which belong to no perceiving being.

The following text, which are the words next in order exhibits a curious sample of metaphysical ideas. Having at once pervaded, with emanations from the supreme spirit, the minutest portions of six principles immensely operative, consciousness, and the five perceptions, the Creator framed all creatures.” Consciousness, and the five perceptions, existed antecedently to all creatures consciousness and perception without conscious and perceiving beings. What is meant by the minute portions of consciousness? How can consciousness be supposed divided into portions either minute or large especially when we are told that the mind is immaterial? What, too are we to understand by the minute portions of a perception? As to the mere jargon, such as “pervading consciousness and the five perceptions with emanations from the supreme spirit,” it is unnecessary to offer on it any remarks.

We are next informed, that ‘the minutest particles of visible nature have a dependance on those six emanations from God.’² What is meant by these six emanations is not very definitely expressed. The six things that are spoken of are consciousness and the five perceptions and it is probable that they are meant. But how visible nature should depend upon consciousness and the five perceptions, does not appear. Certain other emanations from God, however, are spoken of with which consciousness and the five perceptions were pervaded and perhaps it was meant that the minutest particles of matter depend on them. But this is only barbarous jargon.

In the following verse it is said, that from these six emanations proceed the great elements endowed with peculiar powers, and mind with operations infinitely subtle the unperishable cause of all apparent form.”³ It is still a difficulty what is meant by the six emanations. If those are meant with which consciousness and the five perceptions are pervaded no ideas

¹ Law of Menak ch 1 15
Ibid 1

Ibid 16
Ibid 18

NOTE A.

whatever can be annexed to the words, they are totally without a meaning, and that is all. If consciousness and the five perceptions be, as seems probable, the emanations in question, in what manner do the great elements and mind proceed from consciousness and the five perceptions? Mind would thus proceed from certain of its own operations.

It is added in the succeeding sentence, "This universe, therefore, is compacted from the minute portions of those seven divine and active principles, the great soul, or first emanation, consciousness, and five perceptions, a mutable universe from immutable ideas"¹. Here it appears that the great soul, as well as consciousness and the perceptions, can be divided into portions. The great soul is not therefore immaterial, according to our sense of the word, and still less can either that, or the perceptions and consciousness be immaterial, if the universe, a great part of which is surely material, can be compacted from portions of them. "A mutable universe," it is said, "from immutable ideas," therefore, the great soul, consciousness, and the five perceptions, are not realities, though divisible into portions, they are only ideas! What conclusions are we entitled to form respecting the intellectual state of a people who can be charmed with doctrine like this?²

In the following passage, and there are others of a similar import, we find a specimen of those beginnings which are made at an early stage of society, to refine in the modes of conceiving the mental operations. "Self-love," it is said, "is no laudable motive, yet an exemption from self-love is not to be found in this world on self-love is grounded the study of scripture, and the practice of actions recommended in it"³. The absurdity lies, in not perceiving, that if no action proceeding from self-love is virtuous, and if there is no action which does not proceed from self-love, then is there no virtue in the world, which is far from being the subject of Hindu belief.

¹ Laws of Menu, ch 1 19

² Not only are consciousness and the five perceptions regarded as separate existences, and separate products of creative power, but various other operations of the mind, and even states of the affections. Thus, among the other creations, it is said, that the Creator "gave being to devotion, speech, complacency, desire, and wrath" (Laws of Menu, ch 1 25)

³ Ibid. ch 11 2